XM CAN (ENG) FOREWORD.QXP 11/26/2009 11:31 AM Page 1

## KIA, THE COMPANY

Congratulations! Your selection of a **KIA** was a wise investment. It will give you years of driving pleasure. Now that you are the owner of a **KIA** vehicle, you'll probably be asked a lot of questions about your vehicle and the company like "What is a **KIA**?", "Who is **KIA**?", "What does '**KIA**' mean?".

Here are some answers. First, **KIA** is the oldest car company in Korea. It is a company that has thousands of employees focused on building high-quality vehicles at affordable prices.

The first syllable, ***KI***, in the word "**KIA**" means "to arise from to the world" or "to come up out of to the world". The second syllable, ***a***, means "Asia". So, the word ***KIA***, means "to arise from" or "to come up out of Asia to the world".

***Drive safely and enjoy your Kia!***

XM CAN (ENG) FOREWORD.QXP 11/26/2009 11:31 AM Page 2



Thank you for choosing a KIA vehicle.

When you require service, remember that your KIA Dealer knows your vehicle best. Your dealer has factory-trained technicians, recommended special tools, genuine KIA replacement parts and is dedicated to your complete satisfaction.

Because subsequent owners require this important information as well, this publication should remain with the vehicle if it is sold.

This manual will familiarize you with operational, maintenance and safety information about your new vehicle. It is supplemented by a Warranty and Consumer Information manual that provides important information on all warranties regarding your vehicle.

We urge you to read these publications carefully and follow the recommendations to help assure enjoyable and safe operation of your new vehicle.

KIA offers a great variety of options, components and features for its various models. Therefore, some of the equipment described in this manual, along with the various illustrations, may not be applicable to your particular vehicle.

The information and specifications provided in this manual were accurate at the time of printing. KIA reserves the right to discontinue or change specifications or design at any time without notice and without incurring any obligation. If you have questions, always check with your KIA dealer.

We assure you of our continuing interest in your motoring pleasure and satisfaction in your KIA vehicle.

© 2010 Kia Canada Inc.

All rights reserved. Reproduction by any means, electronic or mechanical, including photocopying, recording, or by any information storage and retrieval system or translation in whole or part is not permitted without written authorization from Kia Canada Inc..

Printed in U. S. A.

XM CAN (ENG) FOREWORD.QXP 11/26/2009 11:31 AM Page 3

# TABLE OF CONTENTS


| | |
|---|---|
| Introduction | 1 |
| Your vehicle at a glance | 2 |
| Safety features of your vehicle | 3 |
| Features of your vehicle | 4 |
| Driving your vehicle | 5 |
| What to do in an emergency | 6 |
| Maintenance | 7 |
| Specifications & Consumer information | 8 |
| Index | I |

XM CAN (ENG) 1.QXP 11/26/2009 11:33 AM Page 1

# Introduction 1

**How to use this manual / 1-2**
**Fuel requirements / 1-3**
**Vehicle handling instructions / 1-5**
**Vehicle break-in process / 1-5**
**Indicator symbols on the instrument cluster / 1-6**

XM CAN (ENG) 1.QXP 11/26/2009 11:33 AM Page 2



## HOW TO USE THIS MANUAL

A010000AAM

We want to help you get the greatest possible driving pleasure from your vehicle. Your Owner's Manual can assist you in many ways. We strongly recommend that you read the entire manual. In order to minimize the chance of death or injury, you must read the WARNING and CAUTION sections in the manual.

Illustrations complement the words in this manual to best explain how to enjoy your vehicle. By reading your manual, you will learn about features, important safety information, and driving tips under various road conditions.

The general layout of the manual is provided in the Table of Contents. Use the index when looking for a specific area or subject; it has an alphabetical listing of all information in your manual.

Sections: This manual has eight sections plus an index. Each section begins with a brief list of contents so you can tell at a glance if that section has the information you want.

You will find various WARNINGs, CAUTIONs, and NOTICEs in this manual. These WARNINGs were prepared to enhance your personal safety. You should carefully read and follow ALL procedures and recommendations provided in these WARNINGs, CAUTIONs and NOTICEs.

**⚠ WARNING**

**A WARNING indicates a situation in which harm, serious bodily injury or death could result if the warning is ignored.**

**⚠ CAUTION**

***A CAUTION indicates a situation in which damage to your vehicle could result if the caution is ignored.***

**✻ NOTICE**

**A NOTICE indicates interesting or helpful information is being provided.**

XM CAN (ENG) 1.QXP 11/26/2009 11:33 AM Page 3



## FUEL REQUIREMENTS

A020101AHM-EU

Your new vehicle is designed to use only unleaded fuel having a pump octane number ((R+M)/2) of 87 (Research Octane Number 91) or higher.

Your new vehicle is designed to obtain maximum performance with UNLEADED FUEL, as well as minimize exhaust emissions and spark plug fouling.

**⚠ CAUTION**

***Never add any fuel system cleaning agents to the fuel tank other than what has been specified. (Consult an authorized KIA dealer for details.)***

**⚠ WARNING**

- **Do not "top off" after the nozzle automatically shuts off when refueling.**
- **Tighten the cap until it clicks, otherwise the Check Engine light will illuminate.**
- **Always check that the fuel cap is installed securely to prevent fuel spillage in the event of an accident.**

A020103AUN-EU

***Gasoline containing alcohol and methanol***

Gasohol, a mixture of gasoline and ethanol (also known as grain alcohol), and gasoline or gasohol containing methanol (also known as wood alcohol) are being marketed along with or instead of leaded or unleaded gasoline.

Do not use gasohol containing more than 10% ethanol, and do not use gasoline or gasohol containing any methanol. Either of these fuels may cause drivability problems and damage to the fuel system.

Discontinue using gasohol of any kind if drivability problems occur.

Vehicle damage or drivability problems may not be covered by the manufacturer's warranty if they result from the use of:

1. Gasohol containing more than 10% ethanol.
2. Gasoline or gasohol containing methanol.
3. Leaded fuel or leaded gasohol.

XM CAN (ENG) 1.QXP 11/26/2009 11:33 AM Page 4



"E85" fuel is an alternative fuel comprised of 85 percent ethanol and 15 percent gasoline, and is manufactured exclusively for use in Flexible Fuel Vehicles. “E85” is not compatible with your vehicle. Use of “E85” may result in poor engine performance and damage to your vehicle's engine and fuel system. KIA recommends that customers do not use fuel with an ethanol content exceeding 10%.

**⚠ CAUTION**

***Your New Vehicle Limited Warranty does not cover damage to the fuel system or any performance problems caused by the use of “E85” fuel.***

**⚠ CAUTION**

***Never use gasohol which contains methanol. Discontinue use of any gasohol product which impairs drivability.***

A020104AUN

### *Use of MTBE*

KIA recommends avoiding fuels containing MTBE (Methyl Tertiary Butyl Ether) over 15.0% vol. (Oxygen Content 2.7% weight) in your vehicle.

Fuel containing MTBE over 15.0% vol. (Oxygen Content 2.7% weight) may reduce vehicle performance and produce vapor lock or hard starting.

**⚠ CAUTION**

***Your New Vehicle Limited Warranty may not cover damage to the fuel system and any performance problems that are caused by the use of fuels containing methanol or fuels containing MTBE (Methyl Tertiary Butyl Ether) over 15.0% vol. (Oxygen Content 2.7% weight.)***

A020105AUN

### *Do not use methanol*

Fuels containing methanol (wood alcohol) should not be used in your vehicle. This type of fuel can reduce vehicle performance and damage components of the fuel system.

A020106AUN

### *Gasolines for cleaner air*

To help contribute to cleaner air, KIA recommends that you use gasolines treated with detergent additives, which help prevent deposit formation in the engine. These gasolines will help the engine run cleaner and enhance performance of the Emission Control System.

A020107AUN

### *Operation in foreign countries*

If you are going to drive your vehicle in another country, be sure to:

- Observe all regulations regarding registration and insurance.
- Determine that acceptable fuel is available.

XM CAN (ENG) 1.QXP 11/26/2009 11:33 AM Page 5



## VEHICLE HANDLING INSTRUCTIONS

A090000AEN

As with other vehicles of this type, failure to operate this vehicle correctly may result in loss of control, an accident or vehicle rollover.

Specific design characteristics (higher ground clearance, track, etc.) give this vehicle a higher center of gravity than other types of vehicles. In other words they are not designed for cornering at the same speeds as conventional 2-wheel drive vehicles. Avoid sharp turns or abrupt maneuvers. Again, failure to operate this vehicle correctly may result in loss of control, an accident or vehicle rollover. **Be sure to read the "Reducing the risk of a rollover" driving guidelines, in section 5 of this manual.**

## VEHICLE BREAK-IN PROCESS

A030000AUN

No special break-in period is needed. By following a few simple precautions for the first 1,000 km (600 miles) you may add to the performance, economy and life of your vehicle.

- Do not race the engine.
- While driving, keep your engine speed (rpm, or revolutions per minute) between 2,000 rpm and 4,000 rpm.
- Do not maintain a single speed for long periods of time, either fast or slow. Varying engine speed is needed to properly break-in the engine.
- Avoid hard stops, except in emergencies, to allow the brakes to seat properly.
- Don't let the engine idle longer than 3 minutes at one time.
- Don't tow a trailer during the first 2,000 km (1,200 miles) of operation.

XM CAN (ENG) 1.QXP 11/26/2009 11:33 AM Page 6



## INDICATOR SYMBOLS ON THE INSTRUMENT CLUSTER

A050000AX-EC

Door Ajar Warning Light

Tailgate Open Warning Light

Seat Belt Warning Light

High Beam Indicator

Turn Signal Indicator

Front Fog Light Indicator*

ESC Indicator*

ESC OFF Indicator*

ABS Warning Light*

Parking Brake & Brake Fluid Warning Light

Engine Oil Pressure Warning Light

Charging System Warning Light

Malfunction Indicator*

Air Bag Warning Light*

Immobilizer Indicator*

Low Fuel Level Warning Light

Shift Pattern Indicator

Cruise Indicator*

Cruise SET Indicator*

4WD system warning light*

4WD LOCK indicator*

Low windshield washer fluid level warning light*

DBC indicator*

Key out warning light*

ECOMINDER™ indicator*

* if equipped

❉ For more detailed explanations, refer to “Instrument cluster” in section 4.

XM CAN (ENG) 2.QXP 11/26/2009 11:35 AM Page 1

# Your vehicle at a glance

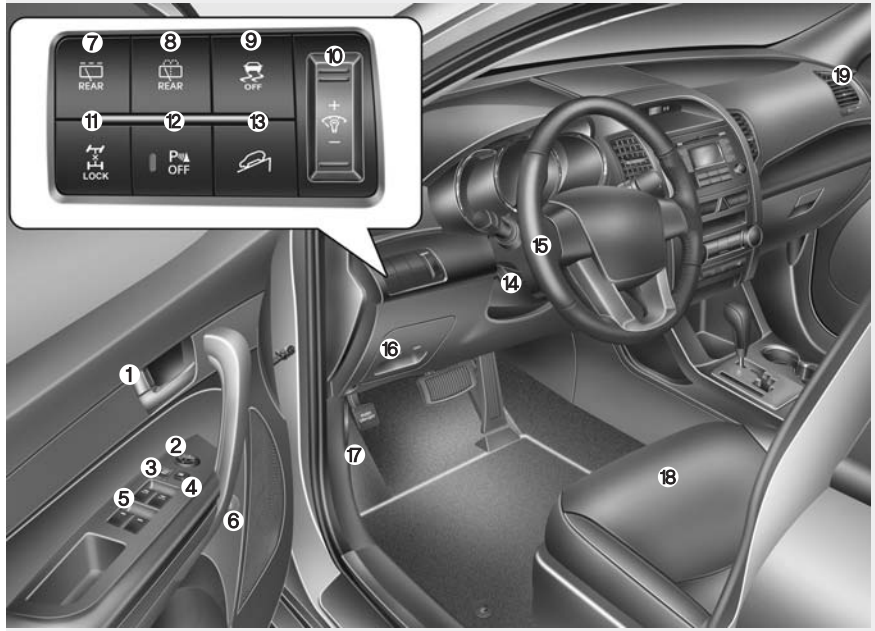
2

**Interior overview / 2-2**
**Instrument panel overview / 2-3**
**Engine compartment / 2-4**

XM CAN (ENG) 2.QXP 11/26/2009 11:35 AM Page 2



## INTERIOR OVERVIEW




1. Door lock/unlock button....4-15
2. Outside rearview mirror control switch....4-43
3. Central door lock switch*....4-17
4. Power window lock button*....4-24
5. Power window switches....4-21
6. Fuel filler lid release button....4-27
7. Rear window wiper button....4-70
8. Rear window washer button....4-70
9. ESC OFF button*....5-32
10. Instrument panel illumination control switch*....4-45
11. 4WD lock button*....5-22
12. Rear parking assist system off button*....4-59
13. DBC button*....5-35
14. Steering wheel tilt control*....4-35
15. Steering wheel....4-34
16. Fuse box....7-45
17. Hood release lever....4-25
18. Seats....3-2
19. Air vents....4-77, 4-86

* : if equipped

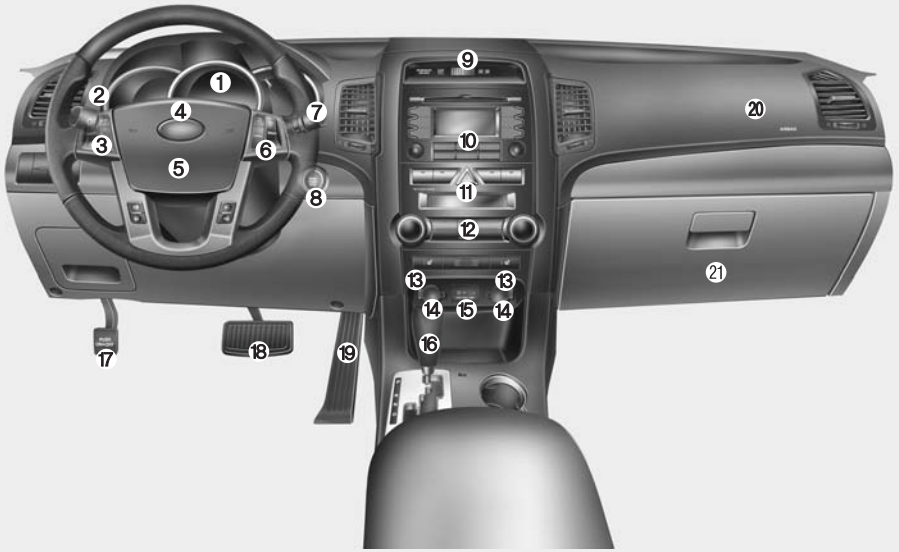
❇ The actual interior in the vehicle may differ from the illustration

OXM019001N

XM CAN (ENG) 2.QXP 11/26/2009 11:35 AM Page 3



## INSTRUMENT PANEL OVERVIEW




1. Instrument cluster.....4-44
2. Lighting controls / Turn signals.....4-63
3. Steering wheel audio controls* .....4-102
4. Horn .....4-35
5. Driver's front air bag.....3-51
6. Cruise controls*.....5-39
7. Wiper/Washer switch.....4-68
8. Ignition switch* or ENGINE START/STOP button*...5-4, 5-7
9. Digital clock .....4-98
10. Audio*.....4-102
11. Hazard warning flasher.....4-62, 6-2
12. Climate control system*.....4-74, 4-83
13. Seat heater switch* .....3-9
14. Power outlet*.....4-97
15. AUX, USB and iPod port*.....4-103
16. Shift lever .....5-12, 5-15
17. Parking brake pedal*.....5-28
18. Brake pedal .....5-27
19. Accelerator pedal .....5-5
20. Passenger's front air bag*.....3-51
21. Glove box .....4-94

* : if equipped

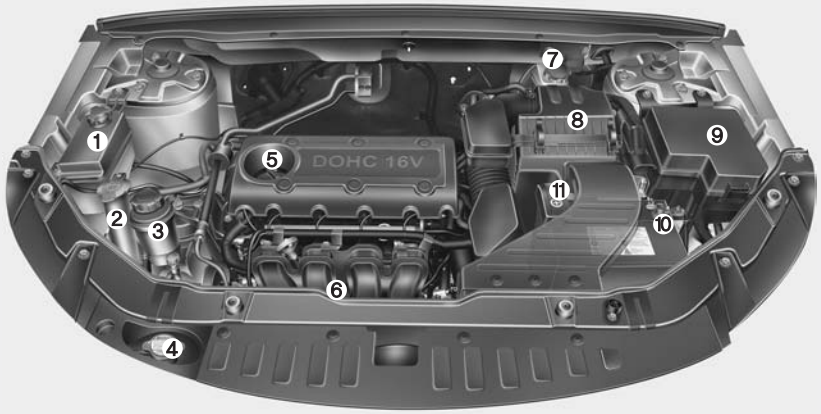
❈ The actual instrument panel in the vehicle may differ from the illustration

OXM019002N

XM CAN (ENG) 2.QXP 11/26/2009 11:36 AM Page 4



## ENGINE COMPARTMENT




1. Engine Coolant Reservoir .....7-15
2. Windshield Washer Fluid Reservoir....7-20
3. Power Steering Fluid Reservoir* .....7-19
4. Radiator Cap .....7-17
5. Engine Oil Filler Cap .....7-14
6. Engine Oil Dipstick .....7-14
7. Brake/Clutch* Fluid Reservoir .....7-18
8. Air Cleaner .....7-21
9. Fuse Box .....7-45
10. Negative Battery Terminal .....7-29
11. Positive Battery Terminal .....7-29

* if equipped

❉ The actual engine compartment in the vehicle may differ from the illustration.

OXM079001N

B030000AUN-C1

XM CAN (ENG) 3.QXP 11/26/2009 11:38 AM Page 1

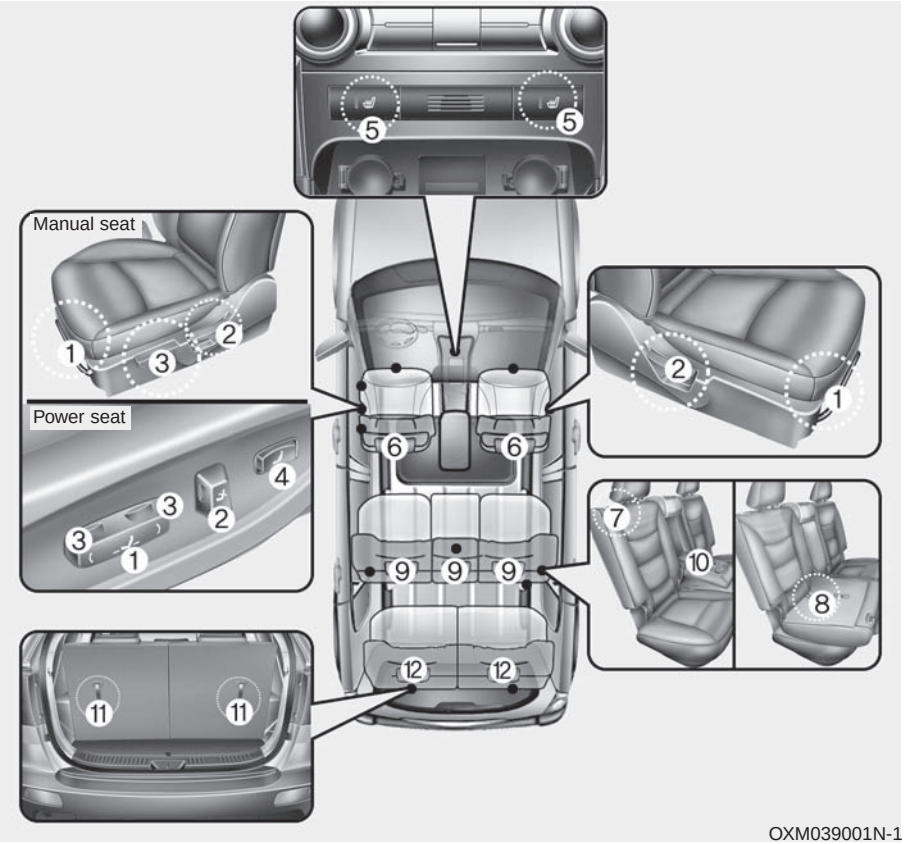
**Seats / 3-2**
**Seat belts / 3-18**
**Child restraint system / 3-31**
**Air bag - advanced supplemental restraint system / 3-39**

# Safety features of your vehicle 3

XM CAN (ENG) 3.QXP 11/26/2009 11:38 AM Page 2



## SEATS




### Front seat

(1) Forward and backward
(2) Seatback angle
(3) Seat cushion height (Driver's seat)
(4) Lumbar support (Driver's seat)*
(5) Seat heater*
(6) Headrest

### 2nd row seat

(7) Seatback angle and folding
(8) Double folding*
(9) Headrest
(10) Armrest

### 3rd row seat*

(11) Seatback folding
(12) Headrest

* if equipped

XM CAN (ENG) 3.QXP 12/4/2009 11:15 AM Page 3



**⚠ WARNING - Loose objects**

**Loose objects in the driver's foot area could interfere with the operation of the foot pedals, possibly causing an accident. Do not place anything under the front seats.**

**⚠ WARNING - Uprighting seat**

**When you return the seatback to its upright position, hold the seatback and return it slowly and be sure there are no other passengers around the seat. If the seatback is returned without being held and controlled, the back of the seat could spring forward resulting in accidental injury to a person struck by the seatback.**

**⚠ WARNING - Driver responsibility for passengers**

**Riding in a vehicle with the seatback reclined could lead to serious or fatal injury in an accident. If a seat is reclined during an accident, the occupant's hips may slide under the lap portion of the seat belt applying great force to the unprotected abdomen. Serious or fatal internal injuries could result. The driver must advise the passenger to keep the seatback in an upright position whenever the vehicle is in motion.**

**⚠ WARNING - Driver's seat**

- **Never attempt to adjust the seat while the vehicle is moving. This could result in loss of control, and an accident causing death, serious injury, or property damage.**
- **Do not allow anything to interfere with the normal position of the seatback. Storing items against a seatback or in any other way interfering with proper locking of a seatback could result in serious or fatal injury in a sudden stop or collision.**
- **Always drive and ride with your seatback upright and the lap portion of the seat belt snug and low across the hips. This is the best position to protect you in case of an accident.**
- **In order to avoid unnecessary and perhaps severe air bag injuries, always sit as far back as possible from the steering wheel while maintaining comfortable control of the vehicle. We recommend that your chest be at least 25 cm (10 inches) away from the steering wheel.**

XM CAN (ENG) 3.QXP 11/26/2009 11:38 AM Page 4



**⚠ WARNING - Rear seatbacks**

- **The rear seatback must be securely latched. If not, passengers and objects could be thrown forward resulting in serious injury or death in the event of a sudden stop or collision.**
- **Luggage and other cargo should be laid flat in the cargo area. If objects are large, heavy, or must be piled, they must be secured. Under no circumstances should cargo be piled higher than the seatbacks. Failure to follow these warnings could result in serious injury or death in the event of a sudden stop, collision or rollover.**
- **No passenger should ride in the cargo area or sit or lie on folded seatbacks while the vehicle is moving. All passengers must be properly seated in seats and restrained properly while riding.**

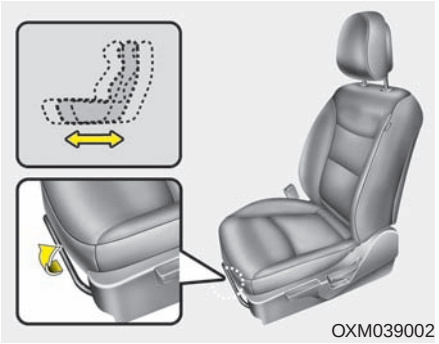
**(Continued)**

**(Continued)**

- **When resetting the seatback to the upright position, make sure it is securely latched by pushing it forward and backwards.**
- **To avoid the possibility of burns, do not remove the carpet in the cargo area. Emission control devices beneath this floor generate high temperatures.**

**⚠ WARNING**

**After adjusting the seat, always check that it is securely locked into place by attempting to move the seat forward or backward without using the lock release lever. Sudden or unexpected movement of the driver's seat could cause you to lose control of the vehicle resulting in an accident.**



OXM039002

## Front seat adjustment - manual

C010101AHM

***Forward and backward***

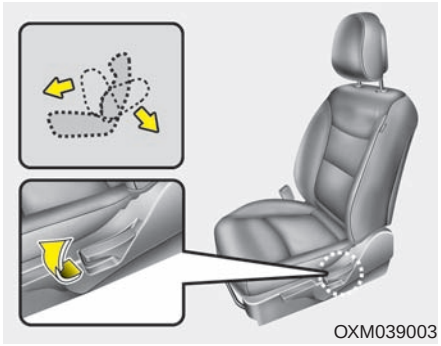
To move the seat forward or backward:

1. Pull the seat slide adjustment lever up and hold it.
2. Slide the seat to the position you desire.
3. Release the lever and make sure the seat is locked in place.

Adjust the seat before driving, and make sure the seat is locked securely by trying to move forward and backward without using the lever. If the seat moves, it is not locked properly.

XM CAN (ENG) 3.QXP 11/26/2009 11:39 AM Page 5





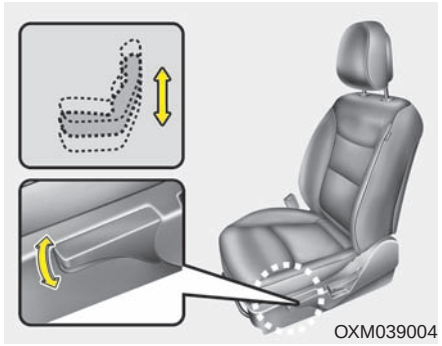
OXM039003

C010102AHM

***Seatback angle***

To recline the seatback:

1. Lean forward slightly and lift up the seatback recline lever.
2. Carefully lean back on the seat and adjust the seatback of the seat to the position you desire.
3. Release the lever and make sure the seatback is locked in place. (The lever MUST return to its original position for the seatback to lock.)



OXM039004

C010103APB

***Seat height (for driver's seat)***

To change the height of the seat, push the lever upwards or downwards.

- To lower the seat cushion, push the lever down several times.
- To raise the seat cushion, pull the lever up several times.

## Front seat adjustment - power (if equipped)

The front seat can be adjusted by using the control switches located on the outside of the seat cushion. Before driving, adjust the seat to the proper position so you can easily control the steering wheel, pedals and switches on the instrument panel.

**⚠ WARNING**

**The power seat is operable with the ignition OFF.**

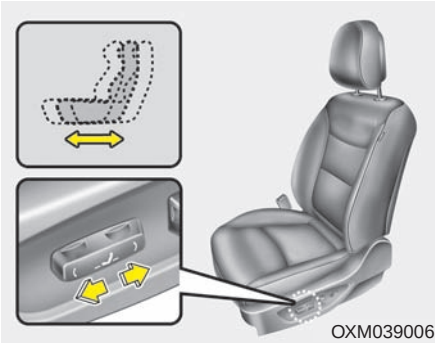
**Therefore, children should never be left unattended in the vehicle.**

XM CAN (ENG) 3.QXP 11/26/2009 11:39 AM Page 6



### ⚠ CAUTION

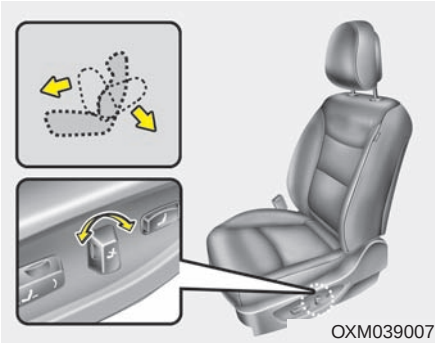
- ***The power seat is driven by an electric motor. Stop operating once the adjustment is completed. Excessive operation may damage the electrical equipment.***
- ***When in operation, the power seat consumes a large amount of electrical power. To prevent unnecessary charging system drain, don't adjust the power seat longer than necessary while the engine is not running.***
- ***Do not operate two or more power seat control switches at the same time. Doing so may result in power seat motor or electrical component malfunction.***



OXM039006

***Forward and backward***

Push the control switch forward or backward to move the seat to the desired position. Release the switch once the seat reaches the desired position.



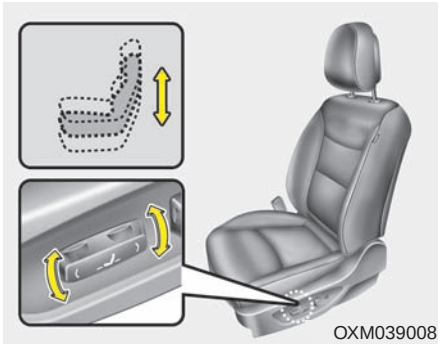
OXM039007

***Seatback angle***

Push the control switch forward or backward to move the seatback to the desired angle. Release the switch once the seat reaches the desired position.

XM CAN (ENG) 3.QXP 11/26/2009 11:39 AM Page 7

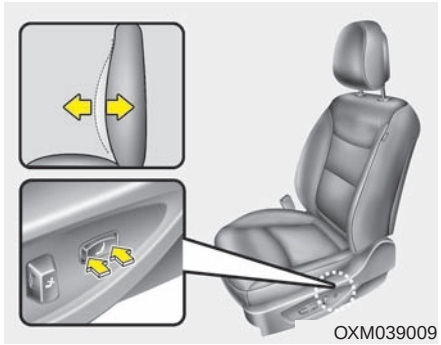




OXM039008

***Seat height (for driver's seat)***

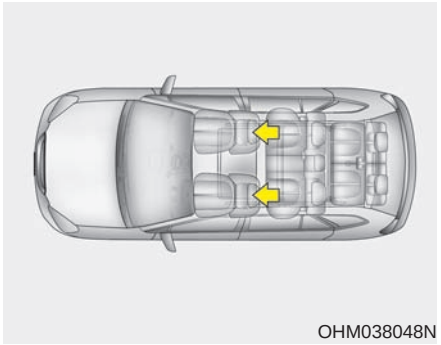
Pull the front portion of the control switch up to raise or press down to lower the front part of the seat cushion. Pull the rear portion of the control switch up to raise or press down to lower the rear part of the seat cushion. Release the switch once the seat reaches the desired position.



OXM039009

***Lumbar support (for driver's seat)***

The lumbar support can be adjusted by pressing the button.



OHM038048N

C010104AHM

***Headrest***

The driver's and front passenger's seats are equipped with a headrest for the occupant's safety and comfort.

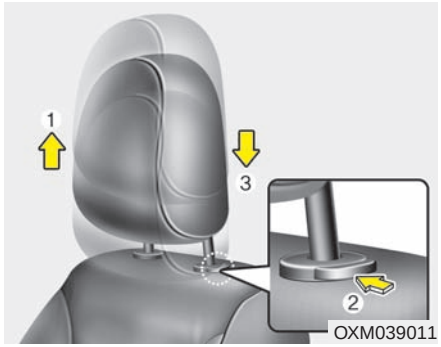
The headrest not only provides comfort for the driver and front passenger, but also helps protect the head and neck in the event of a rear collision.

XM CAN (ENG) 3.QXP 11/26/2009 11:39 AM Page 8



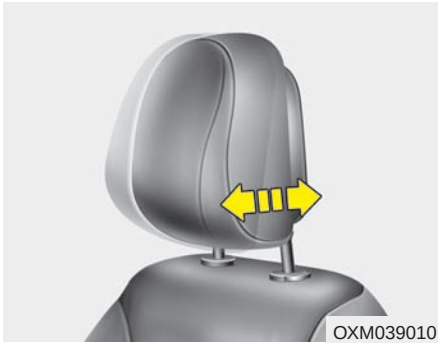
**⚠ WARNING**

- **For maximum effectiveness in case of an accident, the headrest should be adjusted so the middle of the headrest is at the same height of the center of gravity of an occupant's head. Generally, the center of gravity of most people's head is similar with the height of the top of their eyes. Also, adjust the headrest as close to your head as possible. For this reason, the use of a cushion that holds the body away from the seatback is not recommended.**
- **Do not operate the vehicle with the headrests removed. Severe injury to the occupants may occur in the event of an accident. Headrests may provide protection against neck injuries when properly adjusted.**
- **Do not adjust the headrest position of the driver's seat while the vehicle is in motion.**




**Adjusting the height up and down**

To raise the headrest, pull it up to the desired position (1). To lower the headrest, push and hold the release button (2) on the headrest support and lower the headrest to the desired position (3).




**Adjusting the angle (if equipped)**

The headrest angle may be adjusted by pulling or pushing the lower part of the headrest.

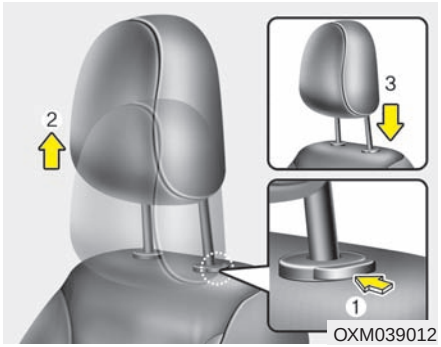
Adjust the headrest so that it properly supports the head and neck.

**⚠ CAUTION**

***Excessive pulling or pushing may damage the headrest.***

XM CAN (ENG) 3.QXP 11/26/2009 11:39 AM Page 9





OXM039012

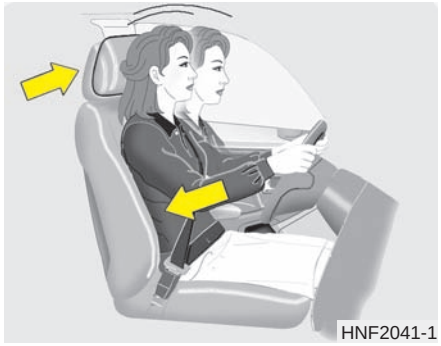
**Removal (except active headrest)**

To remove the headrest, raise it as far as it can go then press the release button (1) while pulling the headrest up (2).

To reinstall the headrest, put the headrest poles (3) into the holes while pressing the release button (1). Then adjust it to the appropriate height.

**⚠ WARNING**

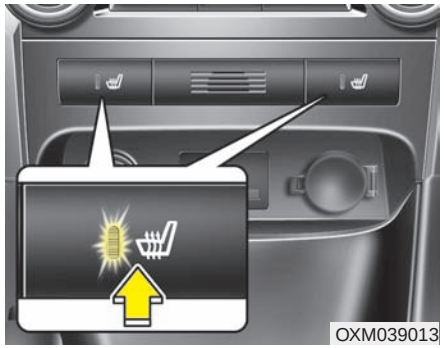
**Make sure the headrest locks in position after adjusting it to properly protect the occupants.**


HNF2041-1

**Active headrest (if equipped)**

The active headrest is designed to move forward and upward during a rear impact. This helps prevent the driver's and front passenger's heads from moving backward and thus helps minimize neck injuries.

For your safety, the active headrest can't be removed. If there is any problem with the active headrest, take your vehicle to an authorized KIA dealer and have the system checked.


OXM039013

C010107AUN

***Seat heater (if equipped)***

The seat heater is provided to warm the front seats during cold weather. With the ignition switch in the ON position, push either of the switches to warm the driver's seat or the front passenger's seat.

During mild weather or under conditions where the operation of the seat heater is not needed, keep the switches in the OFF position.

**✻ NOTICE**

**With the seat heater switch in the ON position, the heating system in the seat turns off or on automatically depending on the seat temperature.**

XM CAN (ENG) 3.QXP 11/26/2009 11:39 AM Page 10



**⚠ CAUTION**

- ***When cleaning the seats, do not use an organic solvent such as thinner, benzene, alcohol and gasoline. Doing so may damage the surface of the heater or seats.***
- ***To prevent overheating the seat heater, do not place blankets, cushions or seat covers on the seats while the seat heater is in operation.***
- ***Do not place heavy or sharp objects on seats equipped with seat heaters. Damage to the seat warming components could occur.***

**⚠ WARNING - Seat heater burns**

**Passengers should use extreme caution when using seat heaters due to the possibility of excess heating or burns. In particular, the driver must exercise extreme care for the following types of passengers:**

1. **Infants, children, elderly or disabled persons, or hospital outpatients**
2. **Persons with sensitive skin or those that burn easily**
3. **Fatigued individuals**
4. **Intoxicated individuals**
5. **Individuals taking medication that can cause drowsiness, sleepiness or impairment (sleeping pills, cold tablets, etc.)**

C010108AAM

***Seatback pocket (if equipped)***

**⚠ WARNING - Seatback pockets**

**Do not put heavy or sharp objects in the seatback pockets. In an accident they could come loose from the pocket and injure vehicle occupants.**

XM CAN (ENG) 3.QXP 11/26/2009 11:39 AM Page 11



**⚠ WARNING**

**For proper operation of the Occupant Detection System (ODS):**

- **Do not place any items cumulatively weighing over 1 kg (2.2 lbs) in the seatback pocket or on the seat.**
- **Do not hang onto the front passenger seat.**

OXM039016N

## Rear seat adjustment

C010307AHM-C1

***Seatback angle (2nd row seat)***

To recline the seatback:

1. Pull up the seatback recline lever.
2. Hold the lever and adjust the seatback of the seat to the position you desire.
3. Release the lever and make sure the seatback is locked in place. (The lever MUST return to its original position for the seatback to lock.)

***Folding the rear seat***

The rear seatbacks can be folded to facilitate carrying long items or to increase the luggage capacity of the vehicle.

**⚠ WARNING**

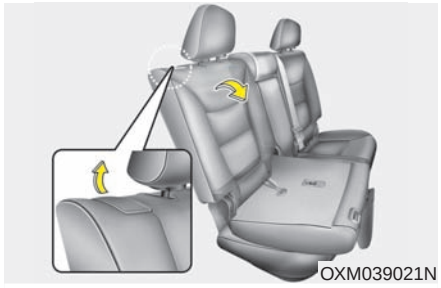
**The purpose of the fold-down rear seatbacks is to allow you to carry longer objects that could not be accommodated in the cargo area.**

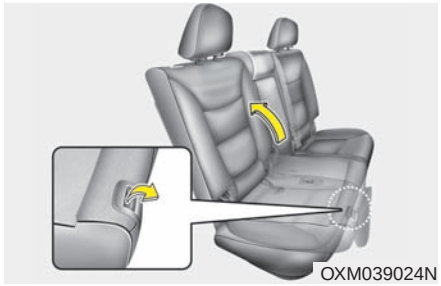
**Never allow passengers sit on top of the folded down seatback while the vehicle is moving. This is not a proper seating position and no seat belts are available for use.**

**Ignoring this warning could result in serious injury or death in case of an accident or sudden stop. Objects carried on the folded down seatback should not extend higher than the top of the front seatbacks. Doing this could allow cargo to slide forward and cause injury or damage during sudden stops.**

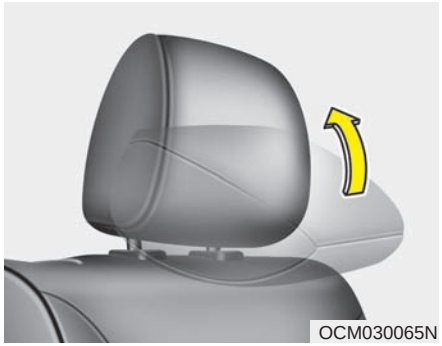
**2nd row seat**

1. Insert the rear seat belt buckle in the pocket (if equipped) between the rear seatback and cushion, and insert the rear seat belt webbing into the guide to prevent the seat belt from being damaged.
2. Set the front seatback to the upright position and if necessary, slide the front seat forward.
3. Lower the rear headrests to the lowest position.


OXM039021N


OXM039024N

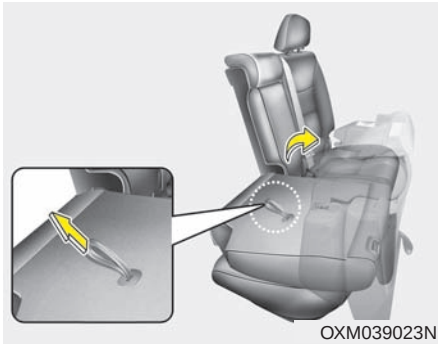
4. Pull on the seatback folding lever, then fold the seat toward the front of the vehicle.
5. When you return the seatback to its upright position, always be sure it has locked into position by pushing on the top of the seatback.


OCM030065N

6. Also, unfold the headrest manually.
7. Return the rear seat belt to the proper position.

XM CAN (ENG) 3.QXP 11/26/2009 11:40 AM Page 13




OXM039023N

**Double folding**
**(2nd row right seat, if equipped)**

Pull the double folding strap on the right rear seatback, then pull up the rear of the portion seat cushion toward the front of the vehicle. When you return the seat cushion to its original position, always be sure it has locked into position by pulling the rear portion of the seat cushion.

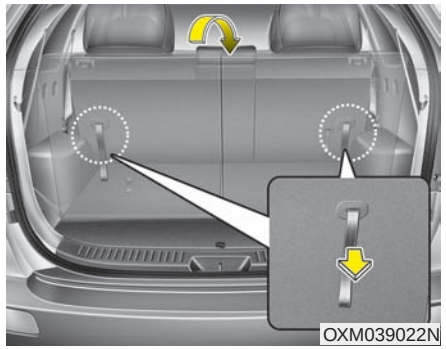
**⚠ WARNING**

**When you return the rear seatback to its upright position after being folded down:**

**Be careful not to damage the seat belt webbing or buckle. Do not allow the seat belt webbing or buckle to get caught or pinched in the rear seat. Ensure that the seatback is completely locked into its upright position by pushing on the top of the seatback. Otherwise, in an accident or sudden stop, the seat could fold down and allow cargo to enter the passenger compartment, which could result in serious injury or death.**

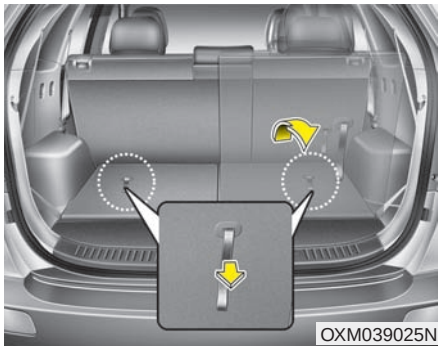
**⚠ WARNING - Uprighting seat**

**When you return the seatback to its upright position, hold the seatback and return it slowly and be sure there are no other occupants around the seat. If the seatback is returned without being held and controlled, the back of the seat could move forward or backward resulting in accidental injury to a person struck by the seatback.**


OXM039022N

**3rd row seat (if equipped)**

1. Insert the rear seat belt buckle in the pocket between the rear seatback and cushion, and insert the rear seat belt webbing into the guide to prevent the seat belt from being damaged.
2. Set the 2nd row seatback to the upright position.
3. Pull on the seatback folding strap, then fold the seat toward the front of the vehicle.


OXM039025N

4. To use the rear seat, lift and pull the seatback backward by pulling on the folding strap. Pull the seatback firmly until it clicks into place. Make sure the seatback is locked in place.
5. Unfold the headrest manually.
6. Return the rear seat belt to the proper position.

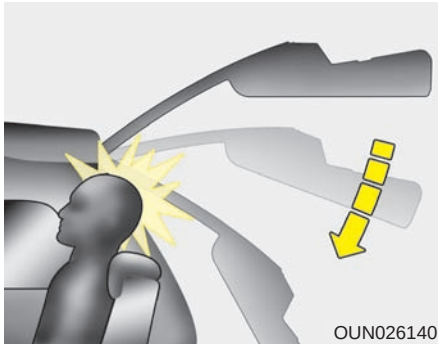
**⚠ WARNING**

**When you return the rear seatback to its upright position after being folded down:**

**Be careful not to damage the seat belt webbing or buckle. Do not allow the seat belt webbing or buckle to get caught or pinched in the rear seat. Ensure that the seatback is completely locked into its upright position by pushing on the top of the seatback. Otherwise, in an accident or sudden stop, the seat could fold down and allow cargo to enter the passenger compartment, which could result in serious injury or death.**

XM CAN (ENG) 3.QXP 11/26/2009 11:40 AM Page 15




OUN026140

**⚠ WARNING - 3rd row seat**

**3rd row occupants should always remain in the center of the seat cushion so the occupants head is protected by the headrest.**

**If not, the tailgate may hit the occupant's head, which could cause injury.**

**⚠ CAUTION - Damaging rear seat belt buckles**

***When you fold the rear (2nd and/or 3rd row) seatback, insert the buckle in the pocket between the rear seatback and cushion. Doing so can prevent the buckle from being damaged by the rear seatback.***

**⚠ CAUTION - Rear seat belts**

***When returning the rear (2nd and/or 3rd row) seatbacks to the upright position, remember to return the rear shoulder belts to their proper position. Routing the seat belt webbing through the rear seat belt guides will help keep the belts from being trapped behind or under the seats.***

**⚠ WARNING - Cargo**

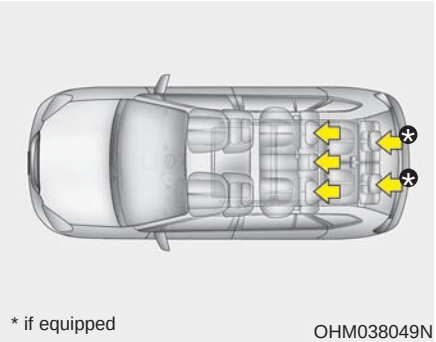
**Cargo should always be secured to prevent it from being thrown about the vehicle in a collision and causing injury to the vehicle occupants. Do not place objects on the rear (2nd and/or 3rd row) seats, since they cannot be properly secured and may hit the front seat occupants in a collision.**

**⚠ WARNING - Cargo loading**

**Make sure the engine is off, the automatic transaxle is in P (Park) and the parking brake is securely applied whenever loading or unloading cargo. Failure to take these steps may allow the vehicle to move if the shift lever is inadvertently moved to another position.**

XM CAN (ENG) 3.QXP 11/26/2009 11:40 AM Page 16





* if equipped

OHM038049N

C010303AHM

### *Headrest*

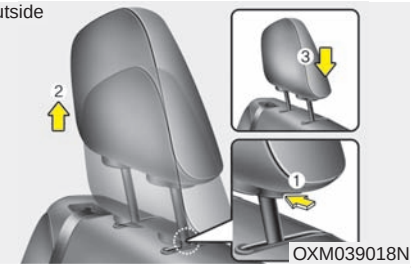
The rear seat(s) is equipped with headrests in all the seating positions for the occupant's safety and comfort.

The headrest not only provides comfort for passengers, but also helps protect the head and neck in the event of a collision.

**⚠ WARNING**

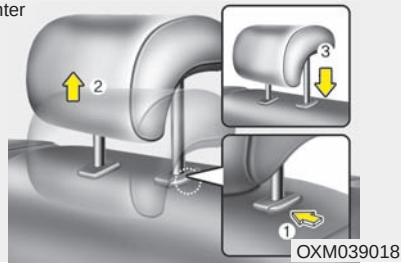
- **For maximum effectiveness in case of an accident, the 2nd row headrest should be adjusted so the middle of the headrest is at the same height of the center of gravity of an occupant's head. Generally, the center of gravity of most people's head is level to the height of the top of their eyes.**
- **Also adjust the headrest as close to your head as possible. For this reason, the use of a cushion that holds the body away from the seatback is not recommended.**
- **Do not operate the vehicle with the headrests removed. Severe injury to an occupant may occur in the event of an accident. Headrests may provide protection against severe neck injuries when properly adjusted.**
- **After adjusting or reinstalling the headrest, always make sure the headrest locks in the upright position to properly protect the occupants.**

Outside




OXM039018N

Center




OXM039018

**2nd row headrest**

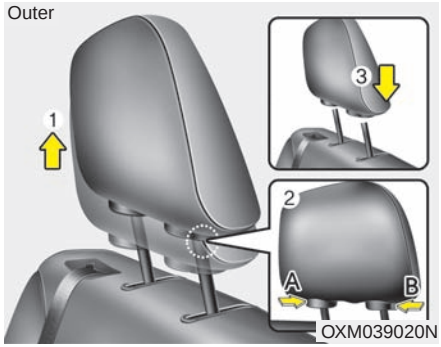
**Adjusting the height up and down**

To raise the headrest, push and hold the release button (1) while pulling it up to the desired position (2). To lower the headrest, push and hold the release button (1) on the headrest support and lower the headrest to the desired position (3).

XM CAN (ENG) 3.QXP 11/26/2009 11:40 AM Page 17



Outer




OXM039020N

**Removal**

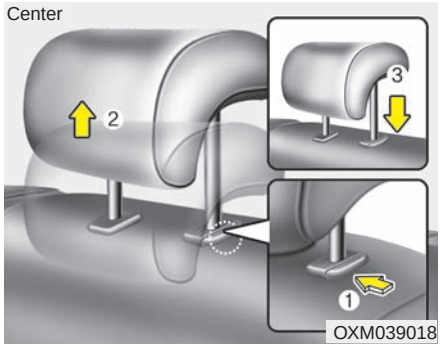
Outer

To remove the headrest,

1. Raise it as far as it can go.
2. Insert the small thin bar into the release hole (A).
3. While pressing the release hole (A), press the button (B), then pull the headrest up.

To reinstall the headrest, insert the headrest holes (3) into the poles and press the headrest down. Then adjust it to the appropriate height and make sure the headrest is locked in place.

Center

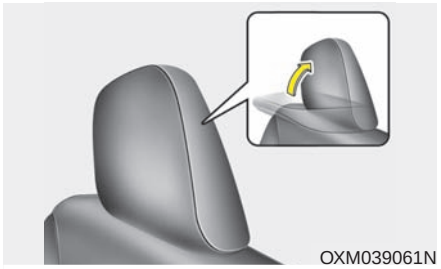



OXM039018

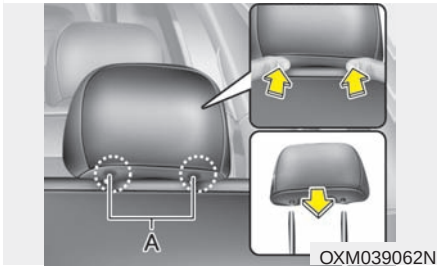
Center

To remove the headrest, raise it as far as it can go then press the release button while pulling the headrest up (2).

To reinstall the headrest, put the headrest poles (3) into the holes while pressing the release button (1). Then adjust it to the appropriate height.



OXM039061N




OXM039062N

**3rd row headrest (if equipped)**

The headrest will fold down automatically when the seatback folding.

Always be sure the headrest has locked into position after you return the seatback.

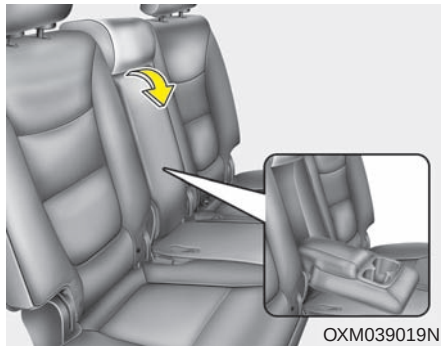
**Removal**

To remove the headrest, press the both release buttons (A) inside the headrest while pulling the headrest up.

To reinstall the headrest, put the headrest holes into the poles and press the headrest down. Then, make sure the headrest is locked in place.

XM CAN (ENG) 3.QXP 11/26/2009 11:40 AM Page 18






***Armrest (2nd row seat)***

To use the armrest, pull it forward from the seatback.

## SEAT BELTS

C020100AHM

### Seat belt restraint system

**⚠ WARNING**

- **For maximum restraint system protection, the seat belts must always be used whenever the vehicle is moving.**
- **Seat belts are most effective when seatbacks are in the upright position.**
- **Children age 12 and under must always be properly restrained in the rear seat. Never allow children to ride in the front passenger seat. If a child over 12 must be seated in the front seat, he/she must be properly belted and the seat should be moved as far back as possible.**
- **Never wear the shoulder belt under your arm or behind your back. An improperly positioned shoulder belt can cause serious injuries in a crash. The shoulder belt should be positioned midway over your shoulder across your collarbone.**

**(Continued)**

**(Continued)**

- **Avoid wearing twisted seat belts. A twisted belt can't do its job well. In a collision, it could even cut into you. Be sure the belt webbing is straight and not twisted.**
- **Be careful not to damage the belt webbing or hardware. If the belt webbing or hardware is damaged, replace it.**

XM CAN (ENG) 3.QXP 11/26/2009 11:40 AM Page 19



**⚠ WARNING**

**Seat belts are designed to bear upon the bony structure of the body, and should be worn low across the front of the pelvis or the pelvis, chest and shoulders, as applicable; wearing the lap section of the belt across the abdominal area must be avoided.**

**Seat belts should be adjusted as firmly as possible, consistent with comfort, to provide the protection for which they have been designed. A slack belt will greatly reduce the protection afforded to the wearer.**

**Care should be taken to avoid contamination of the webbing with polishes, oils and chemicals, and particularly battery acid. Cleaning may safely be carried out using mild soap and water. The belt should be replaced if webbing becomes frayed, contaminated or damaged.**

**(Continued)**

**(Continued)**

**It is essential to replace the entire assembly after it has been worn in a severe impact even if damage to the assembly is not obvious. Belts should not be worn with straps twisted. Each belt assembly must only be used by one occupant; it is dangerous to put a belt around a child being carried on the occupant's lap.**

**⚠ WARNING**

**No modifications or additions should be made by the user which will either prevent the seat belt adjusting devices from operating to remove slack, or prevent the seat belt assembly from being adjusted to remove slack.**

1GQA2083

C020101AAM-EU

***Seat belt warning***

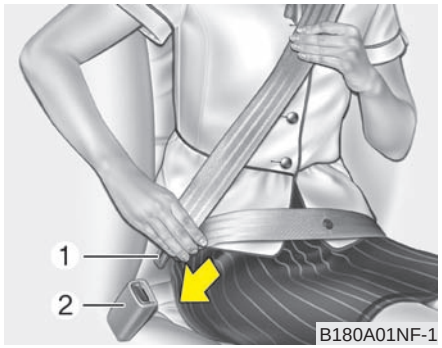
As a reminder to the driver, the seat belt warning light will blink for approximately 6 seconds each time you turn the ignition switch ON regardless of belt fastening.

XM CAN (ENG) 3.QXP 11/26/2009 11:40 AM Page 20



If the driver's seat belt is not fastened when the ignition switch is turned on, the seat belt warning light and the seat belt warning chime will operate for approximately 6 seconds. But if it is fastened within the 6 seconds, the warning light will blink until the 6 seconds are up. The warning chime will turn off immediately.

If the driver's seat belt is disconnected after the ignition switch is turned to the ON position, the seat belt warning light and chime will operate for approximately 6 seconds. But if it is fastened within the 6 seconds, the warning light and chime will turn off immediately. If the driver's seat belt is not fastened when the vehicle speed exceeds 10 km/h (6 mph), the seat belt warning light and chime will operate for approximately 11 times with a pattern of 6 seconds on and 24 seconds off until the belt is fastened or the vehicle speed decreases below 5 km/h (3 mph).




C020102AAM-EU

***Seat belt - Driver's 3-point system with emergency locking retractor***

**To fasten your seat belt:**

To fasten your seat belt, pull it out of the retractor and insert the metal tab (1) into the buckle (2). There will be an audible "click" when the tab locks into the buckle.

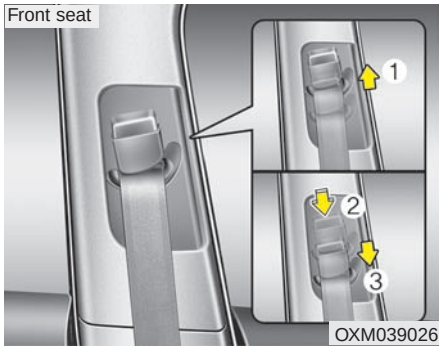
The seat belt automatically adjusts to the proper length only after the lap belt portion is adjusted manually so that it fits snugly around your hips. If you lean forward in a slow, easy motion, the belt will extend and let you move around. If there is a sudden stop or impact, however, the belt will lock into position. It will also lock if you try to lean forward too quickly.

### ✻ NOTICE

**If you are not able to pull out the seat belt from the retractor, firmly pull the belt out and release it. Then you will be able to pull the belt out smoothly.**

XM CAN (ENG) 3.QXP 11/26/2009 11:41 AM Page 21






**Height adjustment**

You can adjust the height of the shoulder belt anchor to one of the 4 positions for maximum comfort and safety.

The height of the adjusting seat belt should not be too close to your neck. The shoulder portion should be adjusted so that it lies across your chest and midway over your shoulder near the door and not your neck.

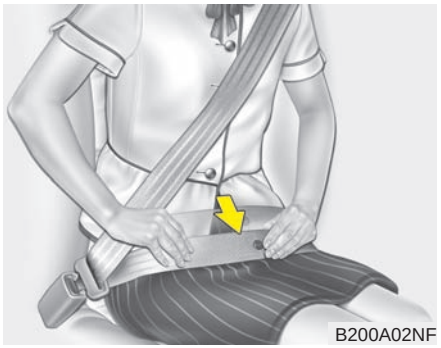
To adjust the height of the seat belt anchor, lower or raise the height adjuster into an appropriate position.

To raise the height adjuster, pull it up (1). To lower it, push it down (3) while pressing the height adjuster button (2).

Release the button to lock the anchor into position. Try sliding the height adjuster to make sure that it has locked into position.

**⚠ WARNING**

- **Verify that the shoulder belt anchor is locked into position at the appropriate height. Never position the shoulder belt across your neck or face. Improperly positioned seat belts can cause serious injuries in an accident.**
- **Failure to replace seat belts after an accident could leave you with damaged seat belts that will not provide protection in the event of another collision leading to personal injury or death. Replace your seat belts after being in an accident as soon as possible.**




**⚠ WARNING**

**You should place the lap belt portion as low as possible and snugly across your hips, not on your waist. If the lap belt is located too high on your waist, it may increase the chance of injury in the event of a collision. Both arms should not be under or over the belt. Rather, one should be over and the other under, as shown in the illustration.**

**Never wear the seat belt under the arm that is near the door.**

XM CAN (ENG) 3.QXP 11/26/2009 11:41 AM Page 22



C020106AUN

***Seat belts - Front passenger and rear seat 3-point system with combination locking retractor***

**To fasten your seat belt:**

Combination retractor type seat belts are installed in the rear seat positions to help accommodate the installation of child restraint systems. Although a combination retractor is also installed in the front passenger seat position, it is strongly recommended that children always be seated in the rear seat. NEVER place any infant restraint system in the front seat of the vehicle.

This type of seat belt combines the features of both an emergency locking retractor seat belt and an automatic locking retractor seat belt. To fasten your seat belt, pull it out of the retractor and insert the metal tab into the buckle. There will be an audible "click" when the tab locks into the buckle. When not securing a child restraint, the seat belt operates in the same way as the driver's seat belt (Emergency Locking Retractor Type). It automatically adjusts to the proper length only after the lap belt portion of the seat belt is adjusted manually so that it fits snugly around your hips.

When the seat belt is fully extended from the retractor to allow the installation of a child restraint system, the seat belt operation changes to allow the belt to retract, but not to extend (Automatic Locking Retractor Type). Refer to “Using a child restraint system” in this section.

### ✻ NOTICE

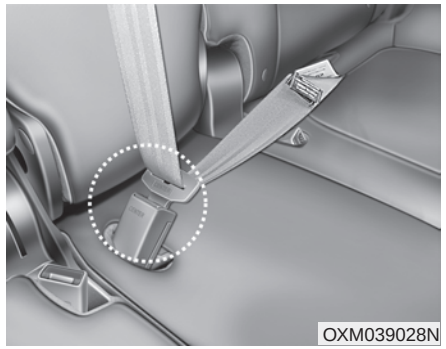
**Although the combination retractor provides the same level of protection for seated passengers in either emergency or automatic locking modes, have the seated passengers use the emergency locking feature for improved convenience. The automatic locking function is intended to facilitate child restraint installation. To convert from the automatic locking feature to the emergency locking operation mode, allow the unbuckled seat belt to fully retract.**

### ⚠ CAUTION

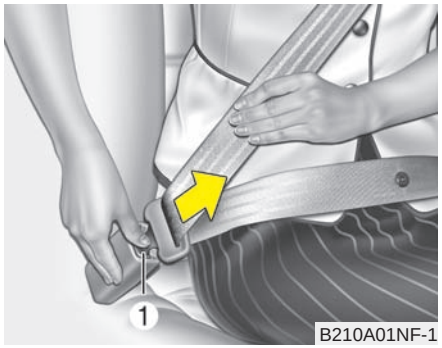
***Do NOT fold down the left portion of the rear seat back when the rear center seat belt is buckled. ALWAYS UNBUCKLE the rear center seat belt before folding down the left portion of the rear seat back. If the rear center seat belt is buckled when the left portion of the rear seat back is folded down, distortion and damage to the top portion of the seat back and seat belt garnish may result, causing the seat back to lock into the folded down position.***

XM CAN (ENG) 3.QXP 11/26/2009 11:41 AM Page 23






When using the rear center seat belt, the buckle with the “CENTER” mark must be used.

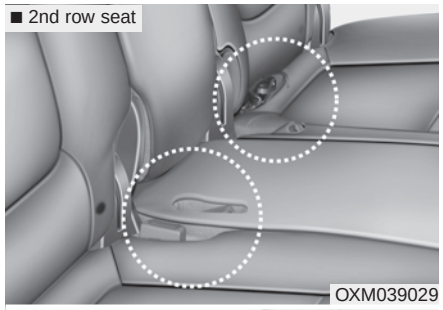



**To release the seat belt:**

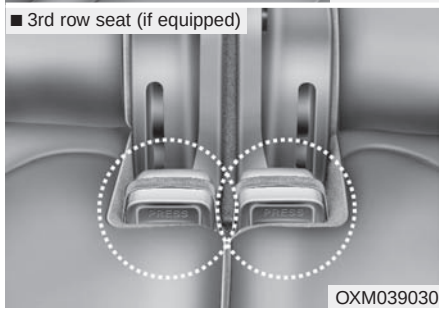
The seat belt is released by pressing the release button (1) on the locking buckle. When it is released, the belt should automatically draw back into the retractor.

If this does not happen, check the belt to be sure it is not twisted, then try again.

■ 2nd row seat




■ 3rd row seat (if equipped)




C020105AAM

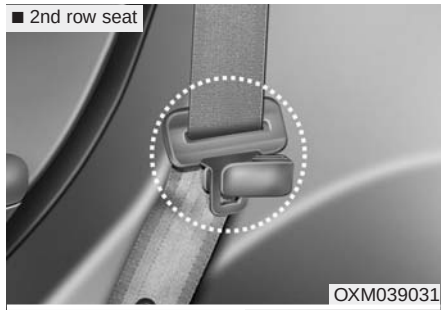
***Stowing the rear seat belt***

The rear seat belt buckles can be stowed in the pocket between the rear seatback and cushion when not in use.

XM CAN (ENG) 3.QXP 11/26/2009 11:41 AM Page 24

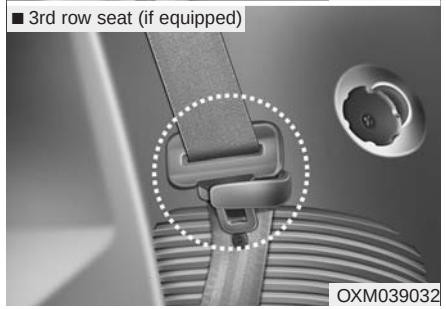


■ 2nd row seat



OXM039031

■ 3rd row seat (if equipped)



OXM039032

Routing the seat belt webbing through the rear seat belt guides will help keep the belts from being trapped behind or under the seats.

After inserting the seat belt, tighten the belt webbing by pulling it up.

### ⚠ CAUTION

***Remove the seat belt from the guides before using. If you pull on the seat belt when it is stored in the guides, it may damage the guides and/or belt webbing.***

OED030300

C020200BHM-EU

## Pre-tensioner seat belt

Your vehicle is equipped with driver's and front passenger's pre-tensioner seat belts. The purpose of the pre-tensioner is to make sure that the seat belts fit tightly against the occupant's body in certain frontal collisions (or side collisions or rollovers). The pre-tensioner seat belts can be activated, where the frontal collision (or side collisions or rollovers) is severe enough, together with the air bags.

XM CAN (ENG) 3.QXP 11/26/2009 11:41 AM Page 25

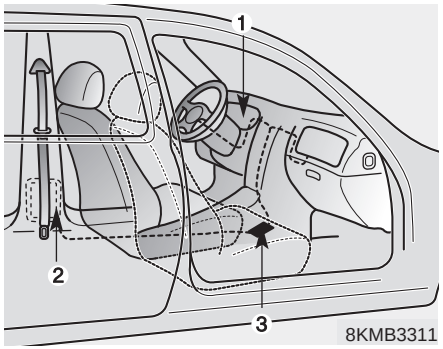


When the vehicle stops suddenly, or if the occupant tries to lean forward too quickly, the seat belt retractor will lock into position. In certain frontal collisions (or side collisions or rollovers), the pre-tensioner will activate and pull the seat belt into tighter contact against the occupant's body.

If the system senses excessive seat belt tension on the driver or passenger's seat belt when the pre-tensioner activates, the load limiter inside the pre-tensioner will release some of the pressure on the affected seat belt.

### ✻ NOTICE

**The pre-tensioner will activate not only in a frontal collision but also in a side collision or rollover, if the vehicle is equipped with a side or curtain air bag.**




The seat belt pre-tensioner system consists mainly of the following components. Their locations are shown in the illustration:

1. SRS air bag warning light
2. Retractor pre-tensioner assembly
3. SRS control module

### ⚠ WARNING

**To obtain maximum benefit from a pre-tensioner seat belt:**

1. **The seat belt must be worn correctly and adjusted to the proper position. Please read and follow all of the important information and precautions about your vehicle's occupant safety features – including seat belts and air bags – that are provided in this manual.**
2. **Be sure you and your passengers always wear seat belts properly.**

XM CAN (ENG) 3.QXP 11/26/2009 11:41 AM Page 26



### ✻ NOTICE

- **Both the driver's and front passenger's pre-tensioner seat belts may be activated in certain frontal collisions. The pre-tensioners will not be activated if the seat belts are not being worn at the time of the collision.**
- **When the pre-tensioner seat belts are activated, a loud noise may be heard and fine dust, which may appear to be smoke, may be visible in the passenger compartment. These are normal operating conditions and are not hazardous.**
- **Although it is harmless, the fine dust may cause skin irritation and should not be breathed for prolonged periods. Wash all exposed skin areas thoroughly after an accident in which the pre-tensioner seat belts were activated.**

### ✻ NOTICE

**Because the sensor that activates the SRS air bag is connected with the pre-tensioner seat belt, the SRS air bag warning light ( ) on the instrument panel will illuminate for approximately 6 seconds after the ignition switch has been turned to the ON position, and then it should turn off.**

### ⚠ CAUTION

***If the pre-tensioner seat belt is not working properly, this warning light will illuminate even if there is no malfunction of the SRS air bag. If the SRS air bag warning light does not illuminate when the ignition switch is turned ON, or if it remains illuminated after illuminating for approximately 6 seconds, or if it illuminates while the vehicle is being driven, please have an authorized KIA dealer inspect the pre-tensioner seat belt and SRS air bag system as soon as possible.***

### ⚠ WARNING

- **Pre-tensioners are designed to operate only one time. After activation, pre-tensioner seat belts must be replaced. All seat belts, of any type, should always be replaced after they have been worn during a collision.**
- **The pre-tensioner seat belt assembly mechanisms become hot during activation. Do not touch the pre-tensioner seat belt assemblies for several minutes after they have been activated.**
- **Do not attempt to inspect or replace the pre-tensioner seat belts yourself. This must be done by an authorized KIA dealer.**
- **Do not strike the pre-tensioner seat belt assemblies.**
- **Do not attempt to service or repair the pre-tensioner seat belt system in any manner.**
- **Do not put anything near the buckle. Placing objects near the buckle can adversely affect the buckle pretensioner and may increase the risk of personal injury in the event of a collision.**

**(Continued)**

XM CAN (ENG) 3.QXP 11/26/2009 11:41 AM Page 27



**(Continued)**

- **Improper handling of the pre-tensioner seat belt assemblies, and failure to heed the warnings not to strike, modify, inspect, replace, service or repair the pre-tensioner seat belt assemblies may lead to improper operation or inadvertent activation and serious injury.**
- **Always wear the seat belts when driving or riding in a motor vehicle.**
- **If the vehicle or pre-tensioner seat belt must be discarded, contact an authorized KIA dealer.**

C020300AUN-EU

## Seat belt precautions

**⚠ WARNING**

**All occupants of the vehicle must wear their seat belts at all times. Seat belts and child restraints reduce the risk of serious or fatal injuries for all occupants in the event of a collision or sudden stop. Without a seat belt, occupants could be shifted too close to a deploying air bag, strike the interior structure or be thrown from the vehicle. Properly worn seat belts greatly reduce these hazards.**

**Even with advanced air bags, unbelted occupants can be severely injured by a deploying air bag.**

**Always follow the precautions about seat belts, air bags and occupant seating contained in this manual.**

C020306AUN-EC

### *Infant or small child*

You should be aware of the specific requirements in your country. Child and/or infant seats must be properly placed and installed in the rear seat. For more information about the use of these restraints, refer to “Child restraint system” in this section.

**⚠ WARNING**

**Every person in your vehicle needs to be properly restrained at all times, including infants and children. Never hold a child in your arms or lap when riding in a vehicle. The violent forces created during a crash will tear the child from your arms and throw the child against the interior. Always use a child restraint appropriate for your child's height and weight.**

XM CAN (ENG) 3.QXP 11/26/2009 11:41 AM Page 28



### ✻ NOTICE

**Small children are best protected from injury in an accident when properly restrained in the rear seat by a child restraint system that meets the requirements of the Safety Standards of your country. Before buying any child restraint system, make sure that it has a label certifying that it meets the Safety Standard of your country. The restraint must be appropriate for your child's height and weight. Check the label on the child restraint for this information. Refer to "Child restraint system" in this section.**

C020301AHM

***Larger children***

Children who are too large for child restraint systems should always occupy the rear seat and use the available lap/shoulder belts. The lap portion should be fastened and snugged on the hips and as low as possible. Check if the belt fits periodically. A child's squirming could put the belt out of position. Children are given the most safety in the event of an accident when they are restrained by a proper restraint system in the rear seat. If a larger child (over age 12) must be seated in the front seat, the child should be securely restrained by the available lap/shoulder belt and the seat should be placed in the rearmost position. Children age 12 and under should be restrained securely in the rear seat. NEVER place a child age 12 and under in the front seat. NEVER place a rear facing child seat in the front seat of a vehicle.

If the shoulder belt portion slightly touches the child's neck or face, try placing the child closer to the center of the vehicle. If the shoulder belt still touches their face or neck they need to be returned to a child restraint system.

**⚠ WARNING - Shoulder belts on small children**

- **Never allow a shoulder belt to be in contact with a child's neck or face while the vehicle is in motion.**
- **If seat belts are not properly worn and adjusted on children, there is a risk of death or serious injury.**

XM CAN (ENG) 3.QXP 11/26/2009 11:41 AM Page 29



C020302AKM

### *Restraint of pregnant women*

Pregnant women should wear lap/shoulder belt assemblies whenever possible according to specific recommendations by their doctors. The lap portion of the belt should be worn AS SECURELY AND LOW AS POSSIBLE.

**⚠ WARNING - Pregnant women**

**Pregnant women must never place the lap portion of the safety belt over the area of the abdomen where the fetus is located or above the abdomen where the belt could crush the fetus during an impact.**

C020303AUN

### *Injured person*

A seat belt should be used when an injured person is being transported. When this is necessary, you should consult a physician for recommendations.

C020304AUN

### *One person per belt*

Two people (including children) should never attempt to use a single seat belt. This could increase the severity of injuries in case of an accident.

C020305AAM

### *Do not lie down*

To reduce the chance of injuries in the event of an accident and to achieve maximum effectiveness of the restraint system, all passengers should be sitting up and the front and rear seats should be in an upright position when the vehicle is moving. A seat belt cannot provide proper protection if the person is lying down in the rear seat or if the front and rear seats are in a reclined position.

**⚠ WARNING**

**Riding with a reclined seatback increases your chance of serious or fatal injuries in the event of a collision or sudden stop. The protection of your restraint system (seat belts and air bags) is greatly reduced by reclining your seat. Seat belts must be secured against your hips and chest to work properly. The more the seatback is reclined, the greater the chance an occupant's hips will slide under the lap belt causing serious internal injuries. Also, the shoulder belt may strike the occupant's neck. Drivers and passengers should always sit well back in their seats, properly belted, and with the seatbacks upright.**

XM CAN (ENG) 3.QXP 11/26/2009 11:41 AM Page 30



C020400AEN

## Care of seat belts

Seat belt systems should never be disassembled or modified. In addition, care should be taken to assure that seat belts and belt hardware are not damaged by seat hinges, doors or other abuse.

**⚠ WARNING**

**When you return the rear seatback to its upright position after the rear seatback has been folded down, be careful not to damage the seat belt webbing or buckle. Be sure that the webbing or buckle does not get caught or pinched in the rear seat. A seat belt with damaged webbing or buckle could possibly fail during a collision or sudden stop, resulting in serious injury. If the webbing or buckles are damaged, get them replaced immediately.**

C020401AEN

### *Periodic inspection*

All seat belts should be inspected periodically for wear or damage of any kind. Any damaged parts should be replaced as soon as possible.

C020402AUN

### *Keep belts clean and dry*

Seat belts should be kept clean and dry. If belts become dirty, they can be cleaned by using a mild soap solution and warm water. Bleach, dye, strong detergents or abrasives should not be used because they may damage and weaken the fabric.

C020403ASA

### *When to replace seat belts*

The entire in-use seat belt assembly or assemblies should be replaced if the vehicle has been involved in an accident. This should be done even if no damage is visible. Additional questions concerning seat belt operation should be directed to an authorized KIA dealer.

XM CAN (ENG) 3.QXP 11/26/2009 11:41 AM Page 31



## CHILD RESTRAINT SYSTEM

C030000AHM-EU

Children riding in the car should sit in the rear seat and must always be properly restrained to minimize the risk of injury in an accident, sudden stop or sudden maneuver. According to accident statistics, children are safer when properly restrained in the rear seats than in the front seat. Larger children not in a child restraint should use one of the seat belts provided.

You should be aware of the specific requirements in your country. Child and/or infant safety seats must be properly placed and installed in the rear seat. You must use a commercially available child restraint system that meets the requirements of the safety standards of your country.

Child restraint systems are designed to be secured in vehicle seats by seat belt, or by a tether anchor and/or LATCH anchors (if equipped).

Children could be injured or killed in a crash if their restraints are not properly secured. For small children and babies, a child seat or infant seat must be used. Before buying a particular child restraint system, make sure it fits your car seat and seat belts, and fits your child.

Follow all the instructions provided by the manufacturer when installing the child restraint system.

**⚠ WARNING**

- **A child restraint system must be placed in the rear seat. Never install a child or infant seat on the front passenger's seat. Should an accident occur and cause the passenger-side air bag to deploy, it could severely injure or kill an infant or child seated in an infant or child seat. Thus only use a child restraint in the rear seat of your vehicle.**

**(Continued)**

**(Continued)**

- **A seat belt or child restraint system can become very hot if it is left in a closed vehicle on a sunny day, even if the outside temperature does not feel hot. Be sure to check the seat cover and buckles before placing a child there.**
- **When the child restraint system is not in use, store it in the cargo area or fasten it with a seat belt so that it will not be thrown forward in case of a sudden stop or an accident.**
- **Children may be seriously injured or killed by an inflating air bag. All children, even those too large for child restraints, must ride in the rear seat.**

XM CAN (ENG) 3.QXP 11/26/2009 11:41 AM Page 32



**⚠ WARNING**

**To reduce the chance of serious or fatal injuries:**

- **Children of all ages are safer when restrained in the rear seat. A child riding in the front passenger seat can be forcefully struck by an inflating air bag resulting in serious or fatal injuries.**
- **Always follow the child restraint system manufacturer's instructions for installation and use of the child restraint.**
- **Always make sure the child seat is secured properly in the car and your child is securely restrained in the child seat.**
- **Never hold a child in your arms or lap when riding in a vehicle. The violent forces created during a crash will tear the child from your arms and throw the child against the car's interior.**
- **Never put a seat belt over yourself and a child. During a crash, the belt could press deep into the child causing serious internal injuries.**

**(Continued)**

**(Continued)**

- **Never leave children unattended in a vehicle – not even for a short time. The car can heat up very quickly, resulting in serious injuries to children inside. Even very young children may inadvertently cause the vehicle to move, entangle themselves in the windows, or lock themselves or others inside the vehicle.**
- **Never allow two children, or any two persons, to use the same seat belt.**
- **Children often squirm and reposition themselves improperly. Never let a child ride with the shoulder belt under their arm or behind their back. Always properly position and secure children in the rear seat.**
- **Never allow a child to stand-up or kneel on the seat or floor of a moving vehicle. During a collision or sudden stop, the child can be violently thrown against the vehicle's interior, resulting in serious injury.**

**(Continued)**

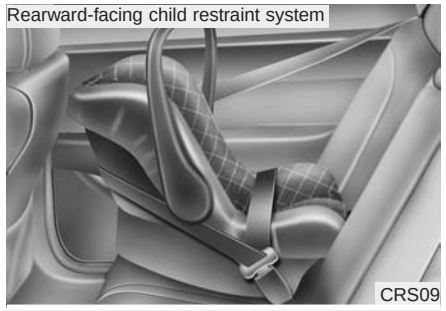
**(Continued)**

- **Never use an infant carrier or a child safety seat that "hooks" over a seatback, it may not provide adequate security in an accident.**
- **Seat belts can become very hot, especially when the car is parked in direct sunlight. Always check the seat belt buckles before fastening them over a child.**

XM CAN (ENG) 3.QXP 11/26/2009 11:41 AM Page 33



Rearward-facing child restraint system




Forward-facing child restraint system

C030100AHM-EU

## Using a child restraint system

For small children and babies, the use of a child seat or infant seat is required. The child seat or infant seat should be of appropriate size for the child and should be installed in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions.

For safety reasons, we recommend that the child restraint system be used in the rear seats.

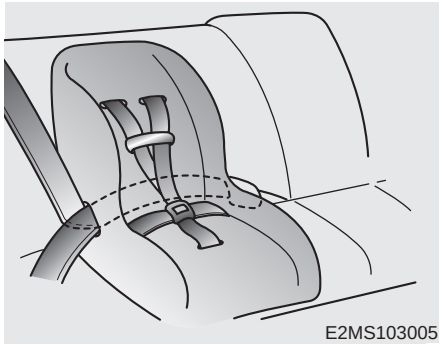
**⚠ WARNING**

**Never place a rear-facing child restraint in the front passenger seat, because of the danger an inflating passenger-side air bag could impact the rear-facing child restraint and kill the child.**

Since all passenger seat belts move freely under normal conditions and only lock under extreme or emergency conditions (emergency lock mode), you must manually change these seat belts to the auto lock mode to secure a child restraint.

**⚠ WARNING - Child seat installation**

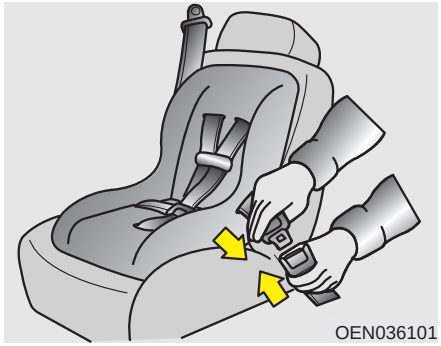
- **A child can be seriously injured or killed in a collision if the child restraint is not properly anchored to the car and the child is not properly restrained in the child restraint. Before installing the child restraint system, read the instructions supplied by the child restraint system manufacturer.**
- **If the seat belt does not operate as described in this section, have the system checked immediately by your authorized KIA dealer.**
- **Failure to observe this manual's instructions regarding child restraint systems and the instructions provided with the child restraint system could increase the chance and/or severity of injury in an accident.**


E2MS103005

C030102AAM-EU

***Placing a passenger seat belt into the auto lock mode***

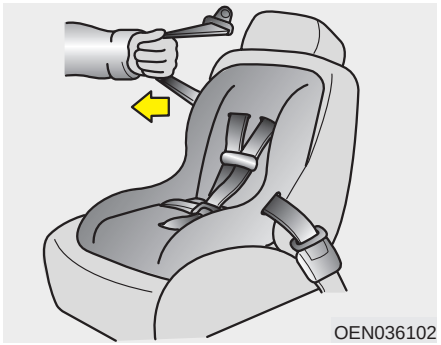
The auto lock mode will help prevent the normal movement of the child in the vehicle from causing the seat belt to loosen and compromise the child restraint system. To secure a child restraint system, use the following procedure.


OEN036101

To install a child restraint system on the outboard or center rear seats, do the following:

1. Place the child restraint system in the seat and route the lap/shoulder belt around or through the restraint, following the restraint manufacturer's instructions. Be sure the seat belt webbing is not twisted.
2. Fasten the lap/shoulder belt latch into the buckle. Listen for the distinct "click" sound.

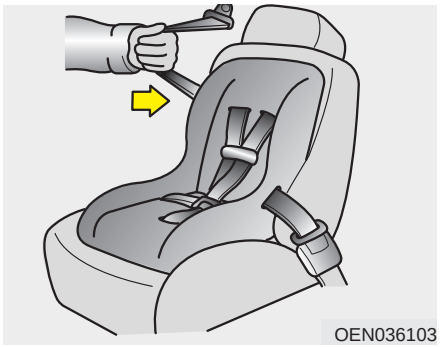
*Position the release button so that it is easy to access in case of an emergency.*


OEN036102

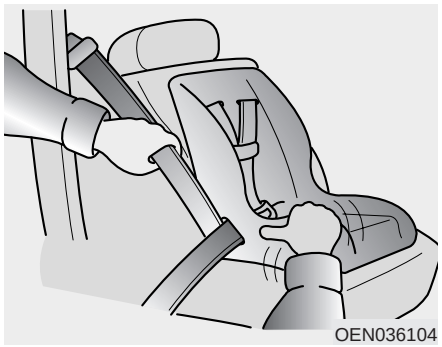
3. Pull the shoulder portion of the seat belt all the way out. When the shoulder portion of the seat belt is fully extended, it will shift the retractor to the "Auto Lock" (child restraint) mode.

XM CAN (ENG) 3.QXP 11/26/2009 11:41 AM Page 35




OEN036103

4. Slowly allow the shoulder portion of the seat belt to retract and listen for an audible “clicking” or “ratcheting” sound. This indicates that the retractor is in the “Auto Lock” mode. If no distinct sound is heard, repeat steps 3 and 4.


OEN036104

5. Remove as much slack from the belt as possible by pushing down on the child restraint system while feeding the shoulder belt back into the retractor.
6. Push and pull on the child restraint system to confirm that the seat belt is holding it firmly in place. If it is not, release the seat belt and repeat steps 2 through 6.
7. Double check that the retractor is in the “Auto Lock” mode by attempting to pull more of the seat belt out of the retractor. If you cannot, the retractor is in the “Auto Lock” mode.

To remove the child restraint, press the release button on the buckle and then pull the lap/shoulder belt out of the restraint and allow the seat belt to retract fully.

**⚠ WARNING - Auto lock mode**

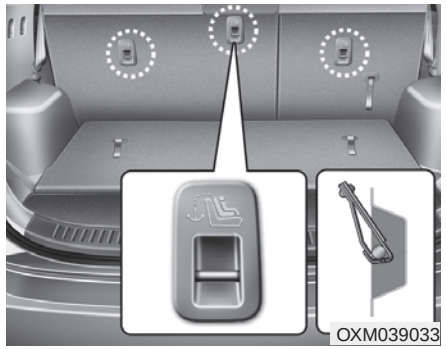
**The lap/shoulder belt automatically returns to the “emergency lock mode” whenever the belt is allowed to retract fully. Therefore, the preceding seven steps must be followed each time a child restraint is installed.**

**If the retractor is not in the Automatic Locking mode, the child restraint can move when your vehicle turns or stops suddenly. A child can be seriously injured or killed if the child restraint is not properly anchored to the car, including setting the retractor to the Automatic Locking mode.**

**When the seat belt is allowed to retract to its fully stowed position, the retractor will automatically switch from the “Auto Lock” mode to the emergency lock mode for normal adult usage.**

XM CAN (ENG) 3.QXP 11/26/2009 11:41 AM Page 36

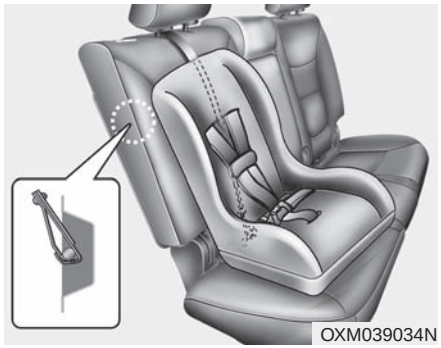





C030103AEN

***Securing a child restraint seat with tether anchor system***

Child restraint hook holders are located on the back of the rear seatbacks.




1. Route the child restraint seat strap over the seatback.
   For vehicles with adjustable headrests, route the tether strap under the headrest and between the headrest posts, otherwise route the tether strap over the top of the seatback.
2. Connect the tether strap hook to the appropriate child restraint hook holder and tighten to secure the child restraint seat.

**⚠ WARNING**

**A child can be seriously injured or killed in a collision if the child restraint is not properly anchored to the car and the child is not properly restrained in the child restraint. Always follow the child seat manufacturer's instructions for installation and use.**

**⚠ WARNING - Tether strap**

**Never mount more than one child restraint to a single tether or to a single lower anchorage point. The increased load caused by multiple seats may cause the tethers or anchorage points to break, causing serious injury or death.**

XM CAN (ENG) 3.QXP 11/26/2009 11:41 AM Page 37

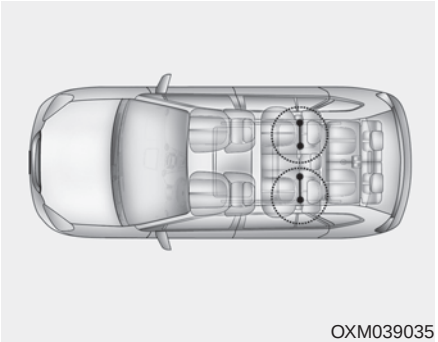


**⚠ WARNING - Child restraint check**

**Check that the child restraint system is secure by pushing and pulling it in different directions. Incorrectly fitted child restraints may swing, twist, tip or separate causing death or serious injury.**

**⚠ WARNING - Child restraint anchorage**

- **Child restraint anchorages are designed to withstand only those loads imposed by correctly fitted child restraints. Under no circumstances are they to be used for adult seat belts or harnesses or for attaching other items or equipment to the vehicle.**
- **The tether strap may not work properly if attached somewhere other than the correct tether anchor.**

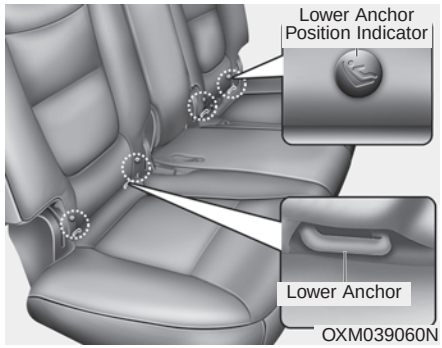


OXM039035

C030104AHM-EU

***Securing a child restraint seat with child seat lower anchor system***

Some child seat manufacturers make child restraint seats that are labeled as LATCH or LATCH-compatible child restraint seats. LATCH stands for "Lower Anchors and Tethers for Children". These seats include two rigid or webbing mounted attachments that connect to two LATCH anchors at specific seating positions in your vehicle. This type of child restraint seat eliminates the need to use seat belts to attach the child seat in the rear seats.




OXM039060N

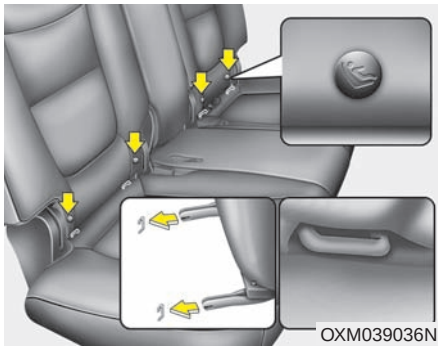
Child restraint symbols are located on the left and right 2nd row seat backs to indicate the position of the lower anchors for child restraints.

**⚠ WARNING**

**When using the vehicle's "LATCH" system to install a child restraint system in the rear seat, all unused vehicle rear seat belt metal latch plates or tabs must be latched securely in their seat belt buckles and the seat belt webbing must be retracted behind the child restraint to prevent the child from reaching and taking hold of unretracted seat belts. Unlatched metal latch plates or tabs may allow the child to reach the unretracted seat belts which may result in strangulation and a serious injury or death to the child in the child restraint.**

**⚠ WARNING**

**Install the child restraint seat fully rearward against the seatback with the seatback reclined two positions from the most upright latched position.**



OXM039036N

LATCH anchors have been provided in your vehicle. The LATCH anchors are located in the left and right outboard rear seating positions. Their locations are shown in the illustration. There is no LATCH anchor provided for the center rear seating position.

The LATCH anchors are located between the seatback and the seat cushion of the 2nd row seat left and right outboard seating positions.

Follow the child seat manufacturer's instructions to properly install child restraint seats with LATCH or LATCH-compatible attachments.

Once you have installed the LATCH child restraint, assure that the seat is properly attached to the LATCH and tether anchors.

Also, test the child restraint seat before you place the child in it. Tilt the seat from side to side. Also try to tug the seat forward. Check to see if the anchors hold the seat in place.

**⚠ CAUTION**

***Do not allow the rear seat belt webbing to get scratched or pinched by the child-seat latch and LATCH anchor during the installation.***

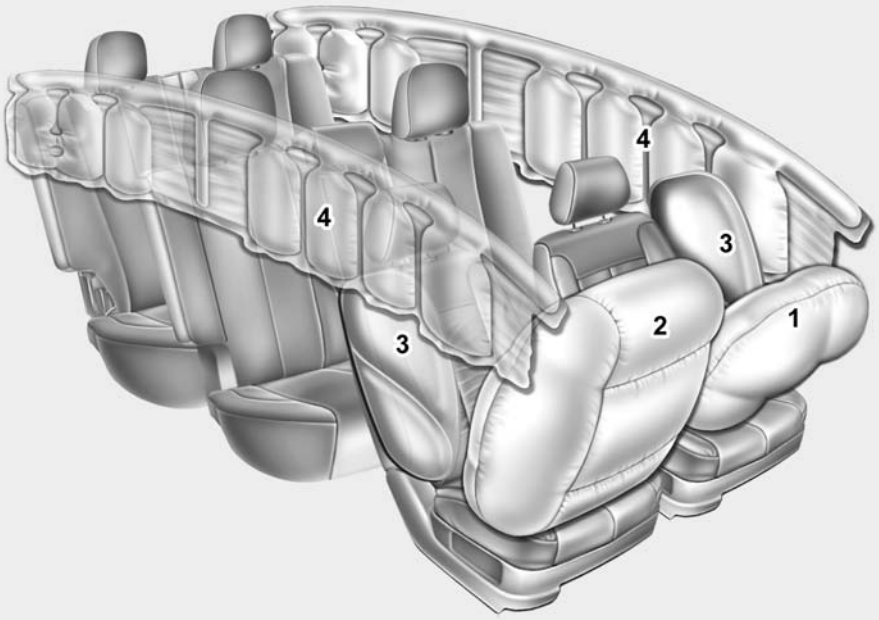
**⚠ WARNING**

**If the child restraint is not anchored properly, the risk of a child being seriously injured or killed in a collision greatly increases.**

**⚠ WARNING - LATCH lower anchors**

**LATCH lower anchors are only to be used with the left and right rear outboard seating positions. Never attempt to attach a LATCH equipped seat in the center seating position. You may damage the anchors or the anchors may fail and break in a collision.**

## AIR BAG - ADVANCED SUPPLEMENTAL RESTRAINT SYSTEM




* The actual air bags in the vehicle may differ from the illustration.
* 3rd row seat : if equipped

OXM039101N

C040000AUN-C1

(1) Driver's front air bag
(2) Passenger's front air bag
(3) Side impact air bag
(4) Curtain air bag

**⚠ WARNING**

**Even in vehicles with air bags, you and your passengers must always wear the safety belts provided in order to minimize the risk and severity of injury in the event of a collision or rollover.**

XM CAN (ENG) 3.QXP 11/26/2009 11:42 AM Page 40



C040900AHM-EU

## How does the air bag system operate

- Air bags are activated (able to inflate if necessary) only when the ignition switch is turned to the ON or START position.
- Air bags inflate instantly in the event of a serious frontal collision or side collision in order to help protect the occupants from serious physical injury.

  Also, the side and/or curtain air bags inflate instantly in the event of a rollover in order to help protect the occupants from serious physical injury.
- There is no single speed at which the air bags will inflate.

  Generally, air bags are designed to inflate based upon the severity of a collision and its direction. These two factors determine whether the sensors produce an electronic deployment/inflation signal.
- Air bag deployment depends on a number of factors including vehicle speed, angles of impact and the density and stiffness of the vehicles or objects which your vehicle hits in the collision. The determining factors are not limited to those mentioned above.
- The front air bags will completely inflate and deflate in an instant.

  It is virtually impossible for you to see the air bags inflate during an accident.

  It is much more likely that you will simply see the deflated air bags hanging out of their storage compartments after the collision.
- In order to help provide protection in a severe collision, the air bags must inflate rapidly. The speed of the air bag inflation is a consequence of extremely short time in which a collision occurs and the need to inflate the air bag between the occupant and the vehicle structures before the occupant impacts those structures. This speed of inflation reduces the risk of serious or life-threatening injuries in a severe collision and is thus a necessary part of the air bag design.

  However, air bag inflation can also cause injuries which can include facial abrasions, bruises and broken bones because the inflation speed also causes the air bags to expand with a great deal of force.
- **There are even circumstances under which contact with the steering wheel or passenger air bag can cause fatal injuries, especially if the occupant is positioned excessively close to the steering wheel or passenger air bag.**

**⚠ WARNING**

- **To avoid severe personal injury or death caused by deploying air bags in a collision, the driver should sit as far back from the steering wheel air bag as possible (at least 250 mm (10 inches) away). The front passengers should always move their seats as far back as possible and sit back in their seat.**
- **Air bags inflate instantly in the event of a collision, and passengers may be injured by the air bag expansion force if they are not in a proper position.**
- **Air bag inflation may cause injuries including facial or bodily abrasions, injuries from broken glasses or burns.**

XM CAN (ENG) 3.QXP 11/26/2009 11:42 AM Page 41



C040902AUN

***Noise and smoke***

When the air bags inflate, they make a loud noise and they leave smoke and powder in the air inside of the vehicle. This is normal and is a result of the ignition of the air bag inflator. After the air bag inflates, you may feel substantial discomfort in breathing due to the contact of your chest with both the seat belt and the air bag, as well as from breathing the smoke and powder. **Open your doors and/or windows as soon as possible after impact in order to reduce discomfort and prevent prolonged exposure to the smoke and powder.**

Though smoke and powder are nontoxic, it may cause irritation to the skin (eyes, nose and throat, etc). If this is the case, wash and rinse with cold water immediately and consult a doctor if the symptom persists.

**⚠ WARNING**

**When the air bags deploy, the air bag related parts in the steering wheel and/or instrument panel and/or in both sides of the roof rails above the front and rear doors are very hot. To prevent injury, do not touch the air bag storage area's internal components immediately after an air bag has inflated.**

1JBH3051

C040903AEN

***Do not install a child restraint on the front passenger's seat.***

Never place a rear-facing child restraint in the front passenger's seat. If the air bag deploys, it would impact the rear-facing child restraint, causing serious or fatal injury.

In addition, do not place front-facing child restraints in the front passenger's seat either. If the front passenger air bag inflates, it could cause serious or fatal injuries to the child.

XM CAN (ENG) 3.QXP 11/26/2009 11:42 AM Page 42



**⚠ WARNING**

- **Extreme Hazard! Do not use a rearward facing child restraint on a seat protected by an air bag in front of it!**
- **Never put a child restraint in the front passenger's seat. If the front passenger air bag inflates, it would cause serious or fatal injuries.**
- **When children are seated in the rear outboard seats of vehicle equipped with side and/or curtain air bags, be sure to install the child restraint system as far away from the door side as possible, and securely lock the child restraint system in position.**

  **Inflation of side and/or curtain air bags could cause serious injury or death to an infant or child.**

W7-147

C041000AAM

## Air bag warning light

The purpose of the air bag warning light in your instrument panel is to alert you of a potential problem with your air bag - Supplemental Restraint System (SRS).

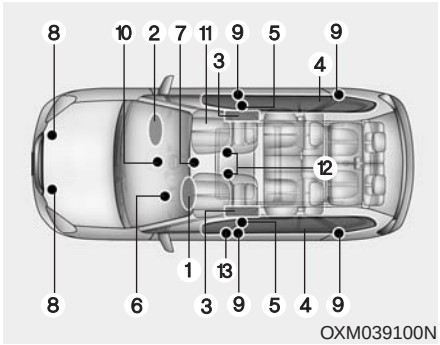
When the ignition switch is turned ON, the warning light should illuminate for approximately 6 seconds, then go off.

Have the system checked if:

- The light does not turn on briefly when you turn the ignition ON.
- The light stays on after illuminating for approximately 6 seconds.
- The light comes on while the vehicle is in motion.
- The light blinks when the ignition switch is in ON position.

XM CAN (ENG) 3.QXP 11/26/2009 11:42 AM Page 43





OXM039100N

C040100AHM-EU

## SRS components and functions

The SRS consists of the following components:

1. Driver's front air bag module
2. Passenger's front air bag module
3. Side impact air bag modules
4. Curtain air bag modules
5. Retractor pre-tensioner assemblies
6. Air bag warning light
7. SRS control module (SRSCM)/ Rollover sensor
8. Front impact sensors
9. Side impact sensors
10. PASSENGER “AIR BAG OFF” indicator (Front passenger’s seat only)
11. Occupant detection system (Front passenger’s seat only)
12. Driver’s and front passenger’s seat belt buckle sensors
13. Driver’s front anchor pre-tensioner

The SRSCM continually monitors all SRS components while the ignition switch is ON to determine if a crash impact is severe enough to require air bag deployment or pre-tensioner seat belt deployment.

The SRS air bag warning light on the instrument panel will illuminate for about 6 seconds after the ignition switch is turned to the ON position, after which the SRS air bag warning light should go out.

**⚠ WARNING**

**If any of the following conditions occurs, this indicates a malfunction of the SRS. Have an authorized KIA dealer inspect the air bag system as soon as possible.**

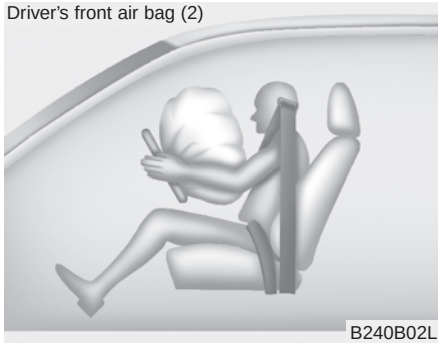
- **The light does not turn on briefly when you turn the ignition ON.**
- **The light stays on after illuminating for approximately 6 seconds.**
- **The light comes on while the vehicle is in motion.**
- **The light blinks when the ignition switch is in ON position.**

Driver’s front air bag (1)

B240B01L

The front air bag modules are located both in the center of the steering wheel and in the front passenger's panel above the glove box. When the SRSCM detects a sufficiently severe impact to the front of the vehicle, it will automatically deploy the front air bags.

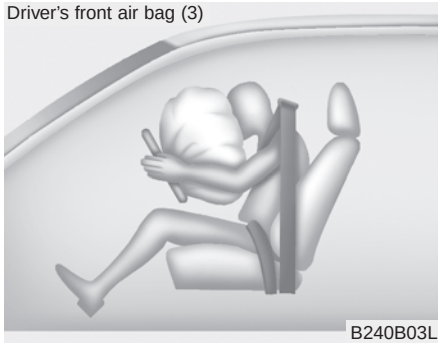
Driver's front air bag (2)



B240B02L

Upon deployment, tear seams molded directly into the pad covers will separate under pressure from the expansion of the air bags. Further opening of the covers then allows full inflation of the air bags.

Driver's front air bag (3)

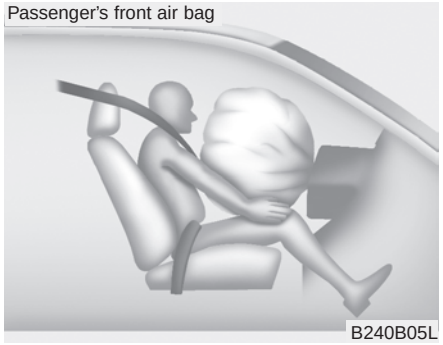


B240B03L

A fully inflated air bag, in combination with a properly worn seat belt, slows the driver's or the passenger's forward motion, reducing the risk of head and chest injury.

After complete inflation, the air bag immediately starts deflating, enabling the driver to maintain forward visibility and the ability to steer or operate other controls.

Passenger's front air bag



B240B05L

**⚠ WARNING**

- **Do not install or place any accessories (drink holder, cassette holder, sticker, etc.) on the front passenger's panel above the glove box in a vehicle with a passenger's air bag. Such objects may become dangerous projectiles and cause injury if the passenger's air bag inflates.**
- **When installing a container of liquid air freshener inside the vehicle, do not place it near the instrument cluster nor on the instrument panel surface.**

  **It may become a dangerous projectile and cause injury if the passenger's air bag inflates.**

XM CAN (ENG) 3.QXP 11/26/2009 11:42 AM Page 45



**⚠ WARNING**

- **If an air bag deploys, there may be a loud noise followed by a fine dust released in the vehicle. These conditions are normal and are not hazardous - the air bags are packed in this fine powder. The dust generated during air bag deployment may cause skin or eye irritation as well as aggravate asthma for some persons. Always wash all exposed skin areas thoroughly with lukewarm water and a mild soap after an accident in which the air bags were deployed.**
- **The SRS can function only when the ignition switch is in the ON position. If the SRS air bag warning light does not illuminate, or continuously remains on after illuminating for about 6 seconds when the ignition switch is turned to the ON position, or after the engine is started, comes on while driving, the SRS is not working properly. If this occurs, have your vehicle immediately inspected by an authorized KIA dealer.**

**(Continued)**

**(Continued)**

- **Before you replace a fuse or disconnect a battery terminal, turn the ignition switch to the LOCK position and remove the ignition switch. Never remove or replace the air bag related fuse(s) when the ignition switch is in the ON position. Failure to heed this warning will cause the SRS air bag warning light to illuminate.**

OXM039052N

C040300AAM

## Occupant Detection System (ODS)

Your vehicle is equipped with an occupant detection system in the front passenger's seat.

The occupant detection system is designed to detect the presence of a properly-seated front passenger and determine if the passenger's front air bag should be enabled (may inflate) or not. The driver's front air bag is not affected or controlled by the occupant detection system.

**⚠ WARNING**

**Do not put anything in front of the passenger air bag OFF indicator.**

XM CAN (ENG) 3.QXP 11/26/2009 11:42 AM Page 46



***Main components of occupant detection system***

- A detection device located within the front passenger seat cushion.
- An electronic system which determines whether the passenger air bag systems should be activated or deactivated.
- A indicator light located on the instrument panel which illuminates the words PASSENGER AIR BAG “OFF” indicating the front passenger air bag system is deactivated.
- The instrument panel air bag warning light is interconnected with the occupant detection system.

If the front passenger seat is occupied by a person that the system determines to be of appropriate size, and he/she sits properly (sitting upright with the seatback in an upright position, centered on the seat cushion with their seat belt on, legs comfortably extended and their feet on the floor), the PASSENGER AIR BAG “OFF” indicator will turn off and the front passenger's air bag will be able to inflate, if necessary, in frontal crashes.

You will find the PASSENGER AIR BAG “OFF” indicator on the center facia panel. This system detects the conditions 1~4 in the following table and activates or deactivates the front passenger air bag based on these conditions.

Always be sure that you and all vehicle occupants are seated and restrained properly (sitting upright with the seat in an upright position, centered on the seat cushion, with the person’s legs comfortably extended, feet on the floor, and wearing the safety belt properly) for the most effective protection by the air bag and the safety belt.

- The ODS (Occupant Detection System) may not function properly if the passenger takes actions which can defeat the detection system. These include:

(1) Failing to sit in an upright position.
(2) Leaning against the door or center console.
(3) Sitting towards the sides or the front of the seat.
(4) Putting legs on the dashboard or resting them on other locations which reduce the passenger weight on the front seat.
(5) Improperly wearing the safety belt.
(6) Reclining the seat back.

XM CAN (ENG) 3.QXP 11/26/2009 11:42 AM Page 47



C040301AXM-EU

***Condition and operation in the front passenger occupant detection system***

| Condition detected by the occupant detection system | Indicator/Warning light | | Devices |
|---|---|---|---|
| | "PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF" indicator light | SRS warning light | Front passenger air bag |
| 1. Adult or child*1 | Off | Off | Activated |
| 2. Child restraint system*2 | On | Off | Deactivated |
| 3. Unoccupied | On | Off | Deactivated |
| 4. There is a malfunction in the system | Off | On | Activated |

*1) The ODS system uses a field to evaluate a person's size to determine whether the air bag should deploy. It is possible for a child to be detected and activate the ODS, thus allowing the airbag to deploy. To maximize safety, do not allow children to ride in the front passenger seat.

*2) Never install a child restraint system on the front passenger seat.

**⚠ WARNING**

**Riding in an improper position or placing weight on the front passenger's seat when it is unoccupied by a passenger adversely affects the Occupant Detection System (ODS). Your ODS is designed to resist electronic waves, but do not place an electronic device such as laptop computer on or near the seat cushion since it may defeat the proper functioning of the ODS.**

**(Continued)**

XM CAN (ENG) 3.QXP 11/26/2009 11:42 AM Page 48



**(Continued)**

- **Never put a heavy load or an active electronic device on the front passenger seat or seatback pocket.**

- **Never sit with hips shifted towards the front of the seat.**

- **Never place feet on the dashboard.**

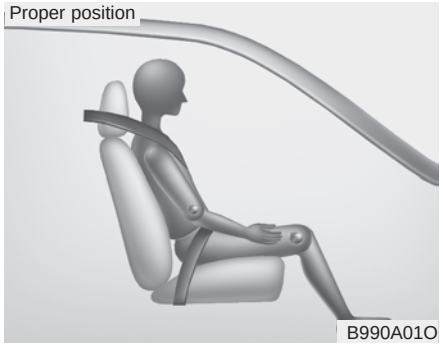
- **Never place feet on the front passenger seatback.**

- **Never excessively recline the front passenger seatback.**

- **Never lean on the door or center console.**
- **Never sit on one side of the front passenger seat.**

XM CAN (ENG) 3.QXP 11/26/2009 11:42 AM Page 49






When an adult is seated in the front passenger seat, if the PASSENGER AIR BAG “OFF” indicator is on, turn the ignition switch to the LOCK position and ask the passenger to sit properly (sitting upright with the seat back in an upright position, centered on the seat cushion with their seat belt on, legs comfortably extended and their feet on the floor). Restart the engine and have the person remain in that position. This will allow the system to detect the person and to enable the passenger air bag.

If the PASSENGER AIR BAG “OFF” indicator is still on, ask the passenger to move to the rear seat.

**⚠ WARNING**

**Do not allow an adult passenger to ride in the front seat when the “PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF” indicator is illuminated because the air bag will not deploy in the event of a crash. If the "PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF" indicator remains illuminated after the adult passenger repositions themselves properly and the car is restarted, have the passenger move to the rear seat because the passenger's front air bag will not deploy.**

**The "PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF" indicator will not change according to the occupants posture after the vehicle has been running for 30 seconds.**

**Front seat passengers must stay properly seated to avoid serious injury from a deploying air bag.**

## ✻ NOTICE

**The PASSENGER AIR BAG “OFF” indicator illuminates for about 4 seconds after the ignition switch is turned to the ON position or after the engine is started. If the front passenger seat is occupied, the occupant detection sensor will then classify the front passenger after several more seconds.**

**⚠ WARNING**

**Do not put a heavy load or an active electronic device (ex. laptop computer, navigation, etc.) in the front passenger seatback pocket or on the front passenger seat. Do not hang onto the front passenger seat. Do not hang any items such as seatback table on the front passenger seatback. Do not place feet on the front passenger seatback. Do not place any items under the front passenger seat. Any of these could interfere with proper sensor operation.**

XM CAN (ENG) 3.QXP 11/26/2009 11:42 AM Page 50



**⚠ WARNING**

- **Even though your vehicle is equipped with the occupant detection system, never install a child restraint system in the front passenger's seat. A deploying air bag can forcefully strike a child resulting in serious injuries or death. Any child age 12 and under should ride in the rear seat. Children too large for child restraints should use the available lap/shoulder belts. No matter what type of crash, children of all ages are safer when restrained in the rear seat.**
- **If the PASSENGER AIR BAG "OFF" indicator is illuminated when the front passenger's seat is occupied by an adult and he/she sits properly (sitting upright with the seatback in an upright position, centered on the seat cushion with their seat belt on, legs comfortably extended and their feet on the floor), have that person sit in the rear seat.**

**(Continued)**

**(Continued)**

- **If the front passenger seat is occupied by a child who is not in a CRS, the "PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF" indicator may or may not be on and the passenger airbag may or may not deploy in a collision. Have the child move to a rear seat to increase their safety.**
- **Do not modify or replace the front passenger seat. Don't place anything on or attach anything such as a blanket or seat heater to the front passenger seat. This can adversely affect the occupant detection system.**
- **Do not place sharp objects on the front passenger seat. These may damage the occupant detection system, if they puncture the seat cushion.**
- **Do not use accessory seat covers on the front seats.**

**(Continued)**

**(Continued)**

- **Accident statistics show that children are safer if they are restrained in the rear, as opposed to the front seat. It is recommended that child restraints be secured in a rear seat, including an infant riding in a rear-facing infant seat, a child riding in a forward-facing child seat and an older child riding in a booster seat.**
- **Air bags can only be used once – have an authorized KIA dealer replace the air bag immediately after deployment.**
- **The occupant detection system may not work properly if water, coffee or any other liquid including rain gets on the seat. Keep the front seat dry at all times.**
- **Do not place an electronic device such as a laptop computer on the front passenger seat. Its electronic field may cause the ODS to switch to the "on" condition and thus allow the passenger airbag to deploy needlessly in a collision, increasing your repair costs.**

XM CAN (ENG) 3.QXP 11/26/2009 11:42 AM Page 51



**⚠ WARNING**

**If the occupant detection system is not working properly, the SRS air bag warning light on the instrument panel will illuminate because the passenger's front air bag is connected with the occupant detection system. If there is a malfunction of the occupant detection system, the PASSENGER AIR BAG "OFF" indicator will not illuminate and the passenger's front air bag will inflate in frontal impact crashes even if there is no occupant in the front passenger's seat. If the SRS air bag warning light does not illuminate when the ignition switch is turned to the ON position, remains illuminated after approximately 6 seconds when the ignition switch is turned to the ON position, or if it illuminates while the vehicle is being driven, have an authorized KIA dealer inspect the occupant detection system and the SRS air bag system as soon as possible.**

Driver's front air bag

OXM039037N

Passenger's front air bag

OXM039038

C040400AAM-EU

## Driver's and passenger's front air bag

Your vehicle is equipped with an Advanced Supplemental Restraint (Air Bag) System and lap/shoulder belts at both the driver and passenger seating position.

The indication of the system's presence are the letters "AIR BAG" embossed on the air bag pad cover on the steering wheel and the passenger's side front panel pad above the glove box.

The SRS consists of air bags installed under the pad covers in the center of the steering wheel and the passenger's side front panel above the glove box.

The purpose of the SRS is to provide the vehicle's driver and/or the front passenger with additional protection than that offered by the seat belt system alone in case of a frontal impact of sufficient severity. The SRS uses sensors to gather information about the driver's and front passenger's seat belt usage and impact severity.

XM CAN (ENG) 3.QXP 11/26/2009 11:42 AM Page 52



**⚠ WARNING**

**If the occupant detection system is not working properly, the SRS air bag warning light on the instrument panel will illuminate because the SRS air bag warning light is connected with the occupant detection system. If the SRS air bag warning light does not illuminate when the ignition switch is turned to the ON position, remains illuminated after approximately 6 seconds when the ignition switch is turned to the ON position, or if it illuminates while the vehicle is being driven, have an authorized KIA dealer inspect the advanced SRS air bag system as soon as possible.**

The seat belt buckle sensors determine if the driver and front passenger's seat belts are fastened.

These sensors provide the ability to control the SRS deployment based on whether or not the seat belts are fastened, and how severe the impact is.

The advanced SRS offers the ability to control the air bag inflation with two levels. A first stage level is provided for moderate-severity impacts. A second stage level is provided for more severe impacts.

The passenger's front air bag is designed to help reduce the injury of children sitting close to the instrument panel in low speed collisions. However, children are safer if they are restrained in the rear seat.

According to the impact severity and seat belt usage, the SRSCM (SRS Control Module) controls the air bag inflation. Failure to properly wear seat belts can increase the risk or severity of injury in an accident.

Additionally, your vehicle is equipped with an occupant detection system in the front passenger's seat. The occupant detection system detects the presence of a passenger in the front passenger's seat and will turn off the front passenger's air bag under certain conditions. For more detail, see "Occupant detection system" in this section.

**⚠ WARNING**

- **Modification to the seat structure can cause the air bag to deploy at a different level than should be provided.**
- **Do not place any objects underneath the front seats as they could damage interfere with the occupant detection system.**

XM CAN (ENG) 3.QXP 11/26/2009 11:42 AM Page 53



**⚠ WARNING**

**Manufacturers are required by government regulations to provide a contact point concerning modifications to the vehicle for persons with disabilities, which modifications may affect the vehicle's advanced air bag system. However, KIA does not endorse nor will it support any changes to any part or structure of the vehicle that could affect the advanced air bag system, including the occupant detection system.**

**Specifically, the front passenger seat, dashboard or door should not be replaced except by an authorized KIA dealer using original KIA parts designed for this vehicle and model. Any other such replacement or modification could adversely affect the operation of the occupant detection system and your advanced air bags. For the same reason, do not attach anything to the seat, dashboard or door, even temporarily. If the system is adversely affected, it could cause severe personal injuries or death in a collision.**

**✻ NOTICE**

- **Be sure to read information about the SRS on the labels provided on the sun-visor.**
- **Advanced air bags are combined with pre-tensioner seat belts to help provide enhanced occupant protection in frontal crashes. Front air bags are not intended to deploy in collisions in which sufficient protection can be provided by the pre-tensioner seat belt.**

**⚠ WARNING**

**Always use seat belts and child restraints – every trip, every time, everyone! Air bags inflate with considerable force and in the blink of an eye. Seat belts help keep occupants in proper position to obtain maximum benefit from the air bag. Even with advanced air bags, improperly and unbelted occupants can be severely injured when the air bag inflates. Always follow the precautions about seat belts, air bags and occupant safety contained in this manual.**

**To reduce the chance of serious or fatal injuries and receive the maximum safety benefit from your restraint system:**

**(Continued)**

**(Continued)**

- **Never place a child in any child or booster seat in the front seat.**
- **ABC – Always Buckle Children in the back seat. It is the safest place for children of any age to ride.**
- **Front and side air bags can injure occupants improperly positioned in the front seats.**
- **Move your seat as far back as practical from the front air bags, while still maintaining control of the vehicle.**
- **You and your passengers should never sit or lean unnecessarily close to the air bags. Improperly positioned drivers and passengers can be severely injured by inflating air bags.**
- **Never lean against the door or center console – always sit in an upright position.**
- **Do not allow a passenger to ride in the front seat when the PASSENGER AIR BAG "OFF" indicator is illuminated, because the air bag will not deploy in the event of a moderate or severe frontal crash.**

**(Continued)**

XM CAN (ENG) 3.QXP 11/26/2009 11:42 AM Page 54



**(Continued)**

- **No objects should be placed over or near the air bag modules on the steering wheel, instrument panel or the front passenger's panel above the glove box, because any such object could cause harm if the vehicle is in a crash severe enough to cause the air bags to deploy.**
- **Never place covers, blankets or aftermarket seat warmers on the passenger seat as these may interfere with the occupant detection system.**
- **Do not tamper with or disconnect SRS wiring or other components of the SRS system. Doing so could result in injury, due to accidental deployment of the air bags or by rendering the SRS inoperative.**

**(Continued)**

**(Continued)**

- **If the SRS air bag warning light remains illuminated while the vehicle is being driven, have an authorized KIA dealer inspect the air bag system as soon as possible.**
- **Air bags can only be used once – have an authorized KIA dealer replace the air bag immediately after deployment.**
- **The SRS is designed to deploy the front air bags only when an impact is sufficiently severe and when the impact angle is less than 30° from the forward longitudinal axis of the vehicle. Additionally, the air bags will only deploy once. Seat belts must be worn at all times.**

**(Continued)**

**(Continued)**

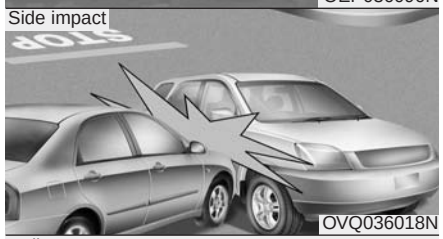
- **Front air bags are not intended to deploy in side-impact, rear-impact or rollover crashes. In addition, front air bags will not deploy in frontal crashes below the deployment threshold.**

**(Continued)**

Rear impact

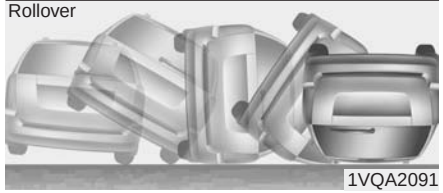
OEP036096N

Side impact




OVQ036018N

Rollover



1VQA2091

XM CAN (ENG) 3.QXP 11/26/2009 11:42 AM Page 55



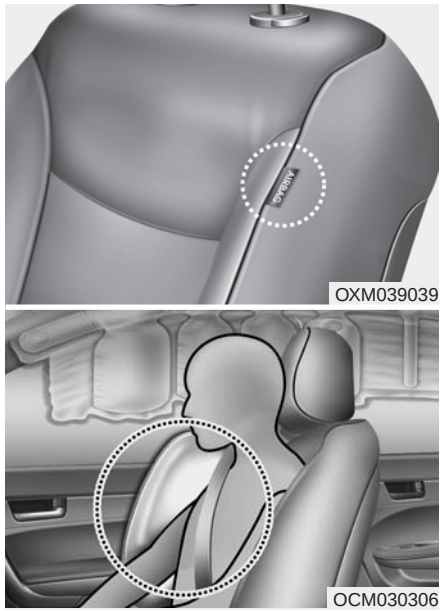
**(Continued)**

- **Even though your vehicle is equipped with the occupant detection system, do not install a child restraint system in the front passenger seat position. A child restraint system must never be placed in the front seat. The infant or child could be severely injured or killed by an air bag deployment in case of an accident.**
- **Children age 12 and under must always be properly restrained in the rear seat. Never allow children to ride in the front passenger seat. If a child over 12 must be seated in the front seat, he or she must be properly belted and the seat should be moved as far back as possible.**
- **For maximum safety protection in all types of crashes, all occupants including the driver should always wear their seat belts whether or not an air bag is also provided at their seating position to minimize the risk of severe injury or death in the event of a crash. Do not sit or lean unnecessarily close to the air bag while the vehicle is in motion.**

**(Continued)**

**(Continued)**

- **Sitting improperly or out of position can result in serious or fatal injury in a crash. All occupants should sit upright with the seat back in an upright position, centered on the seat cushion with their seat belt on, legs comfortably extended and their feet on the floor until the vehicle is parked and the ignition key is removed or the engine is shut off.**
- **The SRS air bag system must deploy very rapidly to provide protection in a crash. If an occupant is out of position because of not wearing a seat belt, the air bag may forcefully contact the occupant causing serious or fatal injuries.**




C040600AAM-EU

## Side impact air bag

Your vehicle is equipped with a side impact air bag in each front seat. The purpose of the air bag is to provide the vehicle's driver and/or the front passenger with additional protection than that offered by the seat belt alone.

XM CAN (ENG) 3.QXP 11/26/2009 11:42 AM Page 56



- The side impact air bags are designed to deploy during certain side-impact collisions, depending on the crash severity, angle, speed and point of impact.
- The side impact air bags do not only deploy on the side of the impact but also on the opposite side.
- Also, both sides of the side impact air bags deploy in certain rollover situations.
- The side impact air bags are not designed to deploy in all side impact or rollover situations.

**⚠ WARNING**

- **The side impact air bag is supplemental to the driver's and the passenger's seat belt systems and is not a substitute for them. Therefore your seat belts must be worn at all times while the vehicle is in motion. The air bags deploy only in certain side impact or rollover conditions severe enough to cause significant injury to the vehicle occupants.**
- **For best protection from the side air bag system and to avoid being injured by the deploying side air bag, both front seat occupants should sit in an upright position with the seat belt properly fastened. The driver's hands should be placed on the steering wheel at the 9:00 and 3:00 positions. The passenger's arms and hands should be placed on their laps.**
- **Do not use any accessory seat covers.**
- **Use of seat covers could reduce or prevent the effectiveness of the system.**

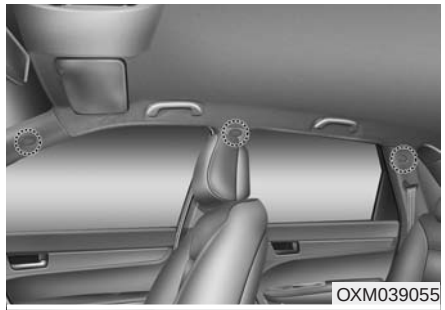
**(Continued)**

**(Continued)**

- **Do not install any accessories on the side or near the side impact air bag.**
- **Do not place any objects over the air bag or between the air bag and yourself.**
- **Do not place any objects (an umbrella, bag, etc.) between the front door and the front seat. Such objects may become dangerous projectiles and cause injury if the supplemental side air bag inflates.**
- **To prevent unexpected deployment of the side impact air bag that may result in personal injury, avoid impact to the side impact sensor when the ignition switch is on.**
- **If seat or seat cover is damaged, have the vehicle checked and repaired by an authorized KIA dealer. Inform the dealer that your vehicle is equipped with side impact air bags and an occupant detection system.**

XM CAN (ENG) 3.QXP 11/26/2009 11:43 AM Page 57






C040700AUN

## Curtain air bag

Curtain air bags are located along both sides of the roof rails above the front and rear doors.

They are designed to help protect the heads of the front seat occupants and the rear outboard seat occupants in certain side impact collisions.

- The curtain air bags are designed to deploy during certain side impact collisions, depending on the crash severity, angle, speed and point of impact.
- The curtain air bags do not only deploy on the side of the impact but also on the opposite side.
- Also, both sides of the curtain air bags deploy in certain rollover situations.
- The curtain air bags are not designed to deploy in all side impact or rollover situations.

**⚠ WARNING**

- **In order for side and curtain air bags to provide the best protection, front seat occupants and outboard rear occupants should sit in an upright position with the seat belts properly fastened. Importantly, children should sit in a proper child restraint system in the rear seat.**

**(Continued)**

**(Continued)**

- **When children are seated in the rear outboard seats, they must be seated in the proper child restraint system. Make sure to position the child restraint system as far away from the door side as possible, and secure the child restraint system in a locked position.**
- **Do not allow the passengers to lean their heads or bodies against the doors, put their arms on the doors, stretch their arms out of the window or place objects between the doors and passengers when they are seated on seats equipped with side impact and/or curtain air bags.**
- **Never try to open or repair any components of the side and curtain air bag system. This should only be done by an authorized KIA dealer.**

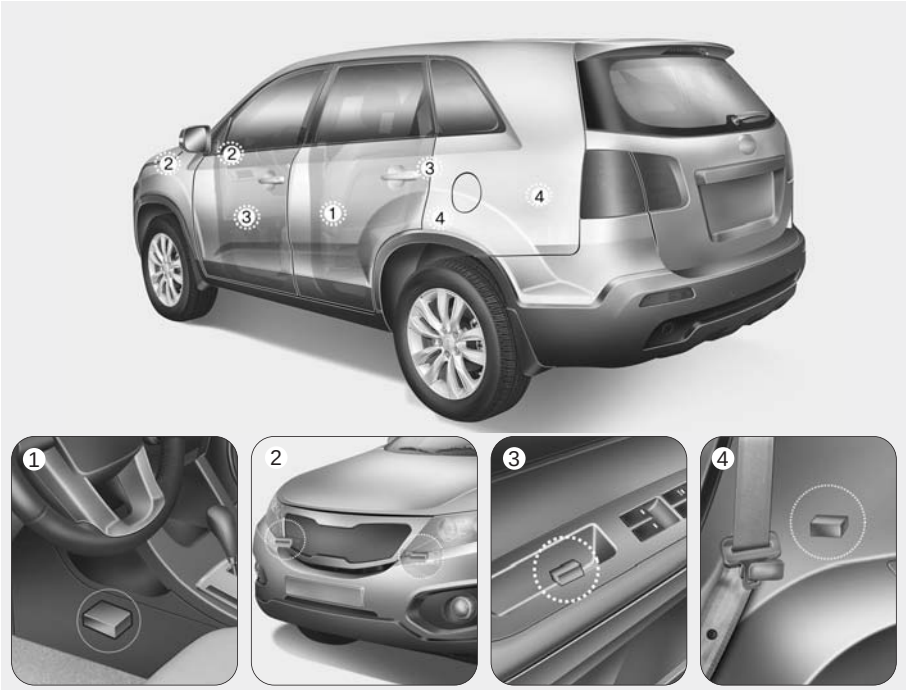
**Failure to follow the above mentioned instructions can result in injury or death to the vehicle occupants in an accident.**

C040800AAM

**Why didn't my air bag go off in a collision? (Inflation and non-inflation conditions of the air bag)**

**There are many types of accidents in which the air bag would not be expected to provide additional protection.**

**These include rear impacts, second or third collisions in multiple impact accidents, as well as low speed impacts. In other words, just because your vehicle is damaged and even if it is totally unusable, don't be surprised that the air bags did not inflate.**




OXM039040N/OXM039041/OXM039042N/OXM039043/OXM039044

***Air bag collision sensors***

(1) SRS control module/ Rollover sensor
(2) Front impact sensor
(3) Side impact sensor
(4) Side impact sensor

XM CAN (ENG) 3.QXP 11/26/2009 11:43 AM Page 59



**⚠ WARNING**

- **Do not hit or allow any objects to impact the locations where air bags or sensors are installed.**

  **This may cause unexpected air bag deployment, which could result in serious personal injury or death.**
- **If the installation location or angle of the sensors is altered in any way, the air bags may deploy when they should not or they may not deploy when they should, causing severe injury or death.**

  **Therefore, do not try to perform maintenance on or around the air bag sensors. Have the vehicle checked and repaired by an authorized KIA dealer.**

**(Continued)**

**(Continued)**

- **Problems may arise if the sensor installation angles are changed due to the deformation of the front bumper, front end module, body or front doors and/or C pillar where side collision sensors are installed. Have the vehicle checked and repaired by an authorized KIA dealer.**
- **Your vehicle has been designed to absorb impact and deploy the air bag(s) in certain collisions. Installing bumper guards (or side step or running board) or replacing a bumper (or front door module) with non-genuine parts may adversely affect your vehicle's collision and air bag deployment performance.**

C040801AAM

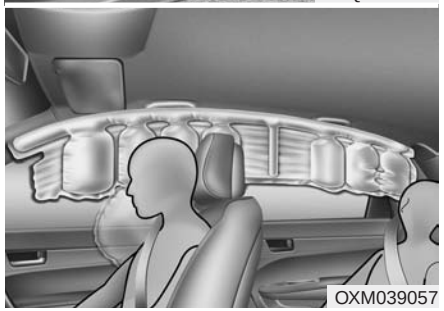
### *Air bag inflation conditions*

**Front air bags**

Front air bags are designed to inflate in a frontal collision depending on the intensity, speed or angles of impact of the front collision.

XM CAN (ENG) 3.QXP 11/26/2009 11:43 AM Page 60

OVQ036018N


OXM039057

**Side impact and/or curtain air bags**

Side impact and/or curtain air bags are designed to inflate when an impact is detected by side collision sensors depending on the strength, speed or angles of impact resulting from a side impact collision.

Also, the side impact and curtain air bags are designed to inflate when a rollover is detected by a rollover sensor.

Although the front air bags (driver's and front passenger's air bags) are designed to inflate only in frontal collisions, they also may inflate in other types of collisions if the front impact sensors detect a sufficient impact. Side impact and curtain air bags are designed to inflate only in side impact collisions or rollovers. But they may inflate in other type of collisions or similar rollover situations, including when the vehicle is tilted such as being towed if the side impact sensors or rollover sensor detect a sufficient impact or rollover.

If the vehicle chassis is impacted by bumps or objects on unimproved roads, the air bags may deploy. Drive carefully on unimproved roads or on surfaces not designed for vehicle traffic to prevent unintended air bag deployment.

1VQA2086

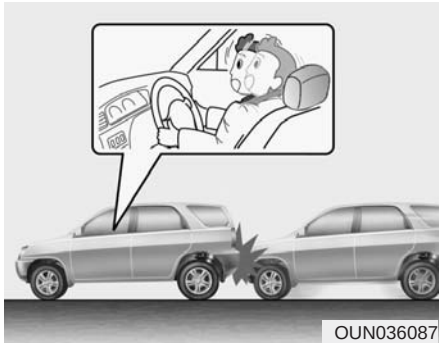
C040802AUN

***Air bag non-inflation conditions***

- In certain low-speed collisions the air bags may not deploy. The air bags are designed not to deploy in such cases because they may not provide benefits beyond the protection of the seat belts in such collisions.

XM CAN (ENG) 3.QXP 11/26/2009 11:43 AM Page 61



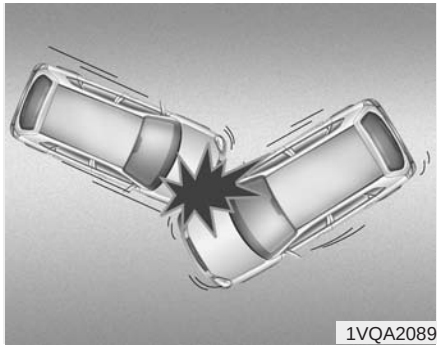

OUN036087

- Air bags are not designed to inflate in rear collisions, because occupants are moved backward by the force of the impact. In this case, inflated air bags would not be able to provide any additional benefit.

OVQ036018N

- Front air bags may not inflate in side impact collisions, because occupants move to the direction of the collision, and thus in side impacts, frontal air bag deployment would not provide additional occupant protection.

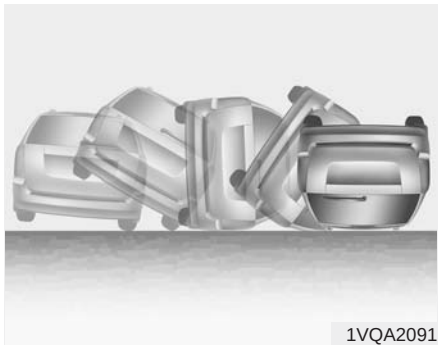
  However, if equipped with side impact and curtain air bags, the air bags may inflate depending on the intensity, vehicle speed and angles of impact.


1VQA2089

- In an angled collision, the force of impact may direct the occupants in a direction where the air bags would not be able to provide any additional benefit, and thus the sensors may not deploy any air bags.

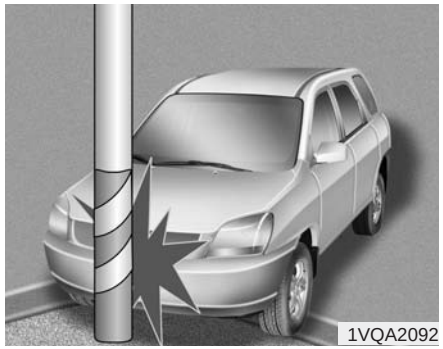
1VQA2090

- Just before impact, drivers often brake heavily. Such heavy braking lowers the front portion of the vehicle causing it to “ride” under a vehicle with a higher ground clearance. Air bags may not inflate in this "under-ride" situation because deceleration forces that are detected by sensors may be significantly reduced by such “under-ride” collisions.


1VQA2091

- Front air bags may not inflate in rollover accidents because front air bag deployment would not provide additional occupant protection.

  However, if equipped with side impact and curtain air bags, the air bags may inflate in a rollover, when it is detected by the rollover sensor.


1VQA2092

- Air bags may not inflate if the vehicle collides with objects such as utility poles or trees, where the point of impact is concentrated to one area and the full force of the impact is not delivered to the sensors.

XM CAN (ENG) 3.QXP 11/26/2009 11:43 AM Page 63



C041100AUN

## SRS Care

The SRS is virtually maintenance-free and so there are no parts you can safely service by yourself. If the SRS air bag warning light does not illuminate, or continuously remains on, have your vehicle immediately inspected by an authorized KIA dealer.

Any work on the SRS system, such as removing, installing, repairing, or any work on the steering wheel, the front passenger's panel, front seats and roof rails must be performed by an authorized KIA dealer. Improper handling of the SRS system may result in serious personal injury.

**⚠ WARNING**

- **Modification to SRS components or wiring, including the addition of any kind of badges to the pad covers or modifications to the body structure, can adversely affect SRS performance and lead to possible injury.**
- **For cleaning the air bag pad covers, use only a soft, dry cloth or one which has been moistened with plain water. Solvents or cleaners could adversely affect the air bag covers and proper deployment of the system.**
- **No objects should be placed over or near the air bag modules on the steering wheel, instrument panel, and the front passenger's panel above the glove box, because any such object could cause harm if the vehicle is in a crash severe enough to cause the air bags to inflate.**

**(Continued)**

**(Continued)**

- **If the air bags inflate, they must be replaced by an authorized KIA dealer.**
- **Do not tamper with or disconnect SRS wiring, or other components of the SRS system. Doing so could result in injury, due to accidental inflation of the air bags or by rendering the SRS inoperative.**
- **If components of the air bag system must be discarded, or if the vehicle must be scrapped, certain safety precautions must be observed. An authorized KIA dealer knows these precautions and can give you the necessary information. Failure to follow these precautions and procedures could increase the risk of personal injury.**
- **If your car was flooded and has soaked carpeting or water on flooring, you shouldn't try to start the engine; have the car towed to an authorized KIA dealer.**

XM CAN (ENG) 3.QXP 11/26/2009 11:43 AM Page 64



C041300AUN

## Additional safety precautions

- **Never let passengers ride in the cargo area or on top of a folded-down back seat.** All occupants should sit upright, fully back in their seats with their seat belts on and their feet on the floor.
- **Passengers should not move out of or change seats while the vehicle is moving.** A passenger who is not wearing a seat belt during a crash or emergency stop can be thrown against the inside of the vehicle, against other occupants, or out of the vehicle.
- **Each seat belt is designed to restrain one occupant.** If more than one person uses the same seat belt, they could be seriously injured or killed in a collision.
- **Do not use any accessories on seat belts.** Devices claiming to improve occupant comfort or reposition the seat belt can reduce the protection provided by the seat belt and increase the chance of serious injury in a crash.
- **Passengers should not place hard or sharp objects between themselves and the air bags.** Carrying hard or sharp objects on your lap or in your mouth can result in injuries if an air bag inflates.
- **Keep occupants away from the air bag covers.** All occupants should sit upright, fully back in their seats with their seat belts on and their feet on the floor. If occupants are too close to the air bag covers, they could be injured if the air bags inflate.
- **Do not attach or place objects on or near the air bag covers.** Any object attached to or placed on the front or side air bag covers could interfere with the proper operation of the air bags.
- **Do not modify the front seats.** Modification of the front seats could interfere with the operation of the supplemental restraint system sensing components or side air bags.
- **Do not place items under the front seats.** Placing items under the front seats could interfere with the operation of the supplemental restraint system sensing components and wiring harnesses.
- **Never hold an infant or child on your lap.** The infant or child could be seriously injured or killed in the event of a crash. All infants and children should be properly restrained in appropriate child safety seats or seat belts in the rear seat.

**⚠ WARNING**

- **Sitting improperly or out of position can cause occupants to be shifted too close to a deploying air bag, strike the interior structure or be thrown from the vehicle resulting in serious injury or death.**
- **Always sit upright with the seatback in an upright position, centered on the seat cushion with your seat belt on, legs comfortably extended and your feet on the floor.**
- **Always have the ignition OFF in an abnormal situation. The side air bags may inflate if the vehicle is tilted such as when being towed because the rollover sensor detects it as a rollover situation.**
- **Be careful not to cause impact to the doors when the ignition is ON. The air bags may inflate.**

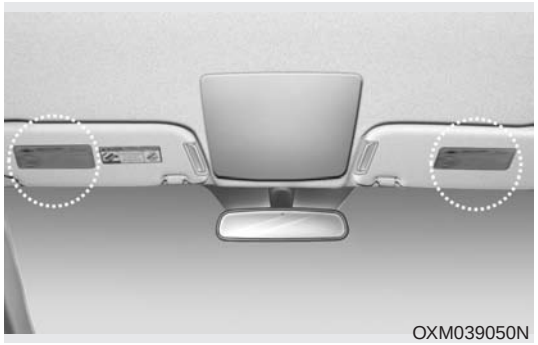
XM CAN (ENG) 3.QXP 11/26/2009 11:43 AM Page 65



C041400AUN

### Adding equipment to or modifying your air bag-equipped vehicle

If you modify your vehicle by changing your vehicle's frame, bumper system, front end or side sheet metal or ride height, this may affect the operation of your vehicle's air bag system.



OXM039050N

C041200AXM-EC

### Air bag warning label

Air bag warning labels, some required by the Canada Motor Vehicle Safety Standards (CMVSS), are attached to the sunvisor alert the driver and passengers of potential risks of the air bag system.

XM CAN (ENG) 4(~101).QXP 4/14/2010 10:37 AM Page 1

**Keys / 4-2**
**Remote keyless entry / 4-6**
**Smart key / 4-9**
**Theft-alarm system / 4-13**
**Door locks / 4-15**
**Tailgate / 4-19**
**Windows / 4-21**
**Hood / 4-25**
**Fuel filler lid / 4-27**

## Features of your vehicle 4

**Panoramic Sunroof / 4-30**
**Steering wheel / 4-34**
**Mirrors / 4-36**
**Instrument cluster / 4-44**
**Rear parking assist system / 4-59**
**Rearview camera / 4-62**
**Hazard warning flasher / 4-62**
**Lighting / 4-63**
**Wipers and washers / 4-68**
**Interior lights / 4-71**
**Defroster / 4-73**
**Manual climate control system / 4-74**
**Automatic climate control system / 4-83**
**Windshield defrosting and defogging / 4-91**
**Storage compartments / 4-94**
**Interior features / 4-96**
**Exterior feature / 4-101**
**Audio system / 4-102**

XM CAN (ENG) 4(~101).QXP 4/14/2010 10:37 AM Page 2



# KEYS

D010100AUN

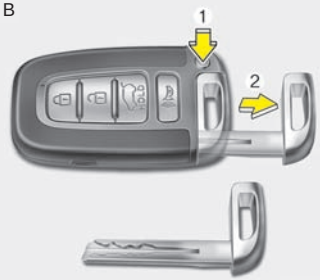
## Record your key number

The key code number is stamped on the tag attached to the key set. Should you lose your keys, this number will enable an authorized KIA dealer to duplicate the keys easily. Remove the tag and store it in a safe place. Also, record the code number and keep it in a safe place (not in the vehicle).

Type A

OFD047002-A

Type B




OXM049200

D010200AAM

## Key operations

- Used to start the engine.
- Used to lock and unlock the doors.
- Used to lock and unlock the glove box. (if equipped)

**⚠ WARNING - Ignition key**

**Leaving children unattended in a vehicle with the ignition key is dangerous even if the key is not in the ignition switch. Children copy adults and they could place the key in the ignition switch. The ignition key would enable children to operate power windows or other controls, or even make the vehicle move, which could result in serious bodily injury or even death. Never leave the keys in your vehicle with unsupervised children.**

**⚠ WARNING**

**Use only KIA original parts for the ignition key in your vehicle. If an aftermarket key is used, the ignition switch may not return to ON after START. If this happens, the starter will continue to operate causing damage to the starter motor and possible fire due to excessive current in the wiring.**

XM CAN (ENG) 4(~101).QXP 4/14/2010 10:37 AM Page 3

OFD047001-B

D010300AXM-EC

## Immobilizer system (if equipped)

Your vehicle may be equipped with an electronic engine immobilizer system to reduce the risk of unauthorized vehicle use.

Your immobilizer system is comprised of a small transponder in the ignition key and electronic devices inside the vehicle.

With the immobilizer system, whenever you insert your ignition key into the ignition switch and turn it to ON, it checks and determines and verifies that the ignition key is valid.

If the key is determined to be valid, the engine will start.

If the key is determined to be invalid, the engine will not start.

***To activate the immobilizer system:***

Turn the ignition key to the OFF position. The immobilizer system activates automatically. Without a valid ignition key for your vehicle, the engine will not start.

***To deactivate the immobilizer system:***

Insert the ignition key into the key cylinder and turn it to the ON position.

**⚠ WARNING**

**In order to prevent theft of your vehicle, do not leave spare keys or your key number anywhere in the vehicle. The ignition key and key number are unique to your vehicle, and therefore, should be kept confidential.**

**✻ NOTICE**

**When starting the engine, do not use the key with other immobilizer keys around. Otherwise the engine may not start or may stop soon after it starts. Keep each key separately in order to avoid a starting malfunction.**

**⚠ CAUTION**

***Do not put metal accessories near the ignition switch.***

***Metal accessories may interrupt the transponder signal and may prevent the engine from being started.***

XM CAN (ENG) 4(~101).QXP 4/14/2010 10:37 AM Page 4



### ✻ NOTICE

**If you need additional keys or lose your keys, consult an authorized KIA dealer.**

### ⚠ CAUTION

***The transponder in your ignition key is an important part of the immobilizer system. It is designed to give years of trouble-free service, however you should avoid exposure to moisture, static electricity and rough handling. Immobilizer system malfunction could occur.***

### ⚠ CAUTION

***Do not change, alter or adjust the immobilizer system because it could cause the immobilizer system to malfunction and should only be serviced by an authorized KIA dealer.***

***Malfunctions caused by improper alterations, adjustments or modifications to the immobilizer system are not covered by your vehicle manufacturer warranty.***

**This device complies with Industry Canada Standard RSS-210.**

Operation is subject to the following two conditions:

1. This device may not cause harmful interference, and
2. This device must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operation.

### ⚠ WARNING

**Changes or modifications not expressly approved by the party responsible for compliance could void the user's authority to operate the equipment.**

XM CAN (ENG) 4(~101).QXP 4/14/2010 10:37 AM Page 5



D010301AUN-EC

### Limp home (override) procedure

When you turn the ignition switch to the ON position, if the immobilizer indicator ( ) goes off after blinking 5 times, your transponder equipped in the ignition key is out of order. You cannot start the engine without the limp home procedure. To start the engine, you have to input your password by using the ignition switch. Your password is only available from an authorized KIA dealership. Contact an authorized dealer for more information.

The following procedure is how to input your password of “2345” as an example.

1. Turn the ignition switch to the ON position. The immobilizer indicator ( ) will blink 5 times and go off indicating the beginning of the limp home procedure.
2. Turn the ignition switch to the ACC position.
3. To enter the first digit (in this example “2”), turn the ignition switch to the ON and ACC position twice. Perform the same procedure for the next digits between 3 seconds and 10 seconds (for example, for “3”, turn the ignition ON and ACC 3 times).
4. If all of the digits have been input successfully, you have to start the engine within 30 seconds. If you attempt to start the engine after 30 seconds, the engine will not start and you will have to input your password again.

After performing the limp home procedure, you have to see an authorized KIA dealer immediately to inspect and repair your ignition key or immobilizer system.

XM CAN (ENG) 4(~101).QXP 4/14/2010 10:37 AM Page 6



## REMOTE KEYLESS ENTRY (IF EQUIPPED)

OAM049001A

### Remote keyless entry system operations

D020101AAM-EU

***Lock (1)***

All doors (and tailgate) are locked if the lock button is pressed.

If all doors (and tailgate) are closed, the hazard warning lights will blink once to indicate that all doors (and tailgate) are locked.

If the lock button is pressed once more within 4 seconds, the horn will beep once with the hazard warning lights blinking once.

However, if any door (or tailgate) remains open, the hazard warning lights will not operate. But if all doors (and tailgate) are closed after the lock button is pressed, the hazard warning lights will blink once.

D020102BHM-EU

***Unlock (2)***

The driver's door is unlocked if the unlock button is pressed once. The hazard warning lights will blink twice to indicate that the driver's door is unlocked.

All doors (and tailgate) are unlocked if the unlock button is pressed once more within 4 seconds. The hazard warning lights will blink twice again to indicate that all doors (and tailgate) are unlocked.

After pressing this button, the doors (and tailgate) will be locked automatically unless you open any door within 30 seconds.

2 stage unlocking may be disabled or re-enabled by simultaneously pressing the Lock (1) and Unlock (2) button for 4 seconds (disabling 2 stage unlock allows all vehicle doors to unlock simultaneously). The hazard warning lights will blink 4 times to indicate that 2 stage unlock was enabled

D020105AHM

***Alarm (3)***

The horn sounds and the hazard warning lights blink for about 30 seconds if this button is pressed for more than 0.5 seconds. To stop the horn and lights, press any button on the transmitter.

XM CAN (ENG) 4(~101).QXP 4/14/2010 10:37 AM Page 7



D020200AAM-EC

## Transmitter precautions

### ✻ NOTICE

**The transmitter will not work if any of the following occurs:**

- **The ignition key is in the ignition switch.**
- **You exceed the operating distance limit (about 10 m [30 feet]).**
- **The battery in the transmitter is weak.**
- **Other vehicles or objects may be blocking the signal.**
- **The weather is extremely cold.**
- **The transmitter is close to a radio transmitter such as a radio station or an airport which can interfere with normal operation of the transmitter.**

**When the transmitter does not work properly, open and close the door with the ignition key. If you have a problem with the transmitter, contact an authorized KIA dealer.**

### ⚠ CAUTION

***Keep the transmitter away from water or any liquid. If the keyless entry system is inoperative due to exposure to water or liquids, it will not be covered by your manufacturer's vehicle warranty.***

**This device complies with Industry Canada Standard RSS-210.**

Operation is subject to the following two conditions:

1. This device may not cause harmful interference, and
2. This device must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operation.

### ⚠ CAUTION

***Changes or modifications not expressly approved by the party responsible for compliance could void the user's authority to operate the equipment. If the keyless entry system is inoperative due to changes or modifications not expressly approved by the party responsible for compliance, it will not be covered by your manufacturer's vehicle warranty.***

OAM049002

D020300AHM

## Battery replacement

A transmitter uses a 3 volt lithium battery which will normally last for several years. When replacement is necessary, use the following procedure.

1. Insert a slim tool into the slot and gently pry open the transmitter center cover.
2. Replace the battery with a new battery (CR2032). When replacing the battery, make sure the battery positive "+" symbol faces up as indicated in the illustration.
3. Install the battery in the reverse order of removal.

For transmitter replacement, see an authorized KIA dealer to reprogram the transmitter.

XM CAN (ENG) 4(~101).QXP 4/14/2010 10:37 AM Page 8



**⚠ CAUTION**

- ***The keyless entry system transmitter is designed to give you years of trouble-free use, however it can malfunction if exposed to moisture or static electricity. If you are unsure how to use your transmitter or replace the battery, contact an authorized KIA dealer.***
- ***Using the wrong battery can cause the transmitter to malfunction. Be sure to use the correct battery.***
- ***To avoid damaging the transmitter, don't drop it, get it wet, or expose it to heat or sunlight.***

**⚠ WARNING**

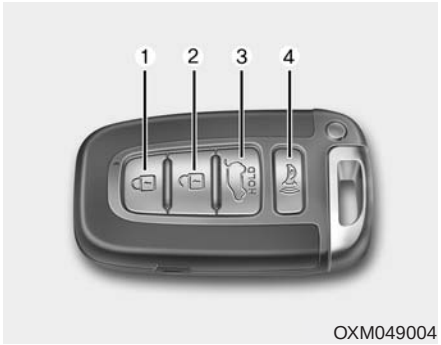
**An inappropriately disposed battery can be harmful to the environment and human health.**

**Dispose the battery according to your local laws or regulations.**

XM CAN (ENG) 4(~101).QXP 4/14/2010 10:37 AM Page 9



## SMART KEY (IF EQUIPPED)




OXM049004

D040000AXM

With a smart key, you can lock or unlock a door (and tailgate) and even start the engine without inserting the key.

The functions of the buttons on a smart key are similar to the remote keyless entry.

***Lock (1)***

All doors (and tailgate) are locked if the lock button is pressed.

If all doors (and tailgate) are closed, the hazard warning lights will blink and chime sounds once to indicate that all doors (and tailgate) are locked.

However, if any door (or tailgate) remains open, the hazard warning lights will not operate. But if all doors (and tailgate) are closed after the lock button is pressed, the hazard warning lights will blink once.

D020102AXM-EU

***Unlock (2)***

The driver's door is unlocked if the unlock button is pressed once. The hazard warning lights will blink and chime sounds twice to indicate that the driver's door is unlocked.

All doors (and tailgate) are unlocked if the unlock button is pressed once more within 4 seconds. The hazard warning lights will blink and chime sounds twice again to indicate that all doors (and tailgate) are unlocked.

After pressing this button, the doors (and tailgate) will be locked automatically unless you open any door within 30 seconds.

2 stage unlocking may be disabled or re-enabled by simultaneously pressing the Lock (1) and Unlock (2) button for 4 seconds (disabling 2 stage unlock allows all vehicle doors to unlock simultaneously). The hazard warning lights will blink 4 times to indicate that 2 stage unlock was enabled

D020104AHM

***Tailgate unlock (3)***

The tailgate is unlocked if the button is pressed for more than 1 second.

The hazard warning lights will blink twice to indicate that the tailgate is unlocked.

However, after pressing this button, the tailgate will lock automatically unless you open the tailgate within 30 seconds.

Also, once the tailgate is opened and then closed, the tailgate will lock automatically.

D020105AHM

***Alarm (4)***

The horn sounds and the hazard warning lights blink for about 30 seconds if this button is pressed for more than 0.5 seconds. To stop the horn and lights, press any button on the transmitter.

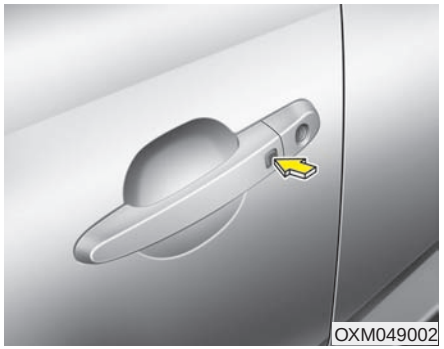
D040100AHM

### Smart key functions

Carrying the smart key, you may lock and unlock the vehicle doors (and tailgate). Also, you may start the engine. Refer to the following, for more details.

XM CAN (ENG) 4(~101).QXP 4/14/2010 10:37 AM Page 10






D040101BHM

### *Locking*

Pressing the button of the front outside door handles with all doors (and tailgate) closed and any door unlocked, locks all the doors (and tailgate). The hazard warning lights blink and the chime sounds once to indicate that all doors (and tailgate) are locked. The button will only operate when the smart key is within 0.7~1 m (28~40 in.) from the outside door handle. If you want to make sure that a door has locked or not, you should check the door lock button inside the vehicle or pull the outside door handle.

Even though you press the button, the doors will not lock and the chime sounds for 3 seconds if any of the following occurs:

- The smart key is in the vehicle.
- The ENGINE START/STOP button is in the ACC or ON position.
- Any door except the tailgate is opened.

D040102AEN-EU

### *Unlocking*

Pressing the button of the driver's outside door handle with all doors (and tailgate) closed and locked, unlocks the driver's door. The hazard warning lights blink and the chime sounds twice to indicate that the driver's door is unlocked. All doors (and tailgate) are unlocked if the button is pressed once more within 4 seconds. The hazard warning lights will blink and the chime will sound twice to indicate that all the doors (and tailgate) are unlocked.

Pressing the button of the front passenger's outside door handle with all doors (and tailgate) closed and locked, unlocks all the doors (and tailgate). The hazard warning lights blink and the chime sounds twice to indicate that all doors (and tailgate) are unlocked.

The button will only operate when the smart key is within 0.7~1 m (28~40 in.) from the outside door handle.

When the smart key is recognized in the area of 0.7~1 m (28~40 in.) from the front outside door handle, other people can also open the door without possession of the smart key.

D040103AHM

### *Tailgate unlocking*

If you are within 0.7~1 m (28~40 in.) from the outside tailgate handle, with your smart key in possession, the tailgate will unlock and open when you press the tailgate handle switch.

The hazard warning lights will blink twice to indicate that the tailgate is unlocked.

Also, once the tailgate is opened and then closed, the tailgate will lock automatically.

D040104AHM

### *Start-up*

You can start the engine without inserting the key. For detailed information refer to "Starting the engine with a smart key" in section 5.

XM CAN (ENG) 4(~101).QXP 4/14/2010 10:37 AM Page 11



D040300AHM-EC

## Smart key precautions

### ✻ NOTICE

- **If, for some reason, you happen to lose your smart key, you will not be able to start the engine. Tow the vehicle, if necessary, and contact an authorized KIA dealer.**
- **A maximum of 2 smart keys can be registered to a single vehicle. If you lose a smart key, you should immediately take the vehicle and key to your authorized KIA dealer to protect it from potential theft.**
- **The smart key will not work if any of the following occurs:**
  - **The smart key is close to a radio transmitter such as a radio station or an airport which can interfere with normal operation of the smart key.**
  - **The smart key is near a mobile two-way radio system or a cellular phone.**
  - **Another vehicle's smart key is being operated close to your vehicle.**

  **When the smart key does not work properly, open and close the door with the mechanical key. If you have a problem with the smart key, contact an authorized KIA dealer.**

### ⚠ CAUTION

***Keep the smart key away from water or any liquid. If the keyless entry system is inoperative due to exposure to water or liquids, it will not be covered by your manufacturer's vehicle warranty.***

**This device complies with Industry Canada Standard RSS-210.**

Operation is subject to the following two conditions:

1. This device may not cause harmful interference, and
2. This device must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operation.

### ⚠ WARNING

**Changes or modifications not expressly approved by the party responsible for compliance could void the user's authority to operate the equipment.**

OXM049200

D040400AHM

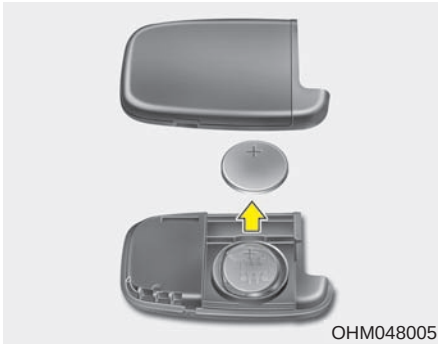
## Restrictions in handling keys

When leaving keys with parking lot and valet attendants, the following procedures will ensure that your vehicle's glove box compartment can not be opened in your absence.

1. Press and hold the release button (1) and remove the mechanical key.
2. Close and then lock the glove box using the mechanical key.
3. Leave the smart key with the attendant. The glove box can not be opened without the mechanical key.

XM CAN (ENG) 4(~101).QXP 4/14/2010 10:38 AM Page 12





OHM048005

D040500AHM

### Battery replacement

A smart key battery should last for several years, but if the smart key is not working properly, try replacing the battery with a new one. If you are unsure how to use your smart key or replace the battery, contact an authorized KIA dealer.

#### ✻ NOTICE

**The circuit inside the smart key can have a problem if exposed to moisture or static electricity. If you are unsure how to use your smart key or replace the battery, contact an authorized KIA dealer.**

1. Pry open the rear cover of the smart key.
2. Replace the battery with a new battery (CR2032). When replacing the battery, make sure the battery positive "+" symbol faces up as indicated in the illustration.
3. Install the battery in the reverse order of removal.

#### ✻ NOTICE

- **Using the wrong battery can cause the smart key to malfunction. Be sure to use the correct battery.**
- **Circuits inside the smart key may develop problems when dropped, exposed to moisture or static electricity.**
- **If you suspect that your smart key might have sustained some damage, or you feel your smart key is not working correctly, contact an authorized KIA dealer.**

#### ⚠ WARNING

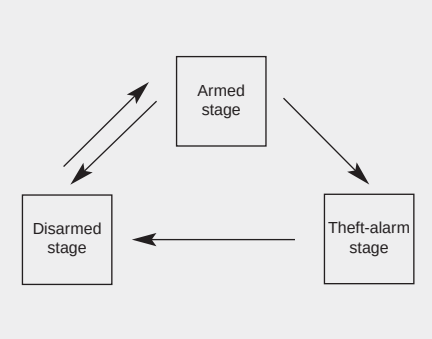
**An inappropriately disposed battery can be harmful to the environment and human health.**

**Dispose the battery according to your local laws or regulations.**

XM CAN (ENG) 4(~101).QXP 4/14/2010 10:38 AM Page 13



## THEFT-ALARM SYSTEM




D030000AEN

This system is designed to provide protection from unauthorized entry into the car. This system is operated in three stages: the first is the "Armed" stage, the second is the "Theft-alarm" stage, and the third is the "Disarmed" stage. If triggered, the system provides an audible alarm with blinking of the hazard warning lights.

D030100AEN-EU

### Armed stage

Park the car and stop the engine. Arm the system as described below.

1. Remove the ignition key from the ignition switch and exit the vehicle.
2. Make sure that all doors (and tailgate) and engine hood are closed and latched.
3. Lock the doors using the transmitter of the keyless entry system (or smart key) or ignition key.

After completion of the steps above, the hazard warning lights will blink (for smart key, the chime also sounds) once to indicate that the system is armed.

If any door (or tailgate) or engine hood remains open, the hazard warning lights and the chime will not operate and the theft-alarm will not arm. If all doors (and tailgate) and engine hood are closed after the lock button is pressed, the hazard warning lights blink once.

The system can also be armed by locking the doors with the key from the front doors; however, the hazard warning lights will not blink using this method.

### ✻ NOTICE

**The theft-alarm system by the key can be deactivated by an authorized KIA dealer.**
**If you want this feature, consult an authorized KIA dealer.**

**Do not arm the system until all passengers have left the vehicle. If the system is armed while a passenger(s) remains in the vehicle, the alarm may be activated when the remaining passenger(s) leave the vehicle. If any door (or tailgate) or engine hood is opened within 30 seconds after the system enters the armed stage, the system is disarmed to prevent an unnecessary alarm.**

XM CAN (ENG) 4(~101).QXP 4/14/2010 10:38 AM Page 14



D030200AEN-EU

### Theft-alarm stage

The alarm will be activated if any of the following occurs while the system is armed.

- A front or rear door is opened without using the ignition key or transmitter (or smart key).
- The tailgate is opened without using the transmitter (or smart key).
- The engine hood is opened.

The horn will sound and the hazard warning lights will blink continuously for approximately 27 seconds, and repeat the horn 3 times unless the system is disarmed. To turn off the system, unlock the doors with the ignition key or transmitter (or smart key).

D030400BEN-EU

### Disarmed stage

The system will be disarmed when the doors (and tailgate) are unlocked with the transmitter (or smart key) or the ignition key.

After depressing the unlock button, the hazard warning lights will blink and the chime will sound twice to indicate that the system is disarmed.

After depressing the unlock button, if any door (or tailgate) is not opened within 30 seconds, the system will be rearmed.

### ✻ NOTICE

- **Avoid trying to start the engine while the alarm is activated. The vehicle starting motor is disabled during the theft-alarm stage.**
  **If the system is not disarmed with the transmitter, insert the key into the ignition switch, turn the ignition switch to the ON position and wait for 30 seconds. Then the system will be disarmed. (if equipped)**
- **If you lose your keys, consult your authorized KIA dealer.**

### ⚠ CAUTION

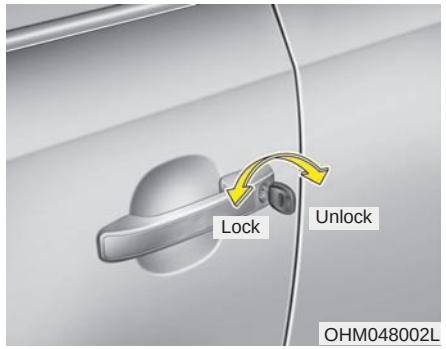
***Do not change, alter or adjust the theft-alarm system because it could cause the theft-alarm system to malfunction and should only be serviced by an authorized KIA dealer.***

***Malfunctions caused by improper alterations, adjustments or modifications to the theft-alarm system are not covered by your vehicle manufacturer warranty.***

XM CAN (ENG) 4(~101).QXP 4/14/2010 10:38 AM Page 15



## DOOR LOCKS



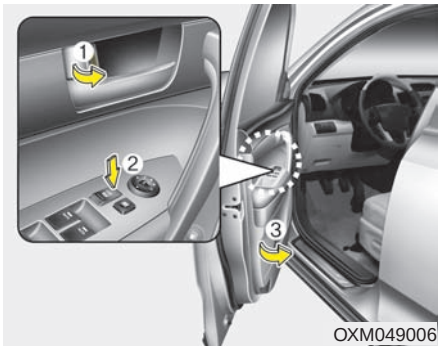

D050100AAM-EU

### Operating door locks from outside the vehicle

- Turn the key clockwise to unlock and counterclockwise to lock.
- If you lock the driver's door with a key, all vehicle doors will lock automatically.
- From the driver's door, turn the key to the right once to unlock the door and once more within 4 seconds to unlock all doors.
- Doors can also be locked and unlocked with the transmitter.
- Once the doors are unlocked, they may be opened by pulling the door handle.
- When closing the door, push the door by hand. Make sure the doors are closed securely.

### ✻ NOTICE

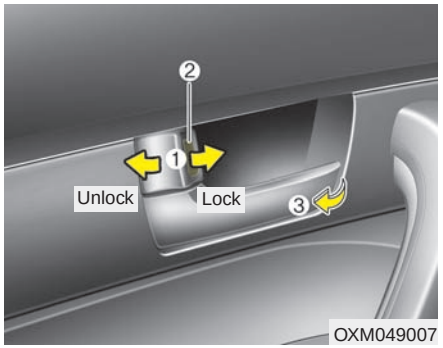
- **In cold and wet climates, door lock and door mechanisms may not work properly due to freezing conditions.**
- **If the door is locked/unlocked multiple times in rapid succession with either the vehicle key or door lock switch, the system may stop operating temporarily in order to protect the circuit and prevent damage to system components.**




- To lock a door without the key, push the inside door lock button (1) or central door lock switch (2) to the "Lock" position and close the door (3).
- If you lock the door with the central door lock switch (2), all vehicle doors will lock automatically.

### ✻ NOTICE

**Always remove the ignition key, engage the parking brake, close all windows and lock all doors when leaving your vehicle unattended.**




## Operating door locks from inside the vehicle

D050201AHM-EU

***With the door lock button***

- To unlock a door, push the door lock button (1) to the “Unlock” position. The red mark (2) on the button will be visible.
- To lock a door, push the door lock button (1) to the “Lock” position. If the door is locked properly, the red mark (2) on the door lock button will not be visible.
- To open a door, pull the door handle (3) outward.
- If the inner door handle of the driver’s (or front passenger’s) door is pulled when the door lock button is in the lock position, the button will unlock and the door will open. (if equipped)
- Front doors cannot be locked if the ignition key is in the ignition switch and any front door is opened.

**⚠ WARNING - Door lock malfunction**

**If a power door lock ever fails to function while you are in the vehicle, try one or more of the following techniques to exit:**

- **Operate the door unlock feature repeatedly (both electronic and manual) while simultaneously pulling on the door handle.**
- **Operate the other door locks and handles, front and rear.**
- **Lower a front window and use the key to unlock the door from outside.**
- **Move to the cargo area and open the tailgate.**

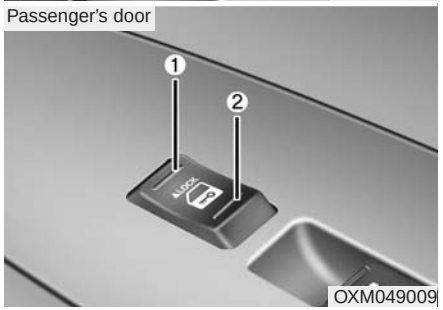
XM CAN (ENG) 4(~101).QXP 4/14/2010 10:38 AM Page 17



Driver's door

OXM049008

Passenger's door




OXM049009

D050202AAM-EU

***With central door lock switch***

Operate by pressing the central door lock switch.

- When pressing the front portion (1) of the switch, all vehicle doors will lock.
- When pressing the rear portion (2) of the switch, all vehicle doors will unlock.
- If the key is in the ignition switch and any front door is opened, the doors will not lock even though the front portion (1) of the central door lock switch is pressed.

**⚠ WARNING - Doors**

- **The doors should always be fully closed and locked while the vehicle is in motion to prevent accidental opening of the door. Locked doors will also discourage potential intruders when the vehicle stops or slows down.**
- **Be careful when opening doors and watch for vehicles, motorcycles, bicycles or pedestrians approaching the vehicle in the path of the door. Opening a door when something is approaching can cause damage or injury.**

**⚠ WARNING - Unlocked vehicles**

**Leaving your vehicle unlocked can invite theft or possible harm to you or others from someone hiding in your vehicle while you are gone. Always remove the ignition key, engage the parking brake, close all windows and lock all doors when leaving your vehicle unattended.**

**⚠ WARNING - Unattended children**

**An enclosed vehicle can become extremely hot, causing death or severe injury to unattended children or animals who cannot escape the vehicle. Furthermore, children might operate features of the vehicle that could injure them, or they could encounter other harm, possibly from someone gaining entry to the vehicle. Never leave children or animals unattended in your vehicle.**

XM CAN (ENG) 4(~101).QXP 4/14/2010 10:38 AM Page 18



### Impact sensing door unlock system (if equipped)

In the event of air bag deployment resulting from a vehicle impact, all doors will automatically unlock.

### Auto door lock/unlock feature (automatic transaxle, if equipped)

- All doors will automatically lock when the transaxle shift lever is shifted out of P (Park).
- All doors will automatically unlock when the transaxle shift lever is shifted into P (Park).

### Speed sensing door lock system (manual transaxle, if equipped)

- All doors will be automatically locked after the vehicle speed exceeds 20 km (12 mph).
- All doors will automatically unlock when the engine is shut off and the ignition key is removed.

### ✻ NOTICE

**An authorized KIA dealer can activate or deactivate some auto door lock/unlock features.**
**If you want to activate or deactivate some door lock/unlock feature, consult an authorized KIA dealer.**

D050500AAM

### Child-protector rear door lock

The child safety lock is provided to help prevent children from accidentally opening the rear doors from inside the vehicle. The rear door safety locks should be used whenever children are in the vehicle.

1. Open the rear door.
2. Push the child safety lock located on the rear edge of the door to the lock ( 🔒 ) position. When the child safety lock is in the lock position, the rear door will not open even when the inner door handle is pulled.
3. Close the rear door.

To open the rear door, pull the outside door handle.

Even though the doors may be unlocked, the rear door will not open by pulling the inner door handle (1) until the rear door child safety lock is unlocked.

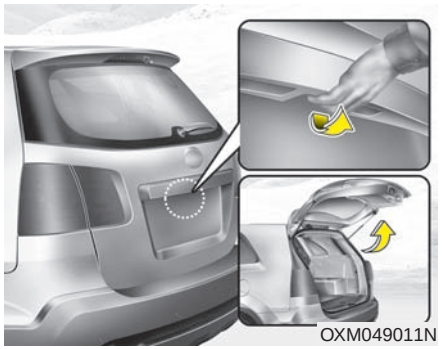
**⚠ WARNING - Rear door locks**

**If children accidentally open the rear doors while the vehicle is in motion, they could fall out of the vehicle, resulting in severe injury or death. To prevent children from opening the rear doors from the inside, the rear door safety locks should be used whenever children are in the vehicle.**

XM CAN (ENG) 4(~101).QXP 4/14/2010 10:38 AM Page 19



## TAILGATE


OXM049011N

D070100AAM-EE

### Opening the tailgate

- The tailgate is locked or unlocked when all doors are locked or unlocked with the key, transmitter (or smart key) or central door lock switch.
- If unlocked, the tailgate can be opened by pressing the handle switch and then pulling the handle up.
- Only the tailgate is unlocked if the tailgate unlock button on the smart key is pressed (if equipped). Once the tailgate is opened and then closed, the tailgate is locked automatically.

### ✻ NOTICE

**In cold and wet climates, door lock and door mechanisms may not work properly due to freezing conditions.**

### ⚠ WARNING

**The tailgate swings upward. Make sure no objects or people are near the rear of the vehicle when opening the tailgate.**

### ⚠ CAUTION

***Make certain that you close the tailgate before driving your vehicle. Possible damage may occur to the tailgate lift cylinders and attached hardware if the tailgate is not closed prior to driving.***

D070200AAM

### Closing the tailgate

To close the tailgate, lower and push down the tailgate firmly. Make sure that the tailgate is securely latched.

### ⚠ WARNING - Exhaust fumes

**If you drive with the tailgate open, you may draw dangerous exhaust fumes into your vehicle which can cause serious injury or death to vehicle occupants.**

**If you must drive with the tailgate opened, keep the air vents and all windows open so that additional outside air comes into the vehicle.**

### ⚠ WARNING

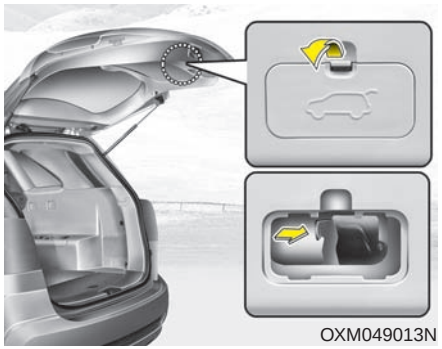
**Make sure your hands, feet and other parts of your body are safely out of the way before closing the tailgate.**

XM CAN (ENG) 4(~101).QXP 4/14/2010 10:38 AM Page 20



**⚠ WARNING - Rear cargo area**

**Occupants should never ride in the rear cargo area where no restraints are available. To avoid injury in the event of an accident or sudden stops, occupants should always be properly restrained.**




D070300AHM

### Emergency tailgate safety release

Your vehicle is equipped with an emergency tailgate safety release lever located on the bottom of the tailgate. When someone is inadvertently locked in the cargo area, the tailgate can be opened by pushing the release lever and pushing open the tailgate.

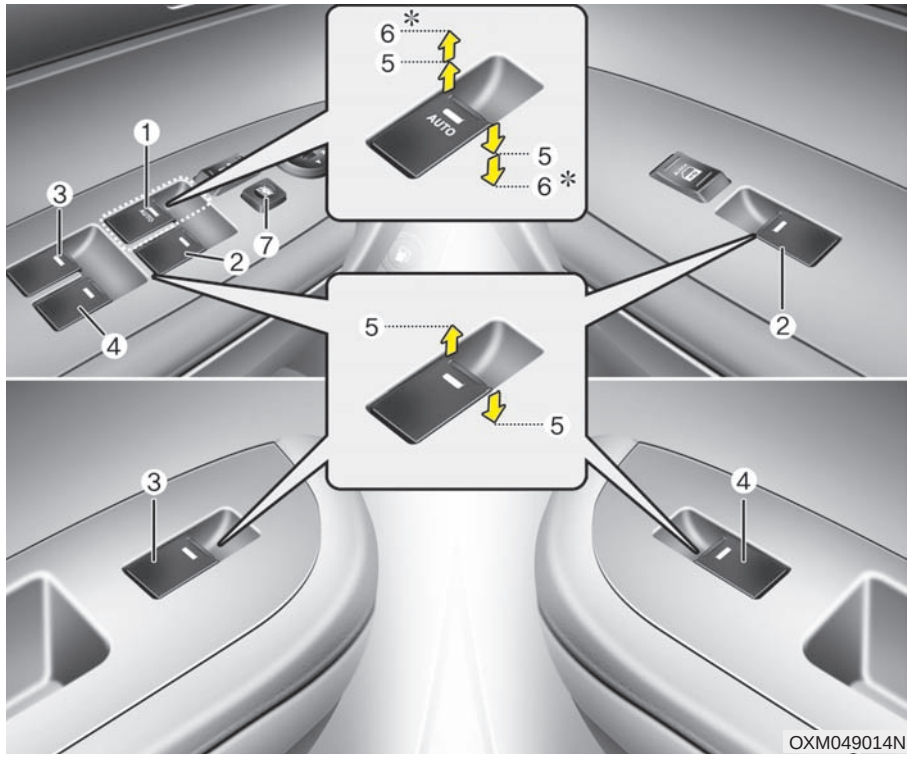
**⚠ WARNING**

- **For emergencies, be fully aware of the location of the emergency tailgate safety release lever in the vehicle and how to open the tailgate if you are accidentally locked in the cargo area.**
- **No one should be allowed to occupy the cargo area of the vehicle at any time. The cargo area is a very dangerous location in the event of a crash.**
- **Use the release lever for emergencies only. Use with extreme caution, especially while the vehicle is in motion.**

XM CAN (ENG) 4(~101).QXP 4/14/2010 10:38 AM Page 21



## WINDOWS




D080000AUN

(1) Driver's door power window switch
(2) Front passenger's door power window switch
(3) Rear door (left) power window switch
(4) Rear door (right) power window switch
(5) Window opening and closing
(6) Automatic power window up*/down (Driver's window)
(7) Power window lock switch

* if equipped

### ✻ NOTICE

**In cold and wet climates, power windows may not work properly due to freezing conditions.**

XM CAN (ENG) 4(~101).QXP 4/14/2010 10:39 AM Page 22



D080100AAM

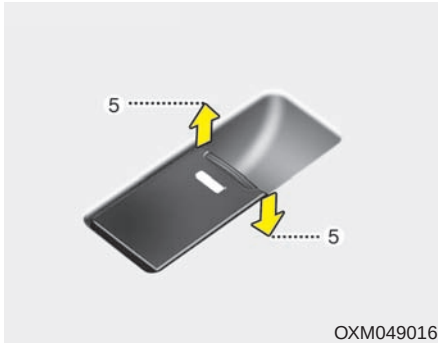
## Power windows

The ignition switch must be in the ON position for power windows to operate.

Each door has a power window switch that controls the door's window. The driver has a power window lock button which can block the operation of passenger windows. The power windows can be operated for approximately 30 seconds after the ignition key is removed or turned to the ACC or LOCK position. However, if the front doors are opened, the power windows cannot be operated even within the 30 second period.

### ✻ NOTICE

**While driving with the rear windows down or with the sunroof (if equipped) in an open (or partially open) position, your vehicle may demonstrate a wind buffeting or pulsation noise. This noise is a normal occurrence and can be reduced or eliminated by taking the following actions. If the noise occurs with one or both of the rear windows down, partially lower both front windows approximately one inch. If you experience the noise with the sunroof open, slightly reduce the size of the sunroof opening.**



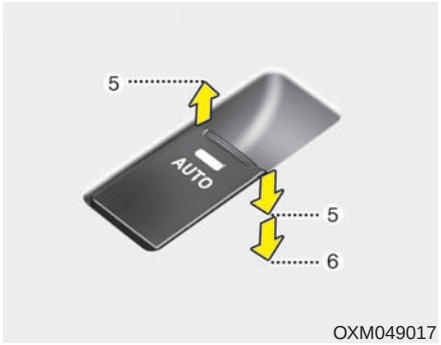

OXM049016

D080101AUN

### *Window opening and closing*

The driver's door has a master power window switch that controls all the windows in the vehicle.

To open or close a window, press down or pull up the front portion of the corresponding switch to the first detent position (5).




OXM049017

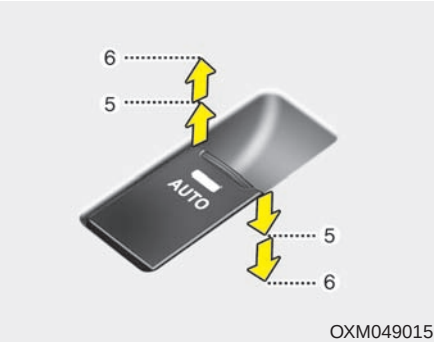
D080102AAM

### *Auto down window (Driver's window, if equipped)*

Pressing the power window switch momentarily to the second detent position (6) completely lowers the driver's window even when the switch is released. To stop the window at the desired position while the window is in operation, momentarily pull the switch in the direction opposite of the window's movement.

XM CAN (ENG) 4(~101).QXP 4/14/2010 10:39 AM Page 23





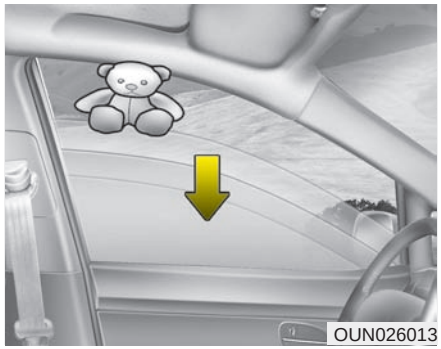
OXM049015

***Auto up/down window (Driver's window, if equipped)***

Pressing or pulling up the power window switch momentarily to the second detent position (6) completely lowers or raises the window even when the switch is released. To stop the window at the desired position while the window is in operation, pull up or press down and release the switch.

If the power window does not operate normally, the automatic power window system must be reset as follows:

1. Turn the ignition switch to the ON position.
2. Close the driver's window and continue pulling up the driver's power window switch for at least 1 second after the window is completely closed.


OUN026013

**Automatic reversal**

If the upward movement of the window is blocked by an object or part of the body, the window will detect the resistance and will stop upward movement. The window will then lower approximately 30 cm (11.8 in.) to allow the object to be cleared.

The distance may vary based on the size or position of the window. If the window detects the resistance while the power window switch is pulled up continuously, the window will stop upward movement then lower approximately 2.5 cm (1 in.). And if the power window switch is pulled up continuously again within 5 seconds after the window is lowered by the automatic window reversal feature, the automatic window reversal will not operate.

### ✻ NOTICE

**The automatic reverse feature for the driver's window is only active when the "auto up" feature is used by fully pulling up the switch. The automatic reverse feature will not operate if the window is raised using the halfway position on the power window switch.**

### ⚠ WARNING

**Always check for obstructions before raising any window to avoid injuries or vehicle damage. If an object less than 4 mm (0.16 in.) in diameter is caught between the window glass and the upper window channel, the automatic reverse window may not detect the resistance and will not stop and reverse direction.**

D080104AAM

***Power window lock button***

- The driver can disable the power window switches on the passenger doors by pressing the power window lock button located on the driver's door to the LOCK position (pressed).
- **When the power window lock button is in the LOCK position (pressed), the driver's master control cannot operate the passenger door power windows.**

### ⚠ CAUTION

- ***To prevent possible damage to the power window system, do not open or close two windows or more at the same time. This will also ensure the longevity of the fuse.***
- ***Never try to operate the main switch on the driver's door and the individual door window switch in the opposite directions at the same time. If this is done, the window will stop and cannot be opened or closed.***

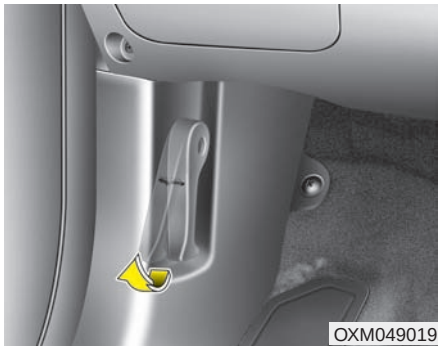
### ⚠ WARNING - Windows

- **NEVER leave the ignition key in the vehicle.**
- **NEVER leave any child unattended in the vehicle. Even very young children may inadvertently cause the vehicle to move, entangle themselves in the windows, or otherwise injure themselves or others.**
- **Always double check to make sure all arms, hands, head and other obstructions are safely out of the way before closing a window.**
- **Do not allow children to play with the power windows. Keep the driver's door power window lock button in the LOCK position (pressed). Serious injury can result from unintentional window operation by the child.**
- **Do not extend heads or any limbs outside the window while the vehicle is in motion.**

XM CAN (ENG) 4(~101).QXP 4/14/2010 10:39 AM Page 25



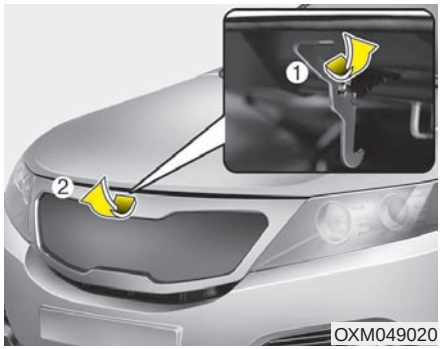
## HOOD


OXM049019

D090100AUN-U1

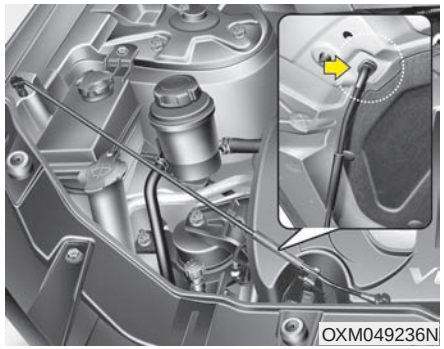
### Opening the hood

1. Pull the release lever to unlatch the hood. The hood should pop open slightly.



OXM049020

2. Go to the front of the vehicle, raise the hood slightly, pull the secondary latch (1) inside of the hood center and lift the hood (2).


OXM049236N

3. Pull out the support rod from the support rod holder.
4. Place the support rod end in the designated hole on the underside of the hood to hold up the hood.

**⚠ WARNING - Hot parts**

**Grasp the support rod in the area wrapped in rubber. The rubber will help prevent you from being burned by hot metal when the engine is hot.**

XM CAN (ENG) 4(~101).QXP 4/14/2010 10:39 AM Page 26



D090200AAM

## Closing the hood

1. Before closing the hood, check the following:
   - All filler caps in the engine compartment must be correctly installed.
   - Gloves, rags or any other combustible material must be removed from the engine compartment.
2. Return the support rod to its clip to prevent it from rattling.
3. Lower the hood until it is about 30 cm (1 ft.) above the closed position and let it drop. Make sure that it locks into place.

**⚠ WARNING**

- **Before closing the hood, ensure that all obstructions are removed from the hood opening. Closing the hood with an obstruction present in the hood opening may result in property damage or severe personal injury.**
- **Do not leave gloves, rags or any other combustible material in the engine compartment. Doing so may cause a heat-induced fire.**

**⚠ WARNING**

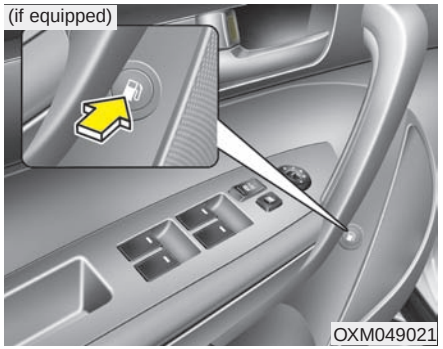
- **Always double check to be sure that the hood is firmly latched before driving away. If it is not latched, the hood could open while the vehicle is being driven, causing total loss of visibility, which might result in an accident.**
- **The support rod must be inserted completely into the hole provided whenever you inspect the engine compartment. This will prevent the hood from falling and possibly injuring you.**
- **Do not move the vehicle with the hood raised. The view will be blocked and the hood could fall or get damaged.**

XM CAN (ENG) 4(~101).QXP 4/14/2010 10:39 AM Page 27



## FUEL FILLER LID

(if equipped)



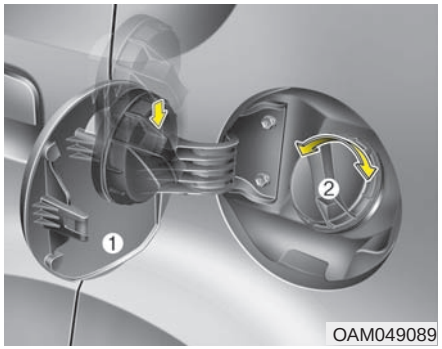

D100100AXM

### Opening the fuel filler lid

The fuel filler lid must be opened from inside the vehicle by pressing the fuel filler lid opener button on the driver's door. (if equipped)

### ✻ NOTICE

**If the fuel filler lid does not open because ice has formed around it, tap lightly or push on the lid to break the ice and release the lid. Do not pry on the lid. If necessary, spray around the lid with an approved de-icer fluid (do not use radiator anti-freeze) or move the vehicle to a warm place and allow the ice to melt.**




1. Stop the engine.
2. To open the fuel filler lid, push the fuel filler lid opener button (if equipped).
3. Pull open the fuel filler lid (1).
4. To remove the cap, turn the fuel filler cap (2) counterclockwise.
5. Refuel as needed.

D100200AXM

### Closing the fuel filler lid

1. To install the cap, turn it clockwise until it "clicks". This indicates that the cap is securely tightened.
2. Close the fuel filler lid and push it in lightly making sure that it is securely closed.

### ✻ NOTICE

**There may be an intermittent noise near the refueling hole while the engine is idling if the fuel cap is not closed securely. This occurs normally with the OBD system.**

D100300AAM-EU

### ⚠ WARNING - Refueling

- **If pressurized fuel sprays out, it can cover your clothes or skin and subject you to the risk of fire and burns. Always remove the fuel cap carefully and slowly. If the cap is venting fuel or if you hear a hissing sound, wait until the condition stops before completely removing the cap.**
- **Do not "top off" after the nozzle automatically shuts off when refueling.**
- **Tighten the cap until it clicks, otherwise the Check Engine light will illuminate.**
- **Always check that the fuel cap is installed securely to prevent fuel spillage in the event of an accident.**

XM CAN (ENG) 4(~101).QXP 4/14/2010 10:39 AM Page 28



**⚠ WARNING - Refueling dangers**

**Automotive fuels are flammable materials. When refueling, please note the following guidelines carefully. Failure to follow these guidelines may result in severe personal injury, severe burns or death by fire or explosion.**

- **Read and follow all warnings posted at the gas station facility.**
- **Before refueling, note the location of the Emergency Gasoline Shut-Off, if available, at the gas station facility.**
- **Before touching the fuel nozzle, you should eliminate potentially dangerous static electricity discharge by touching another metal part of the vehicle, a safe distance away from the fuel filler neck, nozzle, or other gas source.**

**(Continued)**

**(Continued)**

- **Do not get back into a vehicle once you have begun refueling since you can generate static electricity by touching, rubbing or sliding against any item or fabric (polyester, satin, nylon, etc.) capable of producing static electricity. Static electricity discharge can ignite fuel vapors resulting in rapid burning. If you must re-enter the vehicle, you should once again eliminate potentially dangerous static electricity discharge by touching a metal part of the vehicle, away from the fuel filler neck, nozzle or other gasoline source.**
- **When using an approved portable fuel container, be sure to place the container on the ground prior to refueling. Static electricity discharge from the container can ignite fuel vapors causing a fire. Once refueling has begun, contact with the vehicle should be maintained until the filling is complete.**

**(Continued)**

**(Continued)**

**Use only approved portable plastic fuel containers designed to carry and store gasoline.**

- **Do not use cellular phones while refueling. Electric current and/or electronic interference from cellular phones can potentially ignite fuel vapors causing a fire.**
- **When refueling, always shut the engine off. Sparks produced by electrical components related to the engine can ignite fuel vapors causing a fire. Once refueling is complete, check to make sure the filler cap and filler door are securely closed, before starting the engine.**
- **DO NOT use matches or a lighter and DO NOT SMOKE or leave a lit cigarette in your vehicle while at a gas station especially during refueling. Automotive fuel is highly flammable and can, when ignited, result in fire.**

**(Continued)**

XM CAN (ENG) 4(~101).QXP 4/14/2010 10:39 AM Page 29

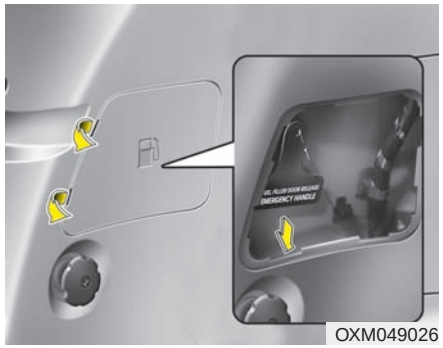


**(Continued)**

- **If a fire breaks out during refueling, leave the vicinity of the vehicle, and immediately contact the manager of the gas station and then contact the local fire department or 911. Follow any safety instructions they provide.**

**⚠ CAUTION**

- ***Make sure to refuel your vehicle according to the "Fuel requirements" suggested in section 1.***
- ***If the fuel filler cap requires replacement, use only a genuine KIA cap or the equivalent specified for your vehicle. An incorrect fuel filler cap can result in a serious malfunction of the fuel system or emission control system.***
- ***Do not spill fuel on the exterior surfaces of the vehicle. Any type of fuel spilled on painted surfaces may damage the paint.***
- ***After refueling, make sure the fuel cap is installed securely to prevent fuel spillage in the event of an accident.***



OXM049026

### Emergency fuel filler lid release

If the fuel filler lid does not open using the remote fuel filler lid release, you can open it manually. Remove the panel in the cargo area. Pull the handle out slightly.

**⚠ CAUTION**

***Do not pull the handle excessively, otherwise the luggage compartment area trim or release handle may be damaged.***

XM CAN (ENG) 4(~101).QXP 4/14/2010 10:40 AM Page 30



## PANORAMIC SUNROOF (IF EQUIPPED)

If your vehicle is equipped with a sunroof, you can slide or tilt your sunroof with the sunroof control lever located on the overhead console (1).

The sunroof can only be opened, closed, or tilted when the ignition switch is in the ON position.

### ✻ NOTICE

- **In cold and wet climates, the sunroof may not work properly due to freezing conditions.**
- **After a vehicle is washed or in a rainstorm be sure to wipe off any water that is on the sunroof before operating it.**

### ⚠ CAUTION

***Do not continue to pull or push the sunroof control lever after the sunroof is fully opened, closed, or tilted. Damage to the motor or system components could occur.***

### ✻ NOTICE

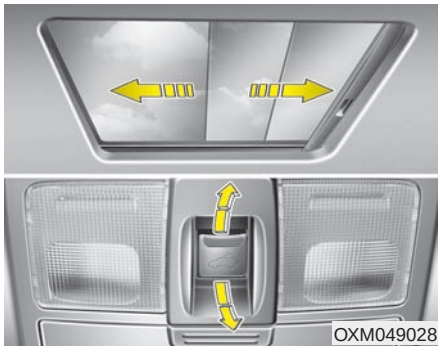
**The sunroof cannot tilt when it is in the slide position but can be slid while in a tilt position.**

### ⚠ WARNING

- **Never adjust the sunroof or roller blind while driving. This could result in loss of control and an accident that may cause death, serious injury, or property damage.**
- **If you would like to carry items on the roof rack using a cross bar, do not operate the sunroof.**
- **When carrying cargo on the roof rack, do not load heavy items above the sunroof or glass roof.**
- **All occupants of the vehicle must wear their seat belts at all times. Seat belts and child restraints reduce serious or fatal injuries for all occupants in the event of a collision or sudden stop.**

XM CAN (ENG) 4(~101).QXP 4/14/2010 10:40 AM Page 31




OXM049028

## Sliding the sunroof

Before opening or closing the sunroof, open the roller blind (refer to the following page for instructions on how to use the roller blind).

To open or close the sunroof (manual slide feature), pull or push the sunroof control lever backward or forward to the first detent position.

Pulling the control lever downward also closes the sunroof.

**To open the sunroof automatically:**

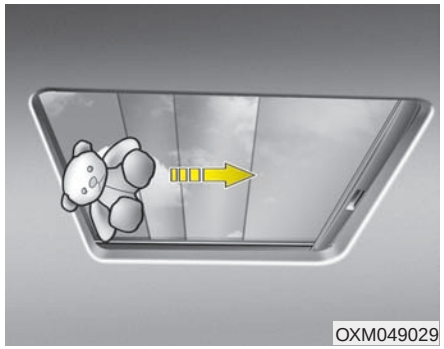
Pull the sunroof control lever backward to the second detent position and then release it. The sunroof will slide open all the way automatically.

To stop the sunroof sliding at any point, pull or push the sunroof control lever momentarily.

**To close the sunroof automatically:**

Push the sunroof control lever forward to the second detent position and then release it. The sunroof will automatically close all the way.

To stop the sunroof sliding at any point, pull or push the sunroof control lever momentarily.


OXM049029

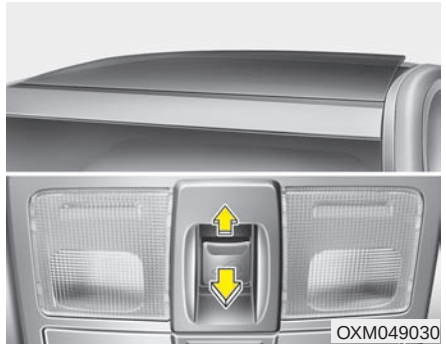
***Automatic reversal***

If an object or part of the body is detected while the sunroof is closing automatically, it will reverse the direction, and then stop.

The auto reverse function does not work if a tiny obstacle is between the sliding glass and the sunroof sash. You should always check that all passengers and objects are away from the sunroof before closing it.

XM CAN (ENG) 4(~101).QXP 4/14/2010 10:40 AM Page 32






### Tilting the sunroof

Before opening or closing the sunroof, open the roller blind (refer to the following page for instructions on how to use the roller blind).

To open the sunroof, push the sunroof control lever upward.

To close the sunroof, pull the sunroof lever downward or forward until the sunroof moves to the desired position.

**⚠ WARNING - Sunroof**

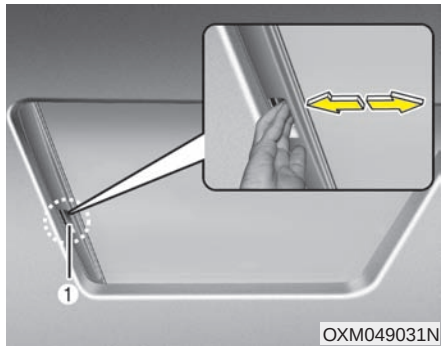
- **Be careful that no head, hands and body parts are obstructed by a closing sunroof.**
- **Do not extend the face, neck, arms or body outside the sunroof while driving.**
- **Make sure your hands and head are safely out of the way before closing a sunroof.**

**⚠ CAUTION**

- ***Periodically remove any dirt that may accumulate on the guide rail.***
- ***If you try to open the sunroof when the temperature is below freezing or when the sunroof is covered with snow or ice, the glass or the motor could be damaged.***
- ***Do not leave the roller blind closed while the sunroof is opened.***

XM CAN (ENG) 4(~101).QXP 4/14/2010 10:40 AM Page 33






### Roller blind

The roller blinds are installed inside of the sunroof and glass roof.

Open or close the roller blind manually using the handle (1) when you need to.

Before opening or closing the sunroof, open the roller blind.

**⚠ CAUTION**

***Operation of the roller blind without using the handle (1) may cause misalignment or malfunction.***

**✻ NOTICE**

**It is normal for wrinkles to form on the blind because of its material characteristic.**

### Resetting the sunroof

Whenever the vehicle battery is disconnected or discharged, you must reset your sunroof system as follows:

1. Turn the ignition switch to the ON position.
2. Open the roller blind.
3. Close the sunroof.
4. Release the sunroof control lever.
5. Push the sunroof control lever forward in the direction of close (about 10 seconds) until the sunroof is moved a little. Then, release the lever.
6. Push the sunroof control lever forward in the direction of close until the sunroof operates as follows;

   TILT OPEN → SLIDE OPEN → SLIDE CLOSE

   Then, release the lever.

When this is complete, the sunroof system has been reset.

XM CAN (ENG) 4(~101).QXP 4/14/2010 10:40 AM Page 34



## STEERING WHEEL

D130100AHM-EU-U1

### Power steering

Power steering uses energy from the engine to assist you in steering the vehicle. If the engine is off or if the power steering system becomes inoperative, the vehicle may still be steered, but it will require increased steering effort.

Should you notice any change in the effort required to steer during normal vehicle operation, have the power steering checked by an authorized KIA dealer.

**⚠ CAUTION**

***Never hold the steering wheel to the extreme right or left for more than 5 seconds with the engine running. Holding the steering wheel for more than 5 seconds in either position may cause damage to the power steering pump.***

**✻ NOTICE**

**If the power steering drive belt breaks or if the power steering pump malfunctions, steering effort will greatly increase.**

**✻ NOTICE**

**If the vehicle is parked for extended periods outside in cold weather (below -10°C/14°F), the power steering may require increased effort when the engine is first started. This is caused by increased fluid viscosity due to the cold weather and does not indicate a malfunction.**
**When this happens, increase the engine RPM by depressing the accelerator until the RPM reaches 1,500 rpm then release or let the engine idle for two or three minutes to warm up the fluid.**

D130300AUN

### Tilt steering

Tilt steering allows you to adjust the steering wheel before you drive. You can also raise it to give your legs more room when you exit and enter the vehicle.

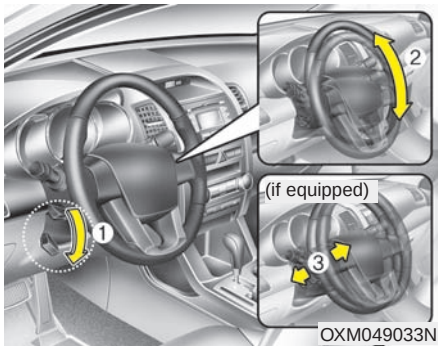
The steering wheel should be positioned so that it is comfortable for you to drive, while permitting you to see the instrument panel warning lights and gauges.

**⚠ WARNING**

- **Never adjust the angle of the steering wheel while driving. You may lose steering control and cause severe personal injury, death or accidents.**
- **After adjusting, push the steering wheel both up and down to be certain it is locked in position.**

XM CAN (ENG) 4(~101).QXP 4/14/2010 10:40 AM Page 35





OXM049033N

To change the steering wheel angle, pull down the lock-release lever (1), adjust the steering wheel to the desired angle (2) and height (3, if equipped) then pull up the lock-release lever to lock the steering wheel in place. Be sure to adjust the steering wheel to the desired position before driving.

OXM049034N

D130500AUN

### Horn

To sound the horn, press the horn symbols on your steering wheel. Check the horn regularly to be sure it operates properly.

### ✻ NOTICE

**To sound the horn, press the area indicated by the horn symbol on your steering wheel (see illustration). The horn will operate only when this area is pressed.**

### ⚠ CAUTION

***Do not strike the horn severely to operate it, or hit it with your fist. Do not press on the horn with a sharp-pointed object.***

XM CAN (ENG) 4(~101).QXP 4/14/2010 10:40 AM Page 36



## MIRRORS

D140100AHM

### Inside rearview mirror

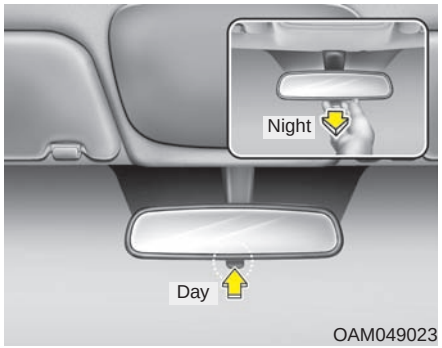
Adjust the rearview mirror so that the center view through the rear window is seen. Make this adjustment before you start driving.

**⚠ WARNING - Rear visibility**

**Do not place objects in the rear seat or cargo area which would interfere with your vision through the rear window.**

**⚠ WARNING**

**Do not adjust the rearview mirror while the vehicle is moving. This could result in loss of control, and an accident which could cause death, serious injury or property damage.**




D140101AHM

***Day/night rearview mirror (if equipped)***

Make this adjustment before you start driving and while the day/night lever is in the day position.

Pull the day/night lever toward you to reduce the glare from the headlights of the vehicles behind you during night driving.

*Remember that you lose some rearview clarity in the night position.*

D140102AHM-EE-C1

***Electrochromic Mirror (ECM) (if equipped)***

The electric rearview mirror automatically controls the glare from the headlights of the vehicles behind you in nighttime or low light driving conditions. The sensor mounted in the mirror senses the light level around the vehicle, and automatically controls the headlight glare from the vehicles behind you.

When the engine is running, the glare is automatically controlled by the sensor mounted in the rearview mirror.

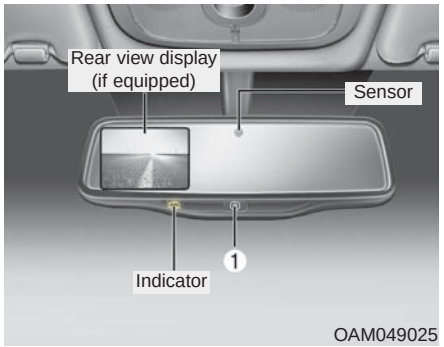
Whenever the shift lever is shifted into reverse (R), the mirror will automatically go to the brightest setting in order to improve the drivers view behind the vehicle.

**⚠ CAUTION**

***When cleaning the mirror, use a paper towel or similar material dampened with glass cleaner. Do not spray glass cleaner directly on the mirror. It may cause the liquid cleaner to enter the mirror housing.***

XM CAN (ENG) 4(~101).QXP 4/14/2010 10:40 AM Page 37





OAM049025

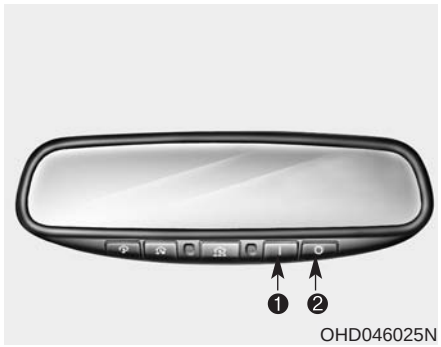
**To operate the electric rearview mirror:**

- The mirror defaults to the ON position whenever the ignition switch is turned on.
- Press the ON/OFF button (1) to turn the automatic dimming function off. The mirror indicator light will turn off.

  Press the ON/OFF button (1) to turn the automatic dimming function on. The mirror indicator light will illuminate.

**⚠ CAUTION**

***If your vehicle has window tint or other types of metallic coating on the rear window the electric rearview mirror may not work properly.***



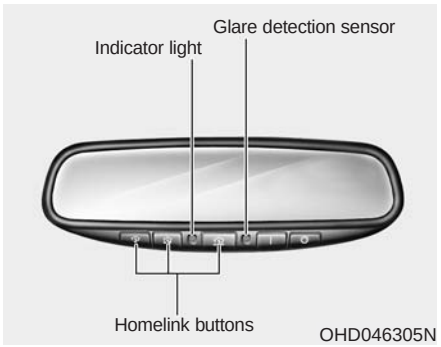
OHD046025N

***Electrochromic mirror with HomeLink system (if equipped)***

**To operate the electric rearview mirror**

Press the I button (1) to turn the automatic- dimming function on. The mirror indicator light will illuminate.

Press the O button (2) to turn the automatic- dimming function off. The mirror indicator light will turn off.



OHD046305N

**HomeLink® Wireless Control System**

Your new mirror comes with an integrated HomeLink Universal Transceiver, which allows you to program the mirror to activate your garage door(s), estate gate, home lighting, etc. The mirror actually learns the codes from your various existing transmitters.

XM CAN (ENG) 4(~101).QXP 4/14/2010 10:40 AM Page 38



**⚠ WARNING**

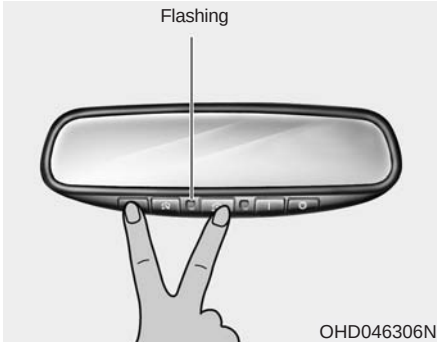
- **When programming the HomeLink® Wireless Control System, you may be operating a garage door or gate operator. Make sure that people and objects are out of the way of the moving door or gate to prevent potential harm or damage.**
- **Do not use HomeLink with any garage door opener that lacks the safety stop and reverse feature as required by federal safety standards. (This includes any garage door opener model manufactured before April 1, 1982.) A garage door opener which cannot detect an object, signaling the door to stop and reverse, does not meet current federal safety standards. Using a garage door opener without these features increases risk of serious injury or death. For more information, call 1-800-355-3515 or on the internet at www.homelink.com.**

Retain the original transmitter for future programming procedures (i.e., new vehicle purchase). It is also suggested that upon the sale of the vehicle, the programmed HomeLink buttons be erased for security purposes (follow step 1 in the “Programming” portion of this text).

**Programming**

Your vehicle may require the ignition switch to be turned to the ACC position for programming and/or operation of HomeLink. It is also recommended that a new battery be replaced in the hand-held transmitter of the device being programmed to HomeLink for quicker training and accurate transmission of the radio-frequency.

Follow these steps to train your HomeLink mirror:



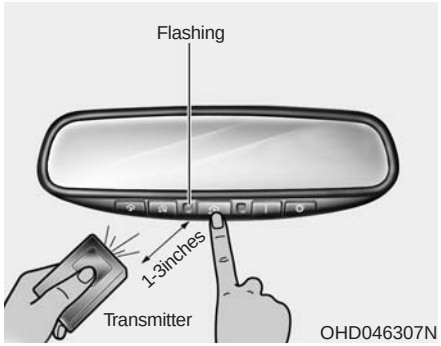

1. When programming the buttons for the first time, press and hold the left and center buttons ( , ) simultaneously until the indicator light begins to flash after approximately 20 seconds. (This procedure erases the factory-set default codes. Do not perform this step when programming the additional HomeLink buttons.)

XM CAN (ENG) 4(~101).QXP 4/14/2010 10:40 AM Page 39



### ✻ NOTICE

**For non rolling code garage door openers, follow steps 2 - 3.**
**For rolling code garage door openers, follow steps 2 - 6.**
**For Canadian Programming, please follow the Canadian Programming section.**
**For help with determining whether your garage is non-rolling code or rolling code, please refer to the garage door openers owner's manual or contact HomeLink customer service at 1-800-355-3515.**




2. Press and hold the button on the HomeLink system you wish to train and the button on the transmitter while the transmitter is approximately 2-8 cm (1 to 3 inches) away from the mirror. Do not release the buttons until step 3 has been completed.
3. The HomeLink indicator light will flash, first slowly and then rapidly. When the indicator light flashes rapidly, both buttons may be released. (The rapid flashing light indicates successful programming of the new frequency signal.)

### ✻ NOTICE

**Some gate and garage door openers may require you to replace step #3 with the "cycling" procedure noted in the "Canadian Programming" section of this document.**

**Rolling code programming**

To train a garage door opener (or other rolling code equipped devices) with the rolling code feature, follow these instructions after completing the "Programming" portion of this text. (A second person may make the following training procedures quicker & easier.)

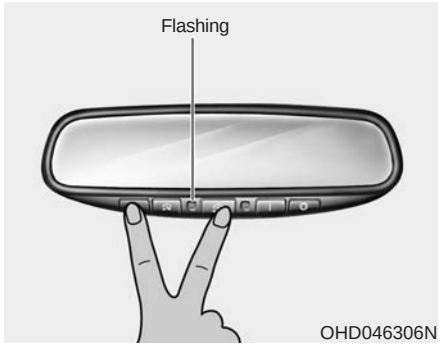
4. Locate the "learn" or "smart" button on the device's motor head unit. Exact location and color of the button may vary by product brand. If there is difficulty locating the "learn" or "smart" button, reference the device's owner's manual or contact HomeLink at 1-800-355-3515 or on the internet at www.homelink.com.
5. Press and release the "learn" or "smart" button on the device's motor head unit. You have 30 seconds to complete step number 6.
6. Return to the vehicle and firmly press and release the programmed HomeLink button up to three times. The rolling code equipped device should now recognize the HomeLink signal and activate when the HomeLink button is pressed. The remaining two buttons may now be programmed if this has not previously been done. Refer to the "Programming" portion of this text.

XM CAN (ENG) 4(~101).QXP 4/14/2010 10:40 AM Page 40



**Operating HomeLink**

To operate, simply press the programmed HomeLink button. Activation will now occur for the trained product (garage door, security system, entry door lock, estate gate, or home or office lighting). For convenience, the hand-held transmitter of the device may also be used at any time. The HomeLink Wireless Controls System (once programmed) or the original hand-held transmitter may be used to activate the device (e.g. garage door, entry door lock, etc.). In the event that there are still programming difficulties, contact HomeLink at 1-800-355-3515 or on the internet at www.homelink.com.




**Erasing programmed HomeLink buttons**

To erase the three programmed buttons (individual buttons cannot be erased):

- Press and hold the left and center buttons simultaneously, until the indicator light begins to flash (approximately 20 seconds). Release both buttons. Do not hold for longer than 30 seconds.

HomeLink is now in the train (or learning) mode and can be programmed at any time.

**Reprogramming a single HomeLink button**

To program a device to HomeLink using a HomeLink button previously trained, follow these steps:

1. Press and hold the desired HomeLink button. Do NOT release until step 4 has been completed.
2. When the indicator light begins to flash slowly (after 20 seconds), position the hand-held transmitter 2-8 cm (1 to 3 inches) away from the HomeLink surface.
3. Press and hold the hand-held transmitter button (or press and “cycle” - as described in “Canadian Programming”).
4. The HomeLink indicator light will flash, first slowly and then rapidly. When the indicator light begins to flash rapidly, release both buttons.

The previous device has now been erased and the new device can be activated by pushing the HomeLink button that has just been programmed. This procedure will not affect any other programmed HomeLink buttons.

XM CAN (ENG) 4(~101).QXP 4/14/2010 10:40 AM Page 41



**Canadian Programming**

**Garage & gate openers**

During programming, your hand-held transmitter may automatically stop transmitting. Continue to press and hold the HomeLink button (note steps 2 through 4 in the “Programming” portion of this text) while you press and re-press (“cycle”) your handheld transmitter every two seconds until the frequency signal has been learned. The indicator light will flash slowly and then rapidly after several seconds upon successful training.

**⚠ CAUTION**

***If programming a garage door opener or gate, it is advised to unplug the device during the “cycling” process to prevent possible motor burn-up.***

**Accessories**

If you would like additional information on the HomeLink Wireless Control System, HomeLink compatible products, or to purchase other accessories such as the HomeLink® Lighting Package, please contact HomeLink at 1-800-355-3515 or on the internet at www.homelink.com.

**FCC ID: NZLZTVHL3**

**IC: 4112A-ZTVHL3**

**This device complies with Industry Canada Standard RSS-210.**

Operation is subject to the following two conditions:

1. this device may not cause harmful interference, and
2. This device must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operation.

**⚠ WARNING**

**The transceiver has been tested and complies with FCC and Industry Canada rules. Changes or modifications not expressly approved by the party responsible for compliance could void the user's authority to operate the device.**

XM CAN (ENG) 4(~101).QXP 4/14/2010 10:40 AM Page 42



D140200AHM-EU

## Outside rearview mirror

Be sure to adjust the mirror angles before driving.

Your vehicle is equipped with both left-hand and right-hand outside rearview mirrors. The mirrors can be adjusted remotely with the remote switch. The mirror heads can be folded back to prevent damage during an automatic car wash or when passing through a narrow street.

**⚠ WARNING - Rearview mirrors**

- **The right outside rearview mirror is convex. Objects seen in the mirror are closer than they appear.**
- **Use your interior rearview mirror or direct observation to determine the actual distance of following vehicles when changing lanes.**

**⚠ CAUTION**

***Do not scrape ice off the mirror face; this may damage the surface of the glass. If ice should restrict the movement of the mirror, do not force the mirror for adjustment. To remove ice, use a deicer spray, or a sponge or soft cloth with very warm water.***

**⚠ CAUTION**

***If the mirror is jammed with ice, do not adjust the mirror by force. Use an approved spray de-icer (not radiator antifreeze) to release the frozen mechanism or move the vehicle to a warm place and allow the ice to melt.***

**⚠ WARNING**

**Do not adjust or fold the outside rearview mirrors while the vehicle is moving. This could result in loss of control, and an accident which could cause death, serious injury or property damage.**

XM CAN (ENG) 4(~101).QXP 4/14/2010 10:41 AM Page 43

D140201AHM-EE

### *Remote control*

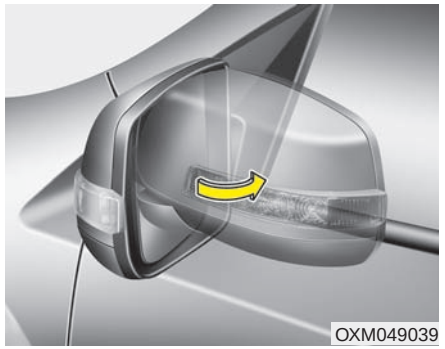
**Electric type (if equipped)**

The electric remote control mirror switch allows you to adjust the position of the left and right outside rearview mirrors. To adjust the position of either mirror the ignition switch should be in the ACC position. Move the switch (1) to R or L to select the right side mirror or the left side mirror, then press a corresponding point on the mirror adjustment control to position the selected mirror up, down, left or right.

After the adjustment, put the switch into the neutral (center) position to prevent inadvertent adjustment.

### ⚠ CAUTION

- ***The mirrors stop moving when they reach the maximum adjusting angles, but the motor continues to operate while the switch is pressed. Do not press the switch longer than necessary, the motor may be damaged.***
- ***Do not attempt to adjust the outside rearview mirror by hand. Doing so may damage the parts.***




D140202AHM-EU

### *Folding the outside rearview mirror*

To fold the outside rearview mirror, grasp the housing of the mirror and then fold it toward the rear of the vehicle.

XM CAN (ENG) 4(~101).QXP 4/14/2010 10:41 AM Page 44



## INSTRUMENT CLUSTER

1. Tachometer
2. Turn signal indicators
3. Speedometer
4. Engine temperature gauge
5. Warning and indicator lights
6. Shift position indicator* (Automatic transaxle only)
7. Odometer/Tripmeter*
8. Trip computer*
9. Fuel gauge

* if equipped

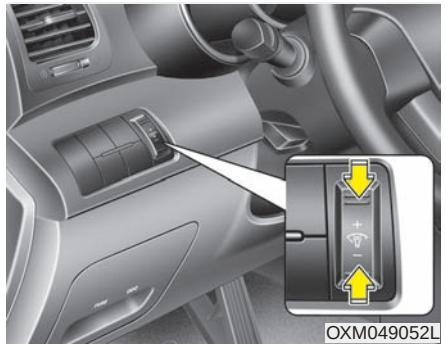
❈ The actual cluster in the vehicle may differ from the illustration.

OXM049050C-1

D150000AAM-EU

XM CAN (ENG) 4(~101).QXP 4/14/2010 10:41 AM Page 45






D150100AAM-EU

## Instrument panel illumination (if equipped)

When the ignition switch is on, press the illumination control button to adjust the brightness of the instrument panel illumination.

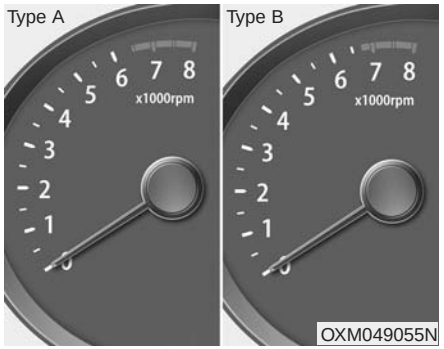
## Gauges

D150201AHM

### *Speedometer*

The speedometer indicates the forward speed of the vehicle.

The speedometer is calibrated in kilometers per hour and/or miles per hour.




D150202AHM

### *Tachometer*

The tachometer indicates the approximate number of engine revolutions per minute (rpm).

Use the tachometer to select the correct shift points and to prevent lugging and/or over-revving the engine.

XM CAN (ENG) 4(~101).QXP 4/14/2010 10:41 AM Page 46



When the door is opened, or if the engine is not started within 1 minute, the tachometer pointer may move slightly in the ON position with the engine OFF. This movement is normal and will not affect the accuracy of the tachometer once the engine is running.

**⚠ CAUTION**

***Do not operate the engine within the tachometer's RED ZONE.***

***This may cause severe engine damage.***

D150203AUN

***Engine temperature gauge***

This gauge shows the temperature of the engine coolant when the ignition switch is ON.

Do not continue driving with an overheated engine. If your vehicle overheats, refer to “If the engine overheats” in section 6.

**⚠ CAUTION**

***If the gauge pointer moves beyond the normal range area toward the “H” position, it indicates overheating that may damage the engine.***

**⚠ WARNING**

**Never remove the radiator cap when the engine is hot. The engine coolant is under pressure and could cause severe burns. Wait until the engine is cool before adding coolant to the reservoir.**

XM CAN (ENG) 4(~101).QXP 4/14/2010 10:41 AM Page 47

OAM049034

D150204BHM-EE

### *Fuel gauge*

The fuel gauge indicates the approximate amount of fuel remaining in the fuel tank. The fuel tank capacity is given in section 8. The fuel gauge is supplemented by a low fuel warning light, which will illuminate when the fuel tank is nearly empty.

On inclines or curves, the fuel gauge pointer may fluctuate or the low fuel warning light may come on earlier than usual due to the movement of fuel in the tank.

**⚠ WARNING - Fuel gauge**

**Running out of fuel can expose vehicle occupants to danger.**

**You must stop and obtain additional fuel as soon as possible after the warning light comes on or when the gauge indicator comes close to the E level.**

**⚠ CAUTION**

***Avoid driving with a extremely low fuel level. Running out of fuel could cause the engine to misfire, damaging the catalytic converter.***

OXM049050N/Q

D150205AAM-EU

### *Odometer/Tripmeter/TRIP computer (if equipped)*

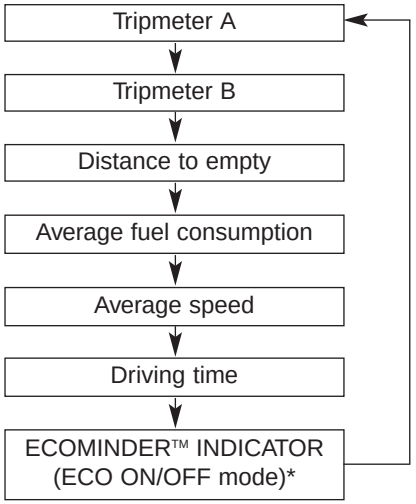
The trip computer is a microcomputer-controlled driver information system that displays information related to driving, such as odometer, tripmeter, distance to empty, average speed, driving time, average fuel consumption, and the ECOMINDER™ Indicator (ECO ON/OFF) mode on the display when the ignition switch is in the ON position. All stored driving information (except odometer and distance to empty) is reset if the battery is disconnected.

XM CAN (ENG) 4(~101).QXP 4/14/2010 10:41 AM Page 48



The odometer is always displayed until the display is turned off.

Press the TRIP button for less than 1 second to select any mode as follows:




* if equipped

OXM049061C

**Odometer**

The odometer indicates the total distance the vehicle has been driven.

You will also find the odometer useful to determine when periodic maintenance should be performed.

See Maintenance, section 7.

## ✻ NOTICE

**It is unlawful to alter the odometer of all vehicles with the intent to change the mileage registered on the odometer. The alteration may void your warranty coverage.**

OXM049062C

**Tripmeter**

TRIP A : Tripmeter A

TRIP B : Tripmeter B

This mode indicates the distance of individual trips selected since the last tripmeter reset.

The meter's working range is from 0.0 to 999.9 km (0.0 to 999.9 miles).

Pressing the TRIP button for more than 1 second, when the tripmeter (TRIP A or TRIP B) is being displayed, clears the tripmeter to zero (0.0).

XM CAN (ENG) 4(~101).QXP 4/14/2010 10:41 AM Page 49

OXM049063C/OXM049064C

**Distance to empty (km or mi.)**

This mode indicates the estimated distance to empty based on the current fuel in the fuel tank and the amount of fuel delivered to the engine. When the remaining distance is below 50 km (30 miles), "---" will be displayed and the distance to empty indicator (RANGE) will blink until the vehicle is refueled.

The meter's working range is from 50 to 990 km (30 to 990 miles).

OXM049065C

**Average fuel consumption (l/100 km or MPG)**

This mode calculates the average fuel consumption from the total fuel used and the distance since the last average consumption reset. The total fuel used is calculated from the fuel consumption input. For an accurate calculation, drive more than 50 m (0.03 miles).

Pressing the RESET button for more than 1 second, when the average fuel consumption is being displayed, clears the average fuel consumption to zero (--.-).

If the vehicle speed exceeds 1 km/h (1.6 MPH) after refueled more than 6 *l* (1.6 gallons), the average fuel consumption will be cleared to zero (--.-).

### ✻ NOTICE

- **If the vehicle is not on level ground or the battery power has been interrupted, the "Distance to empty" function may not operate correctly.**
  **The trip computer may not register additional fuel if less than 6 liters (1.6 gallons) of fuel are added to the vehicle.**
- **The fuel consumption and distance to empty values may vary significantly based on driving conditions, driving habits, and condition of the vehicle.**
- **The distance to empty value is an estimate of the available driving distance. This value may differ from the actual driving distance available.**

XM CAN (ENG) 4(~101).QXP 4/14/2010 10:41 AM Page 50

OXM049067C

**Average speed (km/h or MPH)**

This mode calculates the average speed of the vehicle since the last average speed reset.

Even if the vehicle is not in motion, the average speed keeps going while the engine is running.

Pressing the RESET button for more than 1 second, when the average speed is being displayed or after the engine stops and 2 hours elapsed clears the average speed to zero (---).

OXM049068C

**Driving time**

This mode indicates the total time traveled since the last driving time reset.

Even if the vehicle is not in motion, the driving time keeps going while the engine is running.

The meter's working range is from 0:00~99:59.

Pressing the RESET button for more than 1 second, when the driving time is being displayed or after the engine stops and 2 hours elapsed clears the driving time to zero (0:00).

OXM049070N

**ECOMINDER™ INDICATOR**
**ECO ON/OFF mode (if equipped)**

You can turn the ECOMINDER™ indicator (which is identified on your instrument dashboard by the "ECO" name) on/off on the instrument cluster in this mode.

If you push the TRIP button more than 1 second in the ECOMINDER™ indicator ECO ON mode, then ECO OFF is displayed in the screen and the ECO indicator turns off.

If you want to display the ECOMINDER™ indicator ECO again, press the TRIP button more than 1 second in the ECO OFF mode and then ECO ON mode is displayed in the screen.

When you press the TRIP button less than 1 second in the ECO mode, the mode is changed to odometer.

XM CAN (ENG) 4(~101).QXP 4/14/2010 10:41 AM Page 51



D150300AAM

## Warnings and indicators

All warning lights are checked by turning the ignition switch ON (do not start the engine). Any light that does not illuminate should be checked by an authorized KIA dealer.

After starting the engine, check to make sure that all warning lights are off. If any warning lights are still on, this indicates a situation that needs attention. When releasing the parking brake, the brake system warning light should go off. The fuel warning light will stay on if the fuel level is low.

D150301AXM-EU

### *ECOMINDER™ indicator (if equipped)*

**ECO**

The ECOMINDER™ indicator is a system that illuminates "ECO" when the driver has reached optimum fuel efficiency.

- The ECOMINDER™ indicator will turn the ECO light green on the instrument panel when you are driving fuel efficiently in the ECO ON mode.

  If you don't want the indicator displayed, you can turn the ECO ON mode to OFF mode by pressing the TRIP button.

  For ECO ON/OFF Mode operation, please refer to the previous page.
- Fuel efficient driving can be influenced by driving habits and road conditions.
- The indicator will not display while in P (Park), N (Neutral) or R (Reverse).

**⚠ ECOMINDER™ WARNING**

**Don't keep watching the "ECO" ECOMINDER™ indicator while driving. It may distract you while driving and cause an accident that could result in severe personal injury.**

XM CAN (ENG) 4(~101).QXP 4/14/2010 10:41 AM Page 52



D150302AUN

### *Air bag warning light*

This warning light will illuminate for approximately 6 seconds each time you turn the ignition switch to the ON position.

This light also comes on when the Supplemental Restraint System (SRS) is not working properly. If the AIR BAG warning light does not come on, or continuously remains on after operating for about 6 seconds when you turned the ignition switch to the ON position or started the engine, or if it comes on while driving, have the SRS inspected by an authorized KIA dealer.

D150303AHM-U1

### *Anti-lock brake system (ABS) warning light*

This warning light illuminates if the ignition switch is turned ON and goes off in approximately 3 seconds if the system is operating normally.

If the ABS warning light remains on, comes on while driving, or does not come on when the ignition switch is turned to the ON position, this indicates that the ABS may have malfunctioned.

If this occurs, have your vehicle checked by an authorized KIA dealer as soon as possible. The normal braking system will still be operational, but without the assistance of the anti-lock brake system.

### Electronic brake force distribution (EBD) system warning light

If these two warning lights illuminate at the same time while driving, the ABS and EBD system may have malfunctioned.

In this case, your ABS and regular brake system may not work normally. Have the vehicle checked by an authorized KIA dealer as soon as possible.

**⚠ WARNING**

**If both ABS and brake warning lights are on and stay on, your vehicle's brake system will not work normally during sudden braking. In this case, avoid high speed driving and abrupt braking. Have your vehicle checked by an authorized KIA dealer as soon as possible.**

**✻ NOTICE**

**If the ABS warning light or EBD warning light is on and stays on, the speedometer or odometer/tripmeter may not work. In this case, have your vehicle checked by an authorized KIA dealer as soon as possible.**

XM CAN (ENG) 4(~101).QXP 4/14/2010 10:41 AM Page 53



D150304AHM-EU-U1

### *Seat belt warning*

As a reminder to the driver, the seat belt warning light will blink for approximately 6 seconds each time you turn the ignition switch ON, regardless of belt fastening.

If the driver's seat belt is not fastened when the ignition switch is turned on, the seat belt warning light and the seat belt warning chime will operate for approximately 6 seconds. But if it is fastened within the 6 seconds, the warning light will blink until the 6 seconds are up The warning chime will turn off immediately.

If the driver's seat belt is disconnected after the ignition switch is turned to the ON position, the seat belt warning light will blink for approximately 6 seconds. But if it is fastened within the 6 seconds the warning light will turn off immediately. If the driver's seat belt is not fastened when the vehicle speed exceeds 10 km/h (6 mph), the seat belt warning light and chime will operate approximately 11 times with a pattern of 6 seconds on and 24 seconds off until the belt is fastened or the vehicle speed decreases below 5 km/h (3 mph).

D150305AHM

### *Turn signal indicator*

The blinking green arrows on the instrument panel show the direction indicated by the turn signals. If the arrow comes on but does not blink, blinks more rapidly than normal, or does not illuminate at all, it indicates a malfunction in the turn signal system. You should consult your dealer for repairs.

D150306AUN

### *High beam indicator*

This indicator illuminates when the headlights are on and in the high beam position or when the turn signal lever is pulled into the Flash-to-Pass position.

D150309AUN

### *Front fog light indicator (if equipped)*

This indicator illuminates when the front fog lights are on.

D150331ABH

### *Tail light indicator (if equipped)*

This indicator illuminates when the tail lights are on.

D150307AHM

### *Engine oil pressure warning light*

This warning light indicates the engine oil pressure is low.

If the warning light illuminates while driving:

1. Drive safely to the side of the road and stop.
2. With the engine off, check the engine oil level. If the level is low, add oil as required.

If the warning light remains on after adding oil or if oil is not available, call an authorized KIA dealer.

**⚠ CAUTION**

***If the engine is not stopped immediately after the engine oil pressure warning light is illuminated, severe damage could result.***

XM CAN (ENG) 4(~101).QXP 4/14/2010 10:41 AM Page 54



**⚠ CAUTION**

***If the oil pressure warning light stays on while the engine is running, serious engine damage may result. The oil pressure warning light comes on whenever there is insufficient oil pressure. In normal operation, it should come on when the ignition switch is turned on, then go out when the engine is started. If the oil pressure warning light stays on while the engine is running, there is a serious malfunction.***

***If this happens, stop the vehicle as soon as it is safe to do so, turn off the engine and check the oil level. If the oil level is low, fill the engine oil to the proper level and start the engine again. If the light stays on with the engine running, turn the engine off immediately. In any instance where the oil light stays on when the engine is running, the engine should be checked by an authorized KIA dealer before the vehicle is driven again.***

D150308AHM-EE

### *Parking brake & brake fluid warning light*

**Parking brake warning**

This light is illuminated when the parking brake is applied with the ignition switch in the START or ON position. The warning light should go off after a few seconds when the parking brake is released.

**Low brake fluid level warning**

If the warning light remains on, it may indicate that the brake fluid level in the reservoir is low.

If the warning light remains on:

1. Drive carefully to the nearest safe location and stop your vehicle.
2. With the engine stopped, check the brake fluid level immediately and add fluid as required. Then check all brake components for fluid leaks.
3. Do not drive the vehicle if leaks are found, the warning light remains on or the brakes do not operate properly. Have the vehicle towed to any authorized KIA dealer for a brake system inspection and necessary repairs.

Your vehicle is equipped with dual-diagonal braking systems. This means you still have braking on two wheels even if one of the dual systems should fail. With only one of the dual systems working, more than normal pedal travel and greater pedal pressure are required to stop the vehicle. Also, the vehicle will not stop in as short a distance with only a portion of the brake system working. If the brakes fail while you are driving, shift to a lower gear for additional engine braking and stop the vehicle as soon as it is safe to do so.

To check bulb operation, check whether the parking brake and brake fluid warning light illuminates when the ignition switch is in the ON position.

**⚠ WARNING**

**Driving the vehicle with a warning light on is dangerous. If the brake warning light remains on, have the brakes checked and repaired immediately by an authorized KIA dealer.**

XM CAN (ENG) 4(~101).QXP 4/14/2010 10:41 AM Page 55



D150312AAM

### *Shift pattern indicator*

This indicator displays which automatic transaxle shift position is selected.

D150313AHM

### *Charging system warning light*

This warning light indicates a malfunction of either the generator or electrical charging system.

If the warning light illuminates while the vehicle is in motion:

1. Drive to the nearest safe location.
2. With the engine off, check the generator drive belt for looseness or breakage.
3. If the belt is adjusted properly, a problem exists somewhere in the electrical charging system. Have an authorized KIA dealer correct the problem as soon as possible.

D150315AUN

### *Tailgate open warning light*

This warning light illuminates when the tailgate is not closed securely with the ignition switch in any position.

D150316AUN

### *Door ajar warning light*

This warning light illuminates when a door is not closed securely with the ignition switch in any position.

D150318AHM

### *Low fuel level warning light*

This warning light indicates the fuel tank is nearly empty. When it comes on, you should add fuel as soon as possible. Driving with the fuel level warning light on or with the fuel level below “E” can cause the engine to misfire and damage the catalytic converter (if equipped).

### *Low washer fluid level warning light (if equipped)*

This warning light indicates the washer fluid reservoir is nearly empty. Refill the washer fluid as soon as possible.

XM CAN (ENG) 4(~101).QXP 4/14/2010 10:41 AM Page 56



### *Immobilizer indicator (if equipped)*

**Without smart key system**

This indicator illuminates when the immobilizer key is inserted and turned to the ON position to start the engine.

At this time, you can start the engine. The indicator goes out after the engine is running.

If this indicator blinks when the ignition switch is in the ON position before starting the engine, have the system checked by an authorized KIA dealer.

D150320AHM-EU-U1

### *Malfunction Indicator Light (MIL) (check engine light) (if equipped)*

This indicator light is part of the Engine Control System which monitors various emission control system components. If this light illuminates while driving, it indicates that a potential malfunction has been detected somewhere in the emission control system.

This light will also illuminate when the ignition switch is turned to the ON position, and will go out in a few seconds after the engine is started. If it illuminates while driving, or does not illuminate when the ignition switch is turned to the ON position, take your vehicle to the nearest authorized KIA dealer and have the system checked.

Generally, your vehicle will continue to be drivable, but have the system checked by an authorized KIA dealer promptly.

**⚠ CAUTION**

***Prolonged driving with the Emission Control System Malfunction Indicator Light illuminated may cause damage to the emission control systems which could effect drivability and/or fuel economy.***

**⚠ CAUTION**

***If the Emission Control System Malfunction Indicator Light illuminates, potential catalytic converter damage is possible. This could result in loss of engine power. Have the Engine Control System inspected as soon as possible by an authorized KIA dealer.***

XM CAN (ENG) 4(~101).QXP 4/14/2010 10:41 AM Page 57



D150323AAM-EU

### *ESC (Electronic Stability Control) indicator (if equipped)*

The ESC indicator will illuminate when the ignition switch is turned ON, but should go off after approximately 3 seconds. When the ESC is on, it monitors the driving conditions and under normal driving conditions, the ESC indicator will remain off. When a slippery or low traction condition is encountered, the ESC will operate, and the ESC indicator will blink to indicate the ESC is operating.

If this indicator illuminates and stays on, the ESC may have malfunctioned. Take your vehicle to an authorized KIA dealer and have the system checked.

D150324AAM-EU

### *ESC OFF indicator (if equipped)*

The ESC OFF indicator will illuminate when the ignition switch is turned ON, but should go off after approximately 3 seconds. To switch to ESC OFF mode, press the ESC OFF button. The ESC OFF indicator will illuminate indicating the ESC is deactivated.

### *DBC (Downhill brake control) indicator (if equipped)*

The DBC indicator will illuminate when the DBC button is pressed and the system is on.

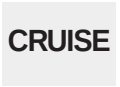
When driving down a steep hill at a speed under 35 km/h (22 mph), the DBC will operate and the DBC indicator will blink to indicate the DBC is operating.

If the red indicator illuminates, the DBC system may have malfunctioned. Take your vehicle to an authorized KIA dealer and have the system checked.

D150325AAM

### *Cruise indicators (if equipped)*

**CRUISE indicator**




The indicator illuminates when the cruise control system is enabled.

The cruise indicator in the instrument cluster is illuminated when the cruise control ON-OFF switch on the steering wheel is pushed.

The indicator goes off when the cruise control ON-OFF switch is pushed again. For more information about the use of cruise control, refer to “Cruise control system” in section 5.

**Cruise SET indicator**

The indicator illuminates when the cruise function switch (SET - or RES +) is ON.

The cruise SET indicator in the instrument cluster is illuminated when the cruise control switch (SET - or RES +) is pushed.

The cruise SET indicator does not illuminate when the cruise control switch (CANCEL) is pushed or the system is disengaged.

XM CAN (ENG) 4(~101).QXP 4/14/2010 10:41 AM Page 58



D150327AUN

### *Key reminder warning chime (if equipped)*

If the driver's door is opened while the ignition key is left in the ignition switch (ACC or LOCK position), the key reminder warning chime will sound. This is to prevent you from locking your keys in the vehicle. The chime sounds until the key is removed from the ignition switch or the driver's door is closed.

### *KEY OUT indicator (if equipped)*

When the ENGINE START/STOP button is in the ACC or ON position, if any door is open, the system checks for the smart key. If the smart key is not in the vehicle, the indicator will blink, and if all doors are closed, the chime will also sound for about 5 seconds. The indicator will go off while the vehicle is moving. Keep the smart key in the vehicle or insert it in the smart key holder.

### *4WD system warning light (if equipped)*

When the ignition switch is turned to the ON position, the 4WD indicator will illuminate and then go off in a few seconds.

If the 4WD system warning light illuminates, this indicates that there is a malfunction in the 4WD system. If this occurs, have your vehicle checked by an authorized KIA dealer as soon as possible.

### *4WD LOCK indicator (if equipped)*

The 4WD LOCK indicator light is illuminated when the 4WD LOCK button is pushed. The purpose of this 4WD LOCK mode is to increase the drive power when driving on dry road surfaces, wet pavement, snow-covered roads and/or off-road. The 4WD LOCK indicator light is turned off by pushing the button again.

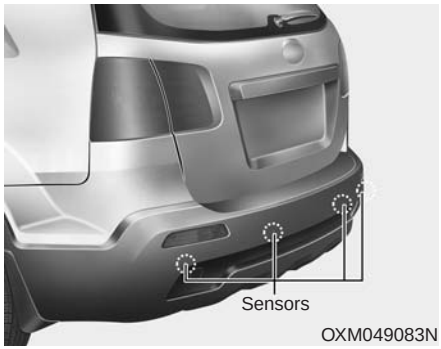
**⚠ CAUTION**

***Do not use 4WD LOCK mode on dry paved roads or highway, it can cause noise, vibration or damage of 4WD related parts.***

XM CAN (ENG) 4(~101).QXP 4/14/2010 10:42 AM Page 59



## REAR PARKING ASSIST SYSTEM (IF EQUIPPED)



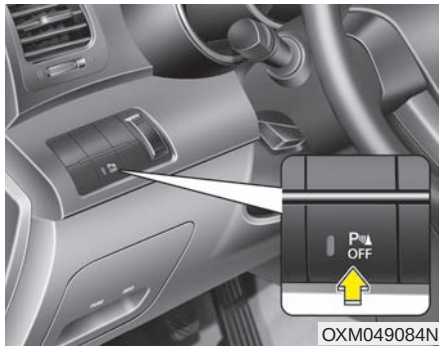
OXM049083N

The rear parking assist system assists the driver during backward movement of the vehicle by chiming if any object is sensed within a distance of 120 cm (47 in.) behind the vehicle.

This system is a supplemental system and it is not intended to nor does it replace the need for extreme care and attention of the driver. The sensing range and objects detectable by the back sensors are limited. Whenever backing-up, pay as much attention to what is behind you as you would in a vehicle without a rear parking assist system.

**⚠ WARNING**

**The rear parking assist system is a supplementary function only. The operation of the rear parking assist system can be affected by several factors (including environmental conditions). It is the responsibility of the driver to always check the area behind the vehicle before and while backing up.**



OXM049084N

### Operation of the rear parking assist system

***Operating condition***

- This system will activate when the indicator on the rear parking assist OFF button is not illuminated. If you desire to deactivate the rear parking assist system, press the rear parking assist OFF button again. (The indicator on the button will illuminate.) To turn the system on, press the button again. (The indicator on the button will go off.)

  If the vehicle is moving at a speed over 5 km/h (3 mph), the system may not be activated correctly.
- The sensing distance while the rear parking assist system is in operation is approximately 120 cm (47 in.).

XM CAN (ENG) 4(~101).QXP 4/14/2010 10:42 AM Page 60



- When more than two objects are sensed at the same time, the closest one will be recognized first.

***Types of warning sound***

- When an object is 120 cm to 81 cm (47 in. to 32 in.) from the rear bumper: Buzzer beeps intermittently.
- When an object is 80 cm to 41 cm (31 in. to 16 in.) from the rear bumper: Buzzer beeps more frequently.
- When an object is within 40 cm (15 in.) of the rear bumper:

  Buzzer sounds continuously.

## Non-operational conditions of rear parking assist system

**The rear parking assist system may not operate properly when:**

1. Moisture is frozen to the sensor. (It will operate normally when the moisture has been cleared.)
2. The sensor is covered with foreign matter, such as snow or water, or the sensor cover is blocked. (It will operate normally when the material is removed or the sensor is no longer blocked.)
3. Driving on uneven road surfaces (unpaved roads, gravel, bumps, gradient).
4. Objects generating excessive noise (vehicle horns, loud motorcycle engines, or truck air brakes) are within range of the sensor.
5. Heavy rain or water spray exists.
6. Wireless transmitters or mobile phones are within range of the sensor.
7. The sensor is covered with snow.
8. Trailer towing

**The detecting range may decrease when:**

1. The sensor is stained with foreign matter such as snow or water. (The sensing range will return to normal when removed.)
2. Outside air temperature is extremely hot or cold.

**The following objects may not be recognized by the sensor:**

1. Sharp or slim objects such as ropes, chains or small poles.
2. Objects which tend to absorb the sensor frequency such as clothes, spongy material or snow.
3. Undetectable objects smaller than 1 m (40 in.) in height and narrower than 14 cm (6 in.) in diameter.

XM CAN (ENG) 4(~101).QXP 4/14/2010 10:42 AM Page 61



### Rear parking assist system precautions

- The rear parking assist system may not sound consistently depending on the speed and shapes of the objects detected.
- The rear parking assist system may malfunction if the vehicle bumper height or sensor installation has been modified or damaged. Any non-factory installed equipment or accessories may also interfere with the sensor performance.
- The sensor may not recognize objects less than 40 cm (15 in.) from the sensor, or it may sense an incorrect distance. Use caution.
- When the sensor is frozen or stained with snow, dirt, or water, the sensor may be inoperative until the stains are removed using a soft cloth.
- Do not push, scratch or strike the sensor. Sensor damage could occur.

### ✻ NOTICE

**This system can only sense objects within the range and location of the sensors; It can not detect objects in other areas where sensors are not installed. Also, small or slim objects, such as poles or objects located between sensors may not be detected by the sensors.**
**Always visually check behind the vehicle when backing up.**
**Be sure to inform any drivers of the vehicle that may be unfamiliar with the system regarding the systems capabilities and limitations.**

### ⚠ WARNING

**Pay close attention when the vehicle is driven close to objects on the road, particularly pedestrians, and especially children. Be aware that some objects may not be detected by the sensors, due to the object's distance, size or material, all of which can limit the effectiveness of the sensor. Always perform a visual inspection to make sure the vehicle is clear of all obstructions before moving the vehicle in any direction.**

### Self-diagnosis

If you don't hear an audible warning sound or if the buzzer sounds intermittently when shifting the gear to the R (Reverse) position, this may indicate a malfunction in the rear parking assist system. If this occurs, have your vehicle checked by an authorized KIA dealer as soon as possible.

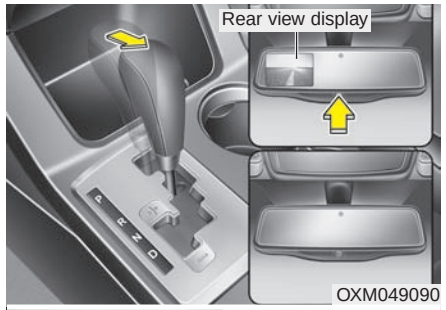
### ⚠ WARNING

**Your new vehicle warranty does not cover any accidents or damage to the vehicle or injuries to its occupants due to a rear parking assist system malfunction. Always drive safely and cautiously.**

XM CAN (ENG) 4(~101).QXP 4/14/2010 10:42 AM Page 62



## REARVIEW CAMERA (IF EQUIPPED)



D330000AHM-EE

The rearview camera will activate when the back-up light is ON with the ignition switch ON and the shift lever in the R (Reverse) position.

This system is a supplemental system that shows behind the vehicle through the rearview display mirror while backing-up unless equipped with a navigation system, then will display on the screen.

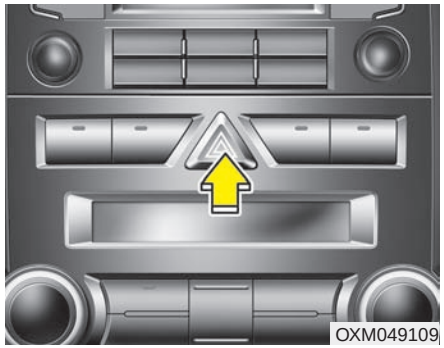
The rearview camera may be turned off by pressing the ON/OFF button when the rearview camera is activated.

To turn the camera on again, press the ON/OFF button again when the ignition switch is on and the shift lever in R (Reverse). Also, the camera will turn on automatically whenever the ignition switch is turned off and on again.

**⚠ WARNING**

- **This system is a supplementary function only. It is the responsibility of the driver to always check the inside/outside rearview mirrors and the area behind the vehicle before and while backing up because there is a dead zone that can't be seen by the camera.**
- **Always keep the camera lens clean. If lens is covered with foreign matter, the camera may not operate normally.**

## HAZARD WARNING FLASHER




D180000AHM

The hazard warning flasher should be used whenever you find it necessary to stop the vehicle in a hazardous location. When you must make such an emergency stop, always pull off the road as far as possible.

The hazard warning lights are turned on by pushing in the hazard switch. Both turn signal lights will blink. The hazard warning lights will operate even though the key is not in the ignition switch.

To turn the hazard warning lights off, push the switch again.

XM CAN (ENG) 4(~101).QXP 4/14/2010 10:42 AM Page 63



# LIGHTING

D190100APB

## Battery saver function

- The purpose of this feature is to prevent the battery from being discharged if the lights are left in the ON position. The system automatically shuts off the parking lights 30 seconds after the ignition key is removed and the driver's door is opened and closed.
- With this feature, the parking lights will turn off automatically if the driver parks on the side of the road at night and opens the driver's side door.

  If necessary, to keep the parking lights on when the ignition key is removed, perform the following:

  1) Open the driver-side door.
  2) Turn the parking lights OFF and ON again using the light switch on the steering column.

D190200AHM-EU

## Headlight escort function (if equipped)

The headlights and taillights remain on for approximately 20 minutes after the ignition key is removed or turned to the ACC or LOCK position. However, if the driver's door is opened and closed, the headlights and taillights are turned off after 30 seconds.

The headlights and taillights can be turned off by pressing the lock button on the transmitter or turning off the light switch from the headlight or Auto light position.

OXM049110

D190400AUN-C1

## Lighting control

The light switch has a Headlight and a Parking light position.

To operate the lights, turn the knob at the end of the control lever to one of the following positions:

(1) OFF position
(2) Parking light position
(3) Headlight position
(4) Auto light position (if equipped)

XM CAN (ENG) 4(~101).QXP 4/14/2010 10:42 AM Page 64

OXM049250N

D190401AHM

***Parking light position ( )***

When the light switch is in the parking light position (1st position), the tail, license and instrument panel lights will turn ON.

OXM049251N

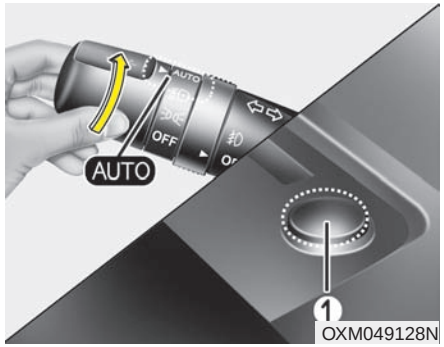
D190402AHM

***Headlight position ( )***

When the light switch is in the headlight position (2nd position), the head, tail, license and instrument panel lights will turn ON.

**✻ NOTICE**

**The ignition switch must be in the ON position to turn on the headlights.**




OXM049128N

***Auto light position (if equipped)***

When the light switch is in the AUTO light position, the taillights and headlights will turn ON or OFF automatically depending on the amount of light outside the vehicle.

XM CAN (ENG) 4(~101).QXP 4/14/2010 10:42 AM Page 65



**⚠ CAUTION**

- ***Never place anything over the sensor (1) located on the instrument panel. This will ensure better auto-light system control.***
- ***Don't clean the sensor using a window cleaner. The cleaner may leave a light film which could interfere with sensor operation.***
- ***If your vehicle has window tint or other types of metallic coating on the front windshield, the Auto light system may not work properly.***

OAM049044

D190500AUN

## High beam operation

To turn on the high beam headlights, push the lever away from you. Pull it back for low beams.

The high beam indicator will light when the headlight high beams are switched on.

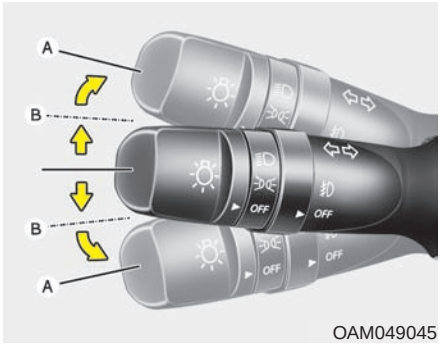
To prevent the battery from being discharged, do not leave the lights on for a prolonged time while the engine is not running.

OAM049043

To flash the headlights, pull the lever towards you. It will return to the normal (low beam) position when released. The headlight switch does not need to be on to use this flashing feature.

XM CAN (ENG) 4(~101).QXP 4/14/2010 10:42 AM Page 66






OAM049045

D190600AUN-U1

## Turn signals and lane change signals

The ignition switch must be on for the turn signals to function. To turn on the turn signals, move the lever up or down (A). The green arrow indicators on the instrument panel indicate which turn signal is operating. They will self-cancel after a turn is completed. If the indicator continues to flash after a turn, manually return the lever to the OFF position.

To signal a lane change, move the turn signal lever slightly and hold it in position (B). The lever will return to the OFF position when released.

If an indicator stays on and does not flash or if it flashes abnormally, one of the turn signal bulbs may be burned out and will require replacement.

### *One-touch lane change function (if equipped)*

To activate an one-touch lane change function, move the turn signal lever slightly for less than 1.5 second and then release it. The lane change signals will blink 3 times.

### ✻ NOTICE

**If an indicator flash is abnormally quick or slow, a bulb may be burned out or have a poor electrical connection in the circuit.**

OAM049046N

D190700AAM-EU

## Front fog light (if equipped)

Fog lights are used to provide improved visibility when visibility is poor due to fog, rain or snow, etc. The fog lights will turn on when the fog light switch (1) is turned to the on position after the headlight is turned on.

To turn off the fog lights, turn the fog light switch (1) to the OFF position.

### ⚠ CAUTION

***When in operation, the fog lights consume large amounts of vehicle electrical power. Only use the fog lights when visibility is poor.***

XM CAN (ENG) 4(~101).QXP 4/14/2010 10:42 AM Page 67



D190900AUN-EU

## Daytime running light

Daytime Running Lights (DRL) can make it easier for others to see the front of your vehicle during the day. DRL can be helpful in many different driving conditions, and it is especially helpful after dawn and before sunset.

The DRL system will make the daytime running lights turn OFF when:

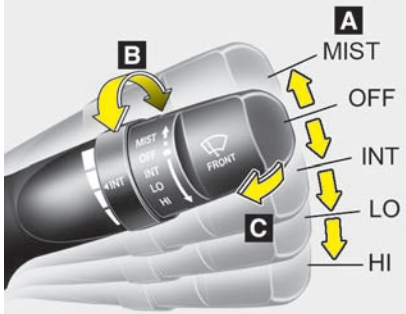
1. The headlight switch is ON.
2. The parking brake is applied.
3. Engine stops.

XM CAN (ENG) 4(~101).QXP 4/14/2010 10:42 AM Page 68



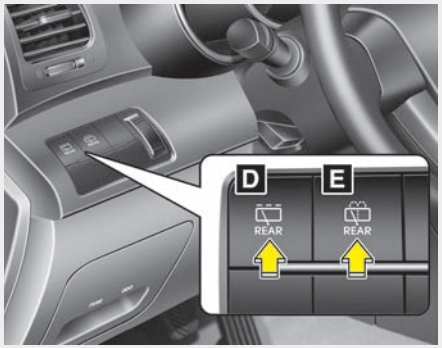
## WIPERS AND WASHERS

### Windshield wiper/washer




D200000AAM-EE

### Rear window wiper/washer (if equipped)




OAM049100L/OXM049237N

**A : Wiper speed control**
- MIST – Single wipe
- OFF – Off
- INT – Intermittent wipe
- LO – Low wiper speed
- HI – High wiper speed

**B : Intermittent wipe time adjustment**

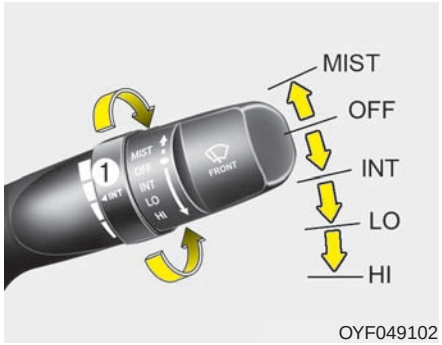
**C : Wash with brief wipes (front)**

**D : Rear wiper control**
- ON – Continuous wipe
- OFF – Off

**E : Wash with brief wipes (rear)**

XM CAN (ENG) 4(~101).QXP 4/14/2010 10:43 AM Page 69






OYF049102

D200100AAM

### Front windshield wipers

Operates as follows when the ignition switch is turned ON.

MIST : For a single wiping cycle, push the lever upward and release it with the lever in the OFF position. The wipers will operate continuously if the lever is pushed upward and held.

OFF : Wiper is not in operation

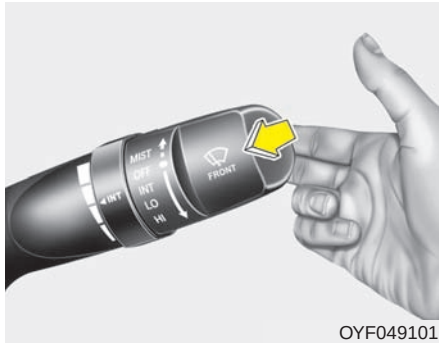
INT : Wiper operates intermittently at the same wiping intervals. Use this mode in light rain or mist. To vary the speed setting, turn the speed control knob (1).

LO : Normal wiper speed

HI : Fast wiper speed

### ✻ NOTICE

**If there is heavy accumulation of snow or ice on the windshield, defrost the windshield for about 10 minutes, or until the snow and/or ice is removed before using the windshield wipers to ensure proper operation.**




OYF049101

D200200ASA

### Front windshield washers

In the OFF position, pull the lever gently toward you to spray washer fluid on the windshield and to run the wipers 1-3 cycles.

Use this function when the windshield is dirty.

The spray and wiper operation will continue until you release the lever.

If the washer does not work, check the washer fluid level. If the fluid level is not sufficient, you will need to add appropriate non-abrasive windshield washer fluid to the washer reservoir.

The reservoir filler neck is located in the front of the engine compartment on the passenger side.

XM CAN (ENG) 4(~101).QXP 4/14/2010 10:43 AM Page 70



**⚠ CAUTION**

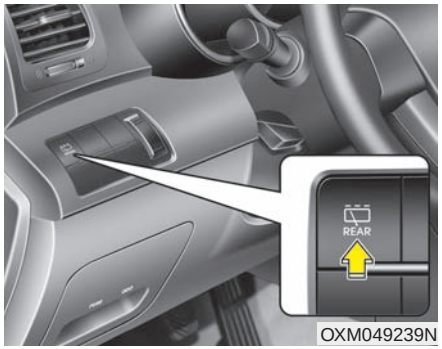
***To prevent possible damage to the washer pump, do not operate the washer when the fluid reservoir is empty.***

**⚠ WARNING**

**Do not use the washer in freezing temperatures without first warming the windshield with the defrosters; the washer solution could freeze on the windshield and obscure your vision.**

**⚠ CAUTION**

- ***To prevent possible damage to the wipers or windshield, do not operate the wipers when the windshield is dry.***
- ***To prevent damage to the wiper blades, do not use gasoline, kerosene, paint thinner, or other solvents on or near them.***
- ***To prevent damage to the wiper arms and other components, do not attempt to move the wipers manually.***




OXM049239N

D200300AAM

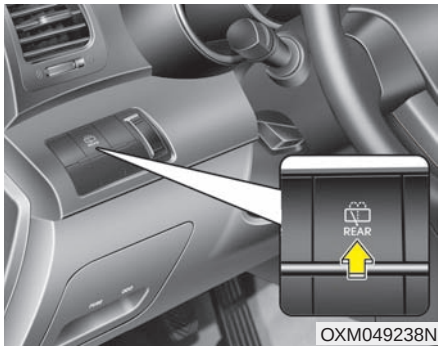
### Rear window wiper and washer switch (if equipped)

Press the switch to operate the rear wiper.

Press the switch again to turn off the rear wiper operation.

ON - Normal wiper operation

OFF - Wiper is not in operation




OXM049238N

Press the button to spray rear washer fluid and to run the rear wipers.

The spray and wiper operation will continue until you press the button.

XM CAN (ENG) 4(~101).QXP 4/14/2010 10:43 AM Page 71



## INTERIOR LIGHTS

D210000AEN

**⚠ CAUTION**

***Do not use the interior lights for extended periods when the engine is not running.***

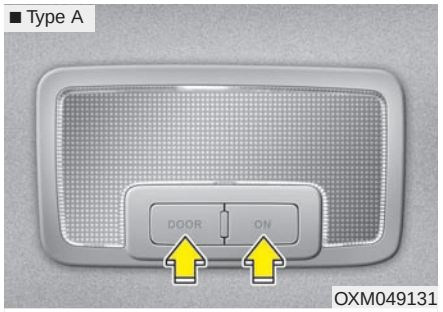
***It may cause battery discharge.***

### Automatic turn off function (if equipped)

The interior lights automatically turn off approximately 20 minutes after the ignition switch is turned off, if the lights are in the ON position.

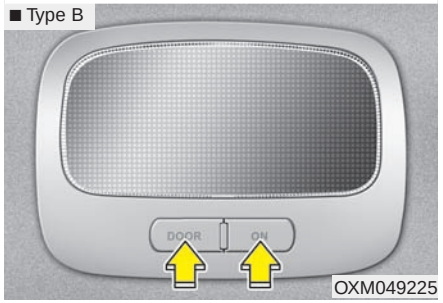
If your vehicle is equipped with the theft alarm system, the interior lights automatically turns off approximately 3 seconds after the system is armed stage.

■ Type A




OXM049131

■ Type B




OXM049225

D210200AXM-EU

### Room lamp

The light will turn on and off as below if the switch is pressed. The light will turn off if the button is pressed again.

- ON : The light stays on at all times.
- DOOR : The light comes on when any door (or tailgate) is opened regardless of the ignition switch position. When doors are unlocked by the transmitter or the key is removed from the ignition switch, the light comes on for approximately 30 seconds as long as any door is not opened. The light goes out gradually after approximately 30 seconds if the door is closed.

  However, if the ignition switch is ON or all doors are locked, the light will turn off immediately. If a door is opened with the ignition switch in the ACC or LOCK position, the light stays on for about 20 minutes. However, if a door is opened with the ignition switch in the ON position, the light stays on continuously.

XM CAN (ENG) 4(~101).QXP 4/14/2010 10:43 AM Page 72

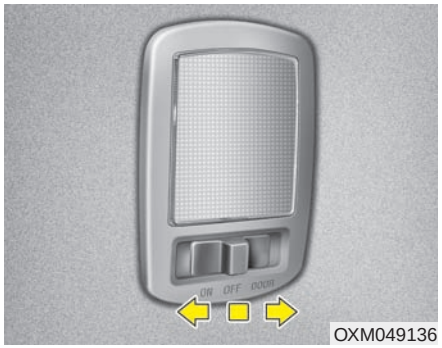
OXM049130

### Map lamp

- Push the lens to turn the map lamp on or off. This light produces a spot beam for convenient use as a map lamp at night or as a personal lamp for the driver and the front passenger.
- The light comes on when any door is opened or the ignition switch is turned OFF. (if equipped)

  The light goes out gradually after approximately 30 seconds if the door is closed or the ignition switch is turned OFF.

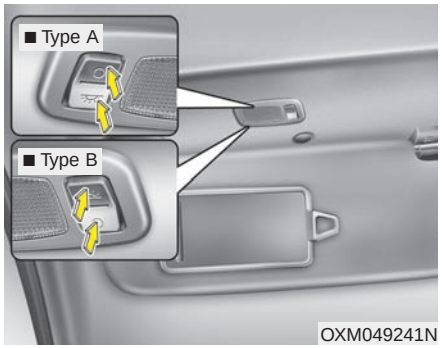
  However, if all doors are locked or the ignition switch is turned ON, the light will turn off immediately.



OXM049136

### Luggage lamp (if equipped)

- DOOR : The light comes on when the tailgate is opened.
- OFF : The light stays off at all times.
- ON : The light stays on at all times.



OXM049241N

### Vanity mirror lamp (if equipped)

- : The lamp will turn on if this button is pressed.
- ◯ : The lamp will turn off if this button is pressed.

### ✻ NOTICE

**Turn off the lamp before return the sunvisor to its original position.**

XM CAN (ENG) 4(~101).QXP 4/14/2010 10:43 AM Page 73



## DEFROSTER

220000AUN

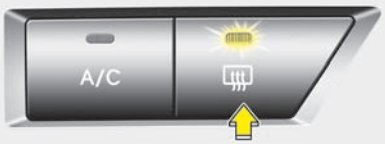
### ⚠ CAUTION

***To prevent damage to the conductors bonded to the inside surface of the rear window, never use sharp instruments or window cleaners containing abrasives to clean the window.***

### ✻ NOTICE

**If you want to defrost and defog the front windshield, refer to "Windshield defrosting and defogging" in this section.**

■ Type A

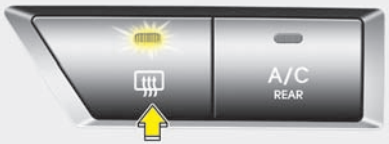



OXM049137

■ Type B

OXM049138

■ Type C




OXM049210

### Rear window defroster

The defroster heats the window to remove frost, fog and thin ice from the rear window, while the engine is running.

To activate the rear window defroster, press the rear window defroster button located in the center facia switch panel. The indicator on the rear window defroster button illuminates when the defroster is ON.

If there is heavy accumulation of snow on the rear window, brush it off before operating the rear defroster.

The rear window defroster automatically turns off after approximately 20 minutes or when the ignition switch is turned off. To turn off the defroster, press the rear window defroster button again.

#### *Outside rearview mirror defroster (if equipped)*

If your vehicle is equipped with the outside rearview mirror defrosters, they will operate at the same time you turn on the rear window defroster.

#### *Wiper deicer (if equipped)*

If your vehicle is equipped with the wiper deicer, it will operate at the same time you turn on the rear window defroster.

## MANUAL CLIMATE CONTROL SYSTEM (IF EQUIPPED)

■ **Front climate control**

1. Fan speed control knob
2. Mode selection knob
3. Temperature control knob
4. Air conditioning button
5. Air intake control button
6. 3rd row air conditioning ON/OFF button* (controlled from the front)
7. 3rd row air conditioning fan speed control switch*
8. Ticket holder*

* if equipped

❉ The actual control panel in the vehicle may differ from the illustration.

■ **3rd row air conditioning control (if equipped)**

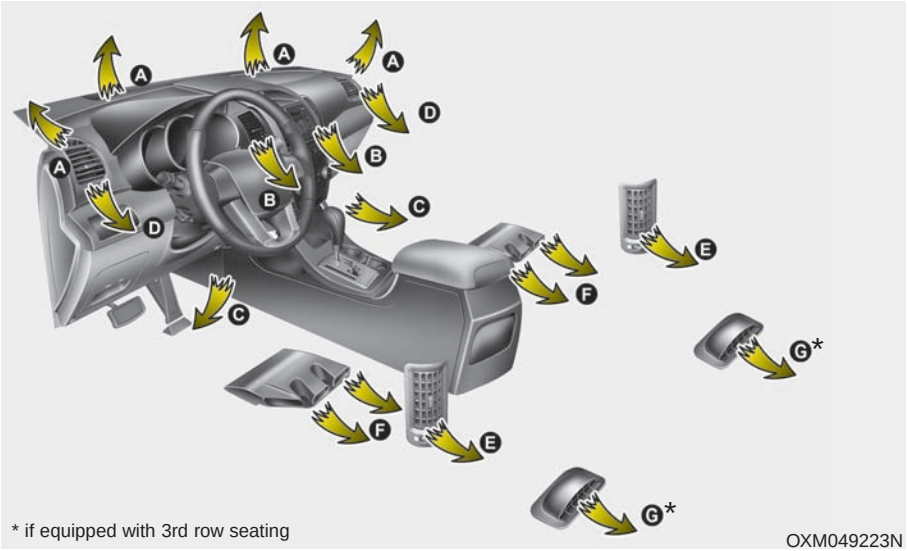
OXM049140/OXM049141

XM CAN (ENG) 4(~101).QXP 4/14/2010 10:44 AM Page 75



## Heating and air conditioning

1. Start the engine.
2. Set the mode to the desired position.
   For improving the effectiveness of heating and cooling;
   - Heating:
   - Cooling:
3. Set the temperature control to the desired position.
4. Set the air intake control to the outside (fresh) air position (if equipped).
5. Set the fan speed control to the desired speed.
6. If air conditioning is desired, turn the air conditioning system (if equipped) on.




* if equipped with 3rd row seating

OXM049223N

**❋ 2nd row outlet vents (E)**

- The air flow of the 2nd row outlet vents is controlled by the front climate control system and delivered through the inside air duct of the front doors. If the door is open or not closed completely, the air flow of the 2nd row outlet vent is not delivered properly. Make sure the front doors are closed completely.
- The air flow of the 2nd row outlet vents may be weaker than the instrument panel vents because of the long air duct in the front doors.
- Close the air vents in cold weather. The air flow of the 2nd row outlet vents may cool a little during heating operation. (Use the 2nd row outlet vents during cooling operation.)

XM CAN (ENG) 4(~101).QXP 4/14/2010 10:44 AM Page 76

OXM049142

***Mode selection***

The mode selection knob controls the direction of the air flow through the ventilation system.

Air can be directed to the floor, dashboard outlets, or windshield. Six symbols are used to represent MAX A/C, Face, Bi-Level, Floor, Floor-Defrost and Defrost air position.

The MAX A/C mode is used to cool the inside of the vehicle faster.

**MAX A/C-Level (B, D, E)**

Air flow is directed toward the upper body and face.

In this mode, the air conditioning and the recirculated air position will be selected automatically.

**Face-Level (B, D, E)**

Air flow is directed toward the upper body and face. Additionally, each outlet can be controlled to direct the air discharged from the outlet.

**Bi-Level (B, D, E, C, F, G*)**

Air flow is directed towards the face and the floor.

**Floor-Level (C, F, A, D, G*)**

Most of the air flow is directed to the floor, with a small amount of the air being directed to the windshield and side window defrosters.

**Floor/Defrost-Level (A, C, D, F, G*)**

Most of the air flow is directed to the floor and the windshield with a small amount directed to the side window defrosters.

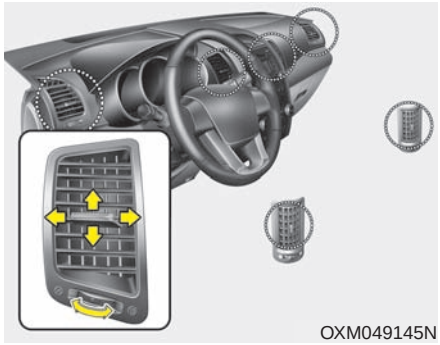
**Defrost-Level (A, D)**

Most of the air flow is directed to the windshield with a small amount of air directed to the side window defrosters.

* if equipped with 3rd row seating

XM CAN (ENG) 4(~101).QXP 4/14/2010 10:44 AM Page 77





OXM049145N

**Instrument panel vents**

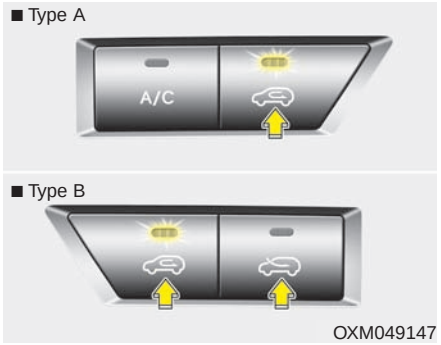
The outlet vents can be opened or closed separately using the thumbwheel (if equipped).

Also, you can adjust the direction of air delivery from these vents using the vent control lever as shown.

OXM049146

***Temperature control***

The temperature control knob allows you to control the temperature of the air flowing from the ventilation system. To change the air temperature in the passenger compartment, turn the knob to the right position for warm and hot air or left position for cooler air.




OXM049147

***Air intake control***

The air intake control is used to select the outside (fresh) air position or recirculated air position.

To change the air intake control position, press the control button.

XM CAN (ENG) 4(~101).QXP 4/14/2010 10:45 AM Page 78

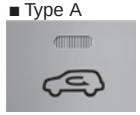


**Recirculated air position**

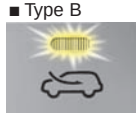
With the recirculated air position selected, air from the passenger compartment will be drawn through the heating system and heated or cooled according to the function selected.

**Outside (fresh) air position**

■ Type A



■ Type B



With the outside (fresh) air position selected, air enters the vehicle from outside and is heated or cooled according to the function selected.

## ✻ NOTICE

**Prolonged operation of the heater in the recirculated air position (without air conditioning selected) may cause fogging of the windshield and side windows and the air within the passenger compartment may become stale.**
**In addition, prolonged use of the air conditioning with the recirculated air position selected will result in excessively dry air in the passenger compartment.**

## ⚠ WARNING

- **Continue using the climate control system in the recirculated air position may allow humidity to increase inside the vehicle which may fog the glass and obscure visibility.**
- **Do not sleep in a vehicle with the air conditioning or heating system on. It may cause serious harm or death due to a drop in the oxygen level and/or body temperature.**
- **Continue using the climate control system in the recirculated air position can cause drowsiness or sleepiness, and loss of vehicle control. Set the air intake control to the outside (fresh) air position as much as possible while driving.**

OXM049148

***Fan speed control***

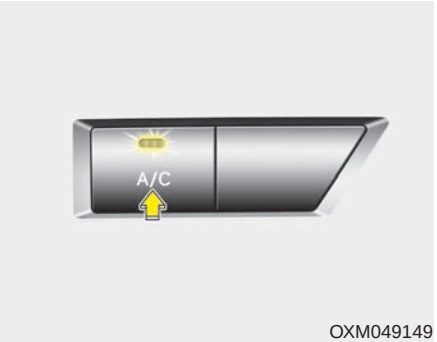
The ignition switch must be in the ON position for fan operation.

The fan speed control knob allows you to control the fan speed of the air flowing from the ventilation system. To change the fan speed, turn the knob to the right for higher speed or left for lower speed.

Setting the fan speed control knob to the “0” position turns off the fan.

XM CAN (ENG) 4(~101).QXP 4/14/2010 10:45 AM Page 79

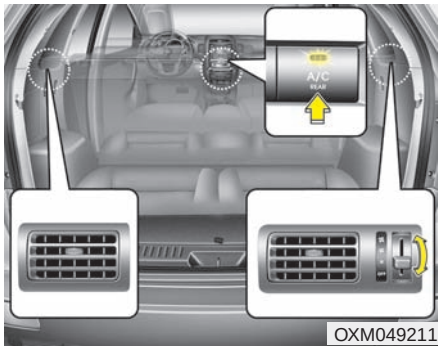




OXM049149

***Air conditioning***

Press the A/C button to turn the air conditioning system on (indicator light will illuminate). Press the button again to turn the air conditioning system off.



OXM049211

## 3rd row air conditioning (if equipped)

To turn on the 3rd row air conditioning control system

1. Press the 3rd row air conditioning ON/OFF button located on the front climate control panel and set the fan speed to the desired speed with the 3rd row fan speed switch. (indicator light on the ON/OFF button (A/C REAR) will illuminate).
2. To turn off the 3rd row air conditioning control system, press the 3rd row air conditioning ON/OFF button (A/C REAR) once more located on the front climate control panel or set the fan speed to the “OFF” position with the 3rd row fan speed switch (indicator light on the ON/OFF button (A/C REAR) is not illuminated).

XM CAN (ENG) 4(~101).QXP 4/14/2010 10:45 AM Page 80



## System operation

### *Ventilation*

1. Set the mode to the position.
2. Set the air intake control to the outside (fresh) air position.
3. Set the temperature control to the desired position.
4. Set the fan speed control to the desired speed.

### *Heating*

1. Set the mode to the position.
2. Set the air intake control to the outside (fresh) air position.
3. Set the temperature control to the desired position.
4. Set the fan speed control to the desired speed.
5. If dehumidified heating is desired, turn the air conditioning system (if equipped) on.

- If the windshield fogs up, set the mode to the or position.

**Operation Tips**

- To keep dust or unpleasant fumes from entering the vehicle through the ventilation system, temporarily set the air intake control to the recirculated air position. Be sure to return the control to the fresh air position when the irritation has passed to keep fresh air in the vehicle. This will help keep the driver alert and comfortable.
- Air for the heating/cooling system is drawn in through the grilles just ahead of the windshield. Care should be taken that these are not blocked by leaves, snow, ice or other obstructions.
- To prevent interior fog on the windshield, set the air intake control to the fresh air position and fan speed to the desired position, turn on the air conditioning system, and adjust the temperature control to desired temperature.

### *Air conditioning*

All KIA Air Conditioning Systems are filled with environmentally friendly R-134a refrigerant which does not damage the ozone layer.

1. Start the engine. Press the air conditioning button.
2. Set the mode to the position.
3. Set the air intake control to the outside air or recirculated air position.
4. Adjust the fan speed control and temperature control to maintain maximum comfort.

- When maximum cooling is desired, set the temperature control to the extreme left position, set the mode control to the MAX A/C position, then set the fan speed control to the highest speed.

XM CAN (ENG) 4(~101).QXP 4/14/2010 10:45 AM Page 81



### ✻ NOTICE

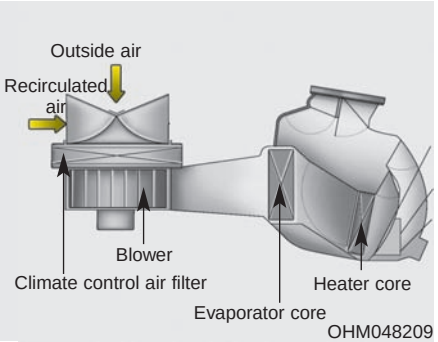
- **When using the air conditioning system, monitor the temperature gauge closely while driving up hills or in heavy traffic when outside temperatures are high. Air conditioning system operation may cause engine overheating. Continue to use the blower fan but turn the air conditioning system off if the temperature gauge indicates engine overheating.**
- **When opening the windows in humid weather air conditioning may create water droplets inside the vehicle. Since excessive water droplets may cause damage to electrical equipment, air conditioning should only be used with the windows closed.**

**Air conditioning system operation tips**

- If the vehicle has been parked in direct sunlight during hot weather, open the windows for a short time to let the hot air inside the vehicle escape.
- To help reduce moisture inside of the windows on rainy or humid days, decrease the humidity inside the vehicle by operating the air conditioning system.
- During air conditioning system operation, you may occasionally notice a slight change in engine speed as the air conditioning compressor cycles. This is a normal system operation characteristic.
- Use the air conditioning system every month only for a few minutes to ensure maximum system performance.
- When using the air conditioning system, you may notice clear water dripping (or even puddling) on the ground under the passenger side of the vehicle. This is a normal system operation characteristic.
- Operating the air conditioning system in the recirculated air position provides maximum cooling, however, continual operation in this mode may cause the air inside the vehicle to become stale.
- During cooling operation, you may occasionally notice a misty air flow because of rapid cooling and humid air intake. This is a normal system operation characteristic.

XM CAN (ENG) 4(~101).QXP 4/14/2010 10:45 AM Page 82






### Climate control air filter (if equipped)

The climate control air filter installed behind the glove box filters the dust or other pollutants that come into the vehicle from the outside through the heating and air conditioning system. If dust or other pollutants accumulate in the filter over a period of time, the air flow from the air vents may decrease, resulting in moisture accumulation on the inside of the windshield even when the outside (fresh) air position is selected. If this happens, inspect and replace the climate control air filter. (Refer to “climate control air filter” in section 7.)

If you’re unsure about replacing procedure, have it done by an authorized KIA dealer.

### ✻ NOTICE

- **Replace the filter according to the Maintenance Schedule.**
  **If the vehicle is being driven in severe conditions such as dusty or rough roads, more frequent air conditioner filter inspections and changes are required.**
- **When the air flow rate suddenly decreases, the system should be checked at an authorized KIA dealer.**

### Checking the amount of air conditioner refrigerant and compressor lubricant

When the amount of refrigerant is low, the performance of the air conditioning is reduced. Overfilling also has a negative impact on the air conditioning system.

Therefore, if abnormal operation is found, have the system inspected by an authorized KIA dealer.

### ✻ NOTICE

**It is important that the correct type and amount of oil and refrigerant is used. Otherwise, damage to the compressor and abnormal system operation may occur.**

### ⚠ WARNING

**The air conditioning system should be serviced by an authorized KIA dealer. Improper service may cause serious injury to the person performing the service.**

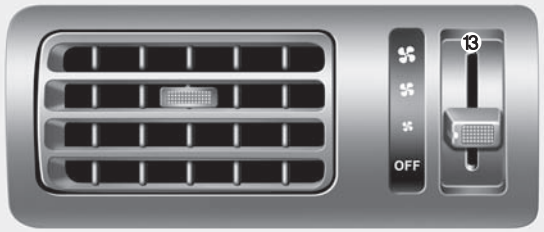
XM CAN (ENG) 4(~101).QXP 4/14/2010 10:46 AM Page 83



## AUTOMATIC CLIMATE CONTROL SYSTEM (IF EQUIPPED)

■ **Front climate control**

■ **3rd row air conditioning control (if equipped)**




1. A/C display
2. Driver's temperature control knob
3. AUTO (automatic control) button
4. Front blower OFF button
5. Front fan speed control switch
6. Mode selection button
7. Dual temperature control selection button
8. Passenger's temperature control knob
9. Air conditioning button*
10. 3rd row air conditioning ON/OFF button* (controlled from the front) or outside (fresh) air position button*
11. Air intake control button* or recirculated air position button*
12. Front windshield defroster button
13. 3rd row air conditioning fan speed control switch*

* if equipped

❈ The actual control panel in the vehicle may differ from the illustration.

OXM049151L/OXM049141

XM CAN (ENG) 4(~101).QXP 4/14/2010 10:46 AM Page 84

OXM049152

### Automatic heating and air conditioning

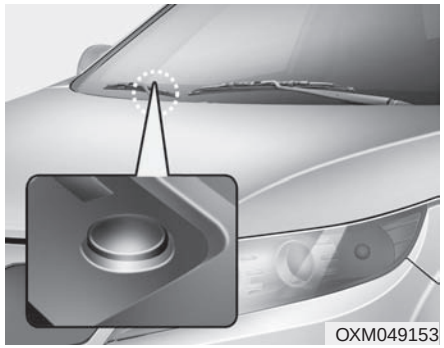
The automatic climate control system is controlled by simply setting the desired temperature.

The Full Automatic Temperature Control (FATC) system automatically controls the heating and cooling system as follows;

1. Press the AUTO button. The modes, fan speeds, air intake and air-conditioning will be controlled automatically by setting the temperature.
2. Set the temperature switch to the desired temperature.
   If the temperature is set to the lowest setting (Lo), the air conditioning system will operate continuously.
3. To turn the automatic operation off, select any button or switch of the following:
   - Mode selection button
   - Air conditioning button
   - Front windshield defroster button
   - Air intake control button
   - Fan speed control switch

   The selected function will be controlled manually while other functions operate automatically.

For your convenience and to improve the effectiveness of the climate control, use the AUTO button and set the temperature to 23°C/73°F.


OXM049153

### ✻ NOTICE

**Never place anything over the sensor located on the instrument panel to ensure better control of the heating and cooling system.**

XM CAN (ENG) 4(~101).QXP 4/14/2010 10:46 AM Page 85

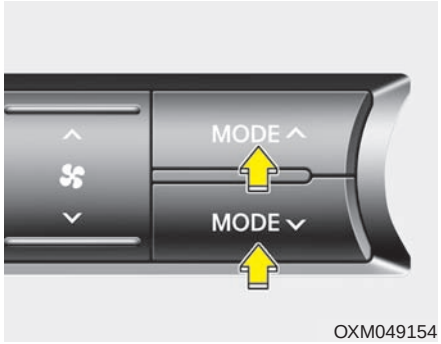


## Manual heating and air conditioning

The heating and cooling system can be controlled manually by pressing buttons or turning knob(s) other than the AUTO button. In this case, the system works sequentially according to the order of buttons or knob(s) selected.

1. Start the engine.
2. Set the mode to the desired position.
   For improving the effectiveness of heating and cooling;
   - Heating:
   - Cooling:
3. Set the temperature control to the desired position.
4. Set the air intake control to the outside (fresh) air position.
5. Set the fan speed control to the desired speed.
6. If air conditioning is desired, turn the air conditioning system on.

Press the AUTO button in order to convert to full automatic control of the system.



OXM049154

***Mode selection***

The mode selection button controls the direction of the air flow through the ventilation system.

The air flow outlet port is converted as follows:

Refer to the illustration in the “Manual climate control system”.

**Face-Level**

Air flow is directed toward the upper body and face. Additionally, each outlet can be controlled to direct the air discharged from the outlet.

**Bi-Level**

Air flow is directed towards the face and the floor.

**Floor-Level**

Most of the air flow is directed to the floor, with a small amount of the air being directed to the windshield and side window defrosters.

**Floor/Defrost-Level**

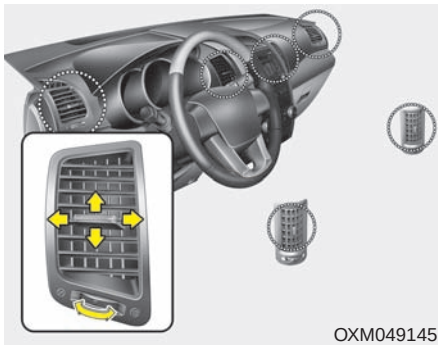
Most of the air flow is directed to the floor and the windshield with a small amount directed to the side window defrosters.

XM CAN (ENG) 4(~101).QXP 4/14/2010 10:46 AM Page 86

OXM049155

**Defrost-Level**

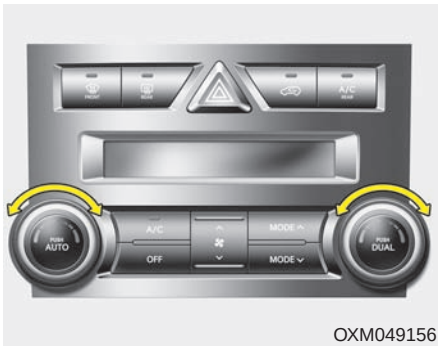
Most of the air flow is directed to the windshield with a small amount of air directed to the side window defrosters.


OXM049145

**Instrument panel vents**

The outlet vents can be opened or closed separately using the thumbwheel (if equipped).

Also, you can adjust the direction of air delivery from these vents using the vent control lever as shown.



OXM049156

***Temperature control***

The temperature will increase to the maximum (HI) by turning the knob to the extreme right.

The temperature will decrease to the minimum (Lo) by turning the knob to the extreme left.

When turning the knob, the temperature will increase or decrease by 0.5°C/1°F. When set to the lowest temperature setting, the air conditioning will operate continuously.

XM CAN (ENG) 4(~101).QXP 4/14/2010 10:47 AM Page 87

OXM049157

**Adjusting the driver and passenger side temperature individually**

1. Press the DUAL button to operate the driver and passenger side temperature individually. Also, if the passenger side temperature control switch is operated, it will automatically change to the DUAL mode as well.
2. Operate the left temperature control to adjust the driver side temperature. Operate the right temperature control to adjust the passenger side temperature.

When the driver side temperature is set to the highest (HI) or lowest (Lo) temperature setting, the DUAL mode is deactivated for maximum heating or cooling.

**Adjusting the driver and passenger side temperature equally**

1. Press the DUAL button again to deactivate DUAL mode. The passenger side temperature will be set to the same temperature as the driver side.
2. Operate the driver side temperature control switch. The driver and passenger side temperature will be adjusted equally.

**Temperature conversion**

You can switch the temperature mode from Centigrade to Fahrenheit as follows:

While pressing the MODE button, press the DUAL button for 3 seconds or more.

The display will change from Centigrade to Fahrenheit, or from Fahrenheit to Centigrade.

If the battery has been discharged or disconnected, the temperature mode display will reset to Centigrade.

OXM049158

## Outside thermometer

The current outside temperature is displayed in 1°C (1°F) increments. The temperature range is between -40°C ~ 60°C (-40°F ~ 140°F).

- The outside temperature on the display may not change immediately like a general thermometer to prevent the driver from being inattentive.

XM CAN (ENG) 4(~101).QXP 4/14/2010 10:47 AM Page 88



■ Type A

■ Type B

OXM049159

***Air intake control***

This is used to select the outside (fresh) air position or recirculated air position.

To change the air intake control position, push the control button.

**Recirculated air position**

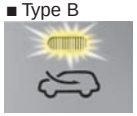
With the recirculated air position selected, air from the passenger compartment will be drawn through the heating system and heated or cooled according to the function selected.

**Outside (fresh) air position**

■ Type A

With the outside (fresh) air position selected, air enters the vehicle from outside and is heated or cooled according to the function selected.

■ Type B



**✻ NOTICE**

**Prolonged operation of the heater in the recirculated air position (without air conditioning selected) may cause fogging of the windshield and side windows and the air within the passenger compartment may become stale.**

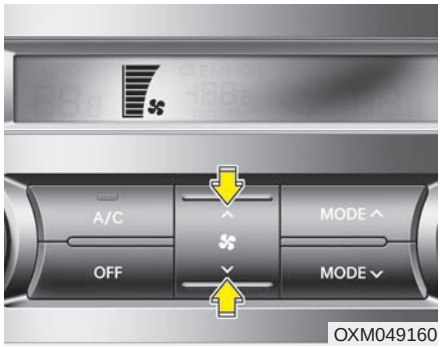
**In addition, prolonged use of the air conditioning with the recirculated air position selected will result in excessively dry air in the passenger compartment.**

XM CAN (ENG) 4(~101).QXP 4/14/2010 10:47 AM Page 89



**⚠ WARNING**

- **Continue using the climate control system in the recirculated air position may allow humidity to increase inside the vehicle which may fog the glass and obscure visibility.**
- **Do not sleep in a vehicle with the air conditioning or heating system on. It may cause serious harm or death due to a drop in the oxygen level and/or body temperature.**
- **Continue using the climate control system in the recirculated air position can cause drowsiness or sleepiness, and loss of vehicle control. Set the air intake control to the outside (fresh) air position as much as possible while driving.**

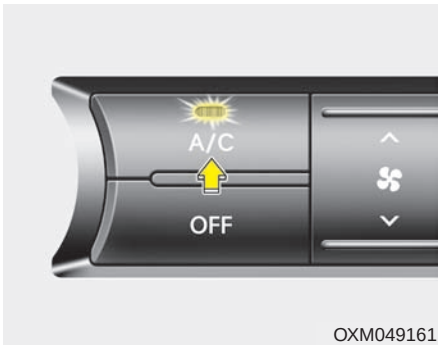


OXM049160

***Fan speed control***

The fan speed can be set to the desired speed by operating the fan speed control switch.

To change the fan speed, press ( ∧ ) the switch for higher speed, or push ( ∨ ) the switch for lower speed. To turn the fan speed control off, press the front blower OFF button.



OXM049161

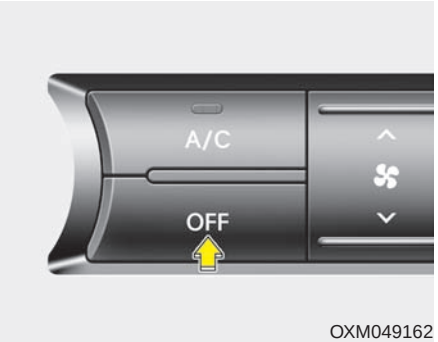
***Air conditioning***

Press the A/C button to turn the air conditioning system on (indicator light will illuminate).

Press the button again to turn the air conditioning system off.

XM CAN (ENG) 4(~101).QXP 4/14/2010 10:47 AM Page 90

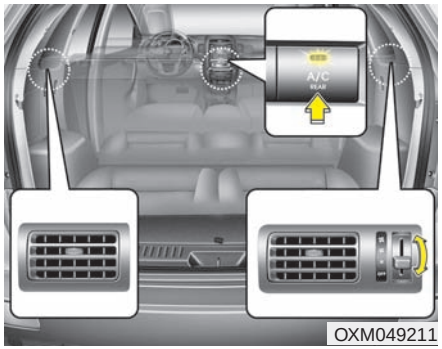




OXM049162

***OFF mode***

Press the front blower OFF button to turn off the front air climate control system. However, you can still operate the mode and air intake buttons as long as the ignition switch is in the ON position.



OXM049211

## 3rd row air conditioning (if equipped)

To turn on the 3rd row air conditioning control system

1. Press the 3rd row air conditioning ON/OFF button located on the front climate control panel and set the fan speed to the desired speed with the 3rd row fan speed switch located in the rear of the vehicle. (indicator light on the ON/OFF button (A/C REAR) will illuminate as long as the fan speed is not in the OFF position).
2. To turn off the 3rd row air conditioning control system, press the 3rd row air conditioning ON/OFF button (A/C REAR) once more located on the front climate control panel or set the fan speed to the “OFF” position with the 3rd row fan speed switch (indicator light on the ON/OFF button (A/C REAR) is not illuminated).

XM CAN (ENG) 4(~101).QXP 4/14/2010 10:47 AM Page 91

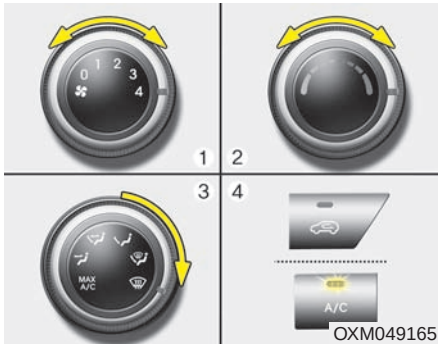


## WINDSHIELD DEFROSTING AND DEFOGGING

**⚠ WARNING - Windshield heating**

**Do not use the or position during cooling operation in extremely humid weather. The difference between the temperature of the outside air and the windshield could cause the outer surface of the windshield to fog up, causing loss of visibility. In this case, set the mode selection to the position and fan speed control to the lower speed.**

- For maximum defrosting, set the temperature control to the extreme right/hot position and the fan speed control to the highest speed.
- If warm air to the floor is desired while defrosting or defogging, set the mode to the floor-defrost position.
- Before driving, clear all snow and ice from the windshield, rear window, outside rear view mirrors, and all side windows.
- Clear all snow and ice from the hood and air inlet in the cowl grill to improve heater and defroster efficiency and to reduce the probability of fogging up the inside of the windshield.



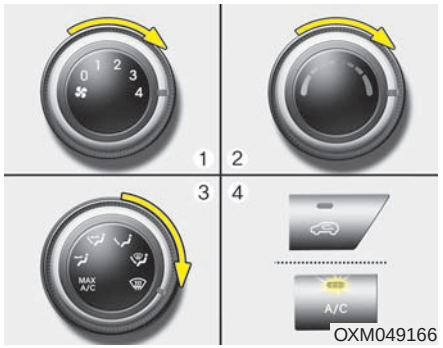
OXM049165

### Manual climate control system

***To defog inside windshield***

1. Set the fan speed to the desired position.
2. Select desired temperature.
3. Select the or position.
4. The outside (fresh) air and air conditioning will be selected automatically.

If the air conditioning and/or outside (fresh) air position are not selected automatically, press the corresponding button manually.

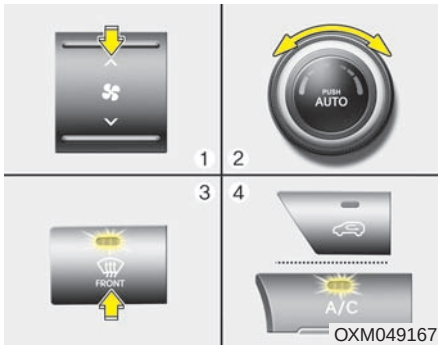


OXM049166

***To defrost outside windshield***

1. Set the fan speed to the highest position.
2. Set the temperature to the extreme hot position.
3. Select the position.
4. The outside (fresh) air and air conditioning will be selected automatically.

If the air conditioning is not selected automatically press the corresponding button manually.



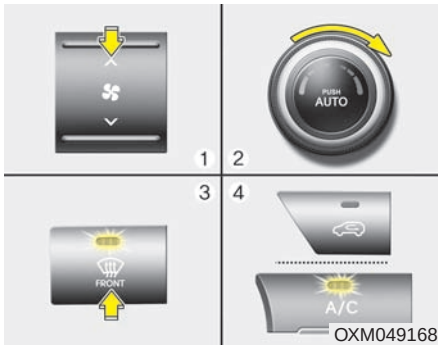
OXM049167

## Automatic climate control system

***To defog inside windshield***

1. Set the fan speed to the desired position.
2. Select desired temperature.
3. Press the defroster button ( ).
4. The outside (fresh) air position will be selected automatically and the air conditioning will turn on according to the detected ambient temperature.

If the air conditioning and outside (fresh) air position are not selected automatically, adjust the corresponding button manually. If the position is selected, lower fan speed is adjusted to a higher fan speed.



OXM049168

***To defrost outside windshield***

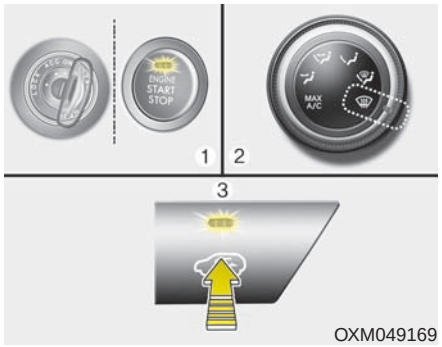
1. Set the fan speed to the highest position.
2. Set the temperature to the extreme hot (HI) position.
3. Press the defroster button ( ).
4. The outside (fresh) air position will be selected automatically and the air conditioning will turn on according to the detected ambient temperature.

XM CAN (ENG) 4(~101).QXP 4/14/2010 10:48 AM Page 93



### Defogging logic

To reduce the possibility of fogging up the inside of the windshield, the air intake or air conditioning is controlled automatically according to certain conditions such as or position. To cancel or return to the defogging logic, do the following.



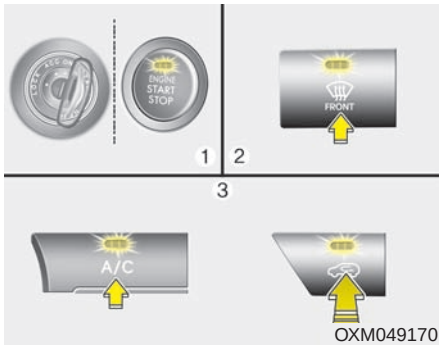
OXM049169

***Manual climate control system***

1. Turn the ignition switch to the ON position.
2. Turn the mode selection knob to the defrost position ().
3. Press the air intake control button at least 5 times within 3 seconds.

The indicator light in the air intake control button will blink 3 times with 0.5 second of interval. It indicates that the defogging logic is canceled or returned to the programmed status.

If the battery has been discharged or disconnected, it resets to the defog logic status.



OXM049170

***Automatic climate control system***

1. Turn the ignition switch to the ON position.
2. Select the defroster position pressing the defroster button ().
3. While pressing the air conditioning button (A/C), press the air intake control button at least 5 times within 3 seconds.

The A/C display blinks 3 times with 0.5 second of interval. It indicates that the defogging logic is canceled or returned to the programmed status.

If the battery has been discharged or disconnected, it resets to the defog logic status.

XM CAN (ENG) 4(~101).QXP 4/14/2010 10:48 AM Page 94



## STORAGE COMPARTMENTS

D270000AHM

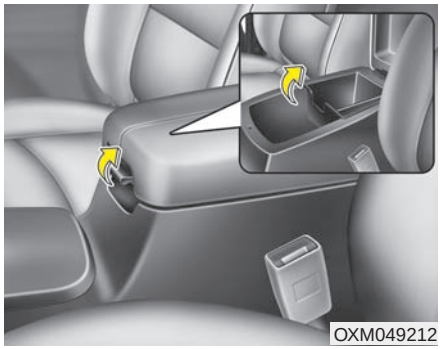
These compartments can be used to store small items.

**⚠ CAUTION**

- ***To avoid possible theft, do not leave valuables in the storage compartment.***
- ***Always keep the storage compartment covers closed while driving. Do not attempt to place so many items in the storage compartment that the storage compartment cover cannot close securely.***

**⚠ WARNING - Flammable materials**

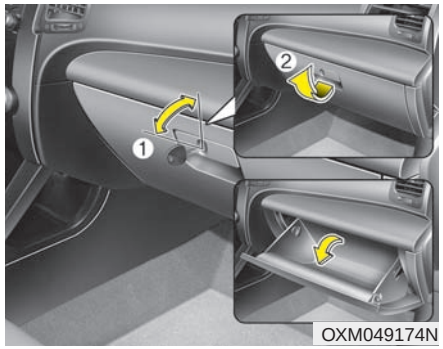
**Do not store cigarette lighters, propane cylinders, or other flammable/explosive materials in the vehicle. These items may catch fire and/or explode if the vehicle is exposed to hot temperatures for extended periods.**



OXM049212

### Center console storage (if equipped)

To open the center console storage, pull up the lever.




OXM049174N

### Glove box

The glove box can be locked and unlocked with a master key. (if equipped)

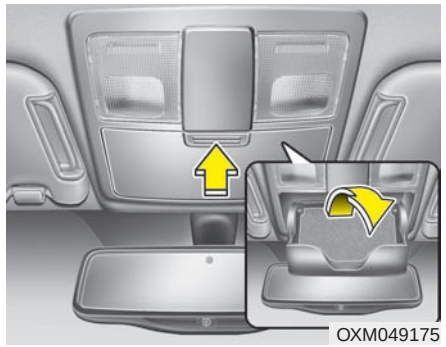
To open the glove box, pull the handle and the glove box will automatically open. Close the glove box after use.

**⚠ WARNING**

**To reduce the risk of injury in an accident or sudden stop, always keep the glove box door closed while driving.**

XM CAN (ENG) 4(~101).QXP 4/14/2010 10:48 AM Page 95



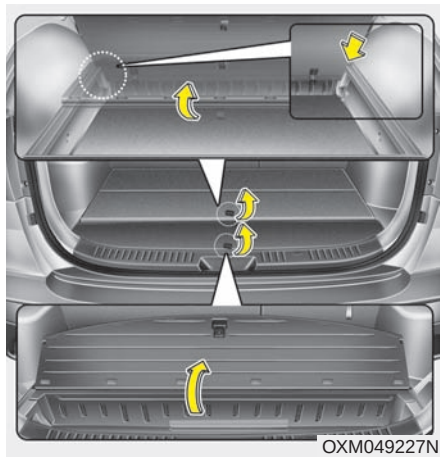

OXM049175

## Sunglass holder (if equipped)

To open the sunglass holder, press the cover and the holder will slowly open. Place your sunglasses with the lenses facing out. To close the sunglass holder, push it up.

**⚠ WARNING**

- **Do not keep objects except sunglasses inside the sunglass holder. Such objects can be thrown from the holder in the event of a sudden stop or an accident, possibly injuring the passengers in the vehicle.**
- **Do not open the sunglass holder while the vehicle is moving. The rear view mirror of the vehicle can be blocked by an opened sunglass holder.**


OXM049227N

D270500BUN-C1

## Luggage box

***Small***

You can place a first aid kit, a reflector triangle, tools, etc. in the box for easy access.

Grasp the handle on the edge of the cover and lift it.

***Large (if equipped)***

You can place small objects in the luggage box with the cover closed or large objects in the luggage box with the cover off.

**⚠ CAUTION**

***To prevent damage to the goods or the vehicle, care should be taken when carrying fragile or bulky objects in the luggage box.***

XM CAN (ENG) 4(~101).QXP 4/14/2010 10:49 AM Page 96



## INTERIOR FEATURES

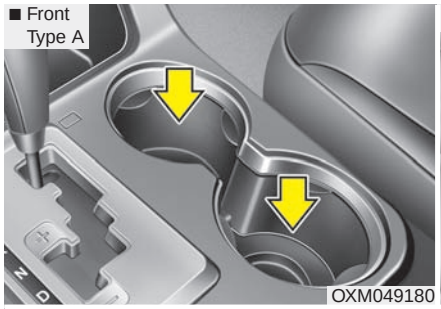
D280300AXM

### Cup holder

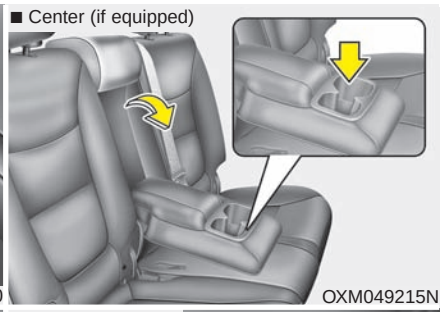
**⚠ WARNING - Hot liquids**

- **Do not place uncovered cups with hot liquid in the cup holder while the vehicle is in motion. If the hot liquid spills, you may burn yourself. Such a burn to the driver could lead to loss of control of the vehicle.**
- **To reduce the risk of personal injury in the event of sudden stop or collision, do not place uncovered or unsecured bottles, glasses, cans, etc., in the cup holder while the vehicle is in motion.**

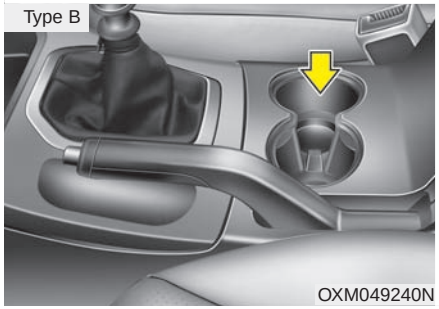
■ Front
Type A



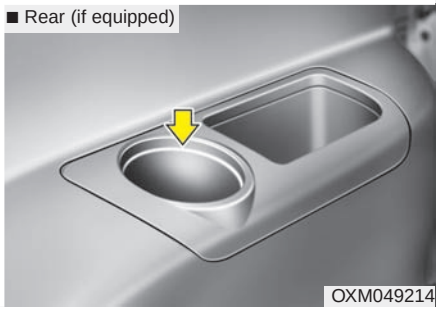

■ Center (if equipped)




Type B




■ Rear (if equipped)

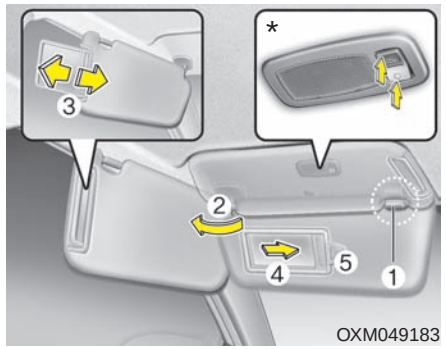



D280301AHM

Cups or small beverage cans may be placed in the cup holders.

XM CAN (ENG) 4(~101).QXP 4/14/2010 10:49 AM Page 97





OXM049183

## Sunvisor

Use the sunvisor to shield direct light through the front or side windows.

To use the sunvisor, pull it downward.

To use the sunvisor for the side window, pull it downward, unsnap it from the bracket (1) and swing it to the side (2).

Adjust the sunvisor extension forward or backward (3).

To use the vanity mirror, pull down the visor and slide the mirror cover (4).

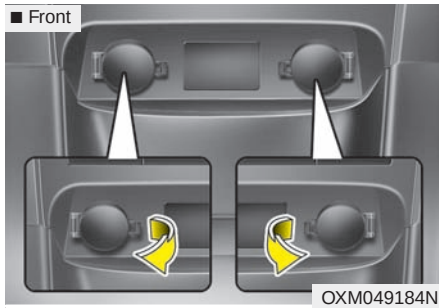
The ticket holder (5) is provided for holding a tollgate ticket. (if equipped)

* The actual sunvisor lamp in the vehicle may differ from the illustration.

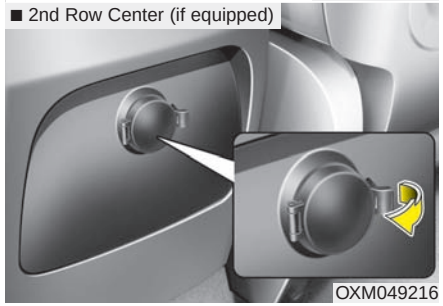
### ⚠ CAUTION - Vanity mirror lamp (if equipped)

***If you use the vanity mirror lamp, turn off the lamp before returning the sunvisor to its original position, otherwise it could result in battery discharge and possible sunvisor damage.***

■ Front


OXM049184N

■ 2nd Row Center (if equipped)


OXM049216

D280500AEN

## Power outlet (if equipped)

The power outlet is designed to provide power for mobile telephones or other devices designed to operate with vehicle electrical systems. The devices should draw less than 10 amps with the engine running.

XM CAN (ENG) 4(~101).QXP 4/14/2010 10:49 AM Page 98

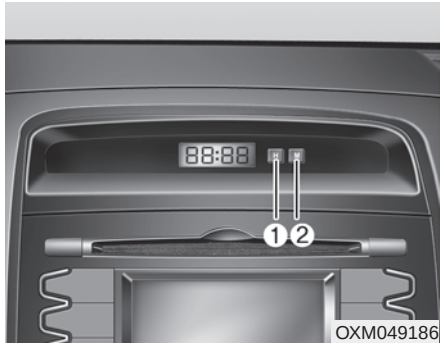


**⚠ CAUTION**

- ***Use the power outlet only when the engine is running and remove the accessory plug after use. Using the accessory plug for prolonged periods of time with the engine off could cause the battery to discharge.***
- ***Only use 12V electric accessories which are less than 10A in electric capacity.***
- ***Adjust the air-conditioner or heater to the lowest operating level when using the power outlet.***
- ***Close the cover when not in use.***
- ***Some electronic devices can cause electronic interference when plugged into a vehicle's power outlet. These devices may cause excessive audio static and malfunctions in other electronic systems or devices used in your vehicle.***

**⚠ WARNING**

**Do not put a finger or a foreign element (pen, etc.) into a power outlet and do not touch with a wet hand. You may get an electric shock.**



OXM049186

## Clock

***Hour (1)***

Pressing the H button will advance the time displayed by one hour.

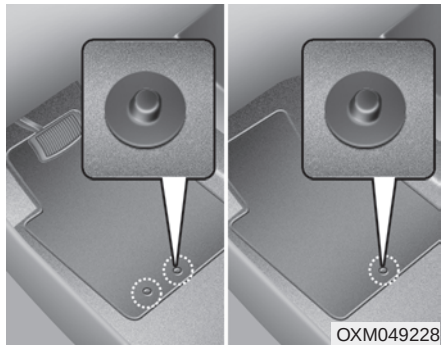
***Minute (2)***

Pressing the M button will advance the time displayed by one minute.

To change the 24 hour format to the 12 hours format (if equipped), while pressing the "H" button, press the "M" button for 3 seconds or more. For example, if the "H" and "M" buttons are pressed for more than 3 seconds while the time is 22:15, the display will change to 10:15.

XM CAN (ENG) 4(~101).QXP 4/14/2010 10:49 AM Page 99






### Floor mat anchor(s) (if equipped)

When using a floor mat on the front floor carpet, make sure it attaches to the floor mat anchor(s) in your vehicle. This keeps the floor mat from sliding forward.

**⚠ WARNING**

- **Make sure the floor mat is properly placed on the floor carpet. If the floor mat slips and interferes with the movement of the pedals during driving, it may cause an accident.**
- **Don't put an additional floor mat on the top of the anchored floor mat, otherwise the additional mat may slide forward and interfere with the movement of the pedals.**

D281000AHM

### Luggage net holder (if equipped)

To keep items from shifting in the cargo area, you can use the holders located in the cargo area to attach the luggage net. If necessary, contact your authorized KIA dealer to obtain a luggage net.

XM CAN (ENG) 4(~101).QXP 4/14/2010 10:49 AM Page 100



**⚠ CAUTION**

***To prevent damage to the goods or the vehicle, care should be taken when carrying fragile or bulky objects in the luggage compartment.***

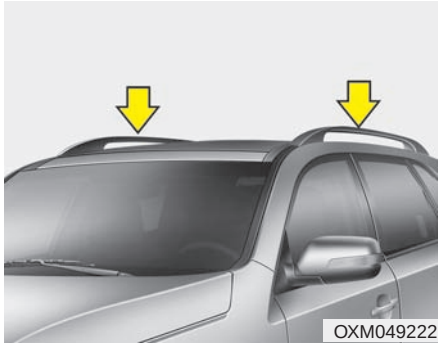
**⚠ WARNING**

**To avoid eye injury, DO NOT overstretch the luggage net. ALWAYS keep your face and body out of the luggage net's recoil path. DO NOT use the luggage net when the strap has visible signs of wear or damage.**

XM CAN (ENG) 4(~101).QXP 4/14/2010 10:49 AM Page 101



## EXTERIOR FEATURES




D290100AAM

### Roof rack (if equipped)

If the vehicle has a roof rack, you can load cargo on top of your vehicle.

### ✻ NOTICE

**If the vehicle is equipped with a sunroof, be sure not to position cargo onto the roof rack in such a way that it could interfere with sunroof operation.**

### ⚠ CAUTION

- ***When carrying cargo on the roof rack, take the necessary precautions to make sure the cargo does not damage the roof of the vehicle.***
- ***When carrying large objects on the roof rack, make sure they do not exceed the overall roof length or width.***
- ***When you are carrying cargo on the roof rack, do not operate the sunroof (if equipped).***

### ⚠ WARNING

- **The following specification is the maximum weight that can be loaded onto the roof rack. Distribute the load as evenly as possible on the roof rack and secure the load firmly.**

| | |
|---|---|
| ROOF RACK | 100 kg (220 lbs.) EVENLY DISTRIBUTED |

**Loading cargo or luggage in excess of the specified weight limit on the roof rack may damage your vehicle.**

**(Continued)**

**(Continued)**

- **The vehicle center of gravity will be higher when items are loaded onto the roof rack. Avoid sudden starts, braking, sharp turns, abrupt maneuvers or high speeds that may result in loss of vehicle control or rollover resulting in an accident.**
- **Always drive slowly and turn corners carefully when carrying items on the roof rack. Severe wind updrafts, caused by passing vehicles or natural causes, can cause sudden upward pressure on items loaded on the roof rack. This is especially true when carrying large, flat items such as wood panels or mattresses. This could cause the items to fall off the roof rack and cause damage to your vehicle or others around you.**
- **To prevent damage or loss of cargo while driving, check frequently before or while driving to make sure the items on the roof rack are securely fastened.**

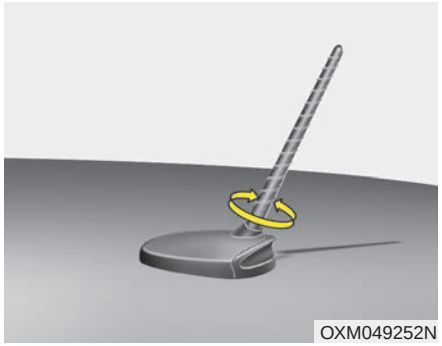
XM CAN (ENG) 4(102~audio).qxp 4/14/2010 10:52 AM Page 102



## AUDIO SYSTEM

### ✻ NOTICE

**If you install an after market HID head lamp, your vehicle's audio and electronic device may malfunction.**



OXM049252N

### Antenna

D300102AAM-EU

Your vehicle uses a roof antenna to receive AM or/and FM broadcast signals.

This antenna is removable. To remove the roof antenna, turn it counterclockwise. To install the roof antenna, turn it clockwise.

### ⚠ CAUTION

- ***Before entering a place with a low height clearance, be sure that the roof antenna is removed.***
- ***Be sure to remove the roof antenna before washing the car in an automatic car wash or it may be damaged.***
- ***When reinstalling your roof antenna, it is important that it is fully tightened and adjusted to the upright position to ensure proper reception. But it could be removed when parking the vehicle or when loading cargo on the roof rack.***
- ***When cargo is loaded on the roof rack, do not place the cargo near the antenna pole to ensure proper reception.***

XM CAN (ENG) 4(102~audio).qxp 4/14/2010 10:52 AM Page 103

D300200AEN

## Steering wheel audio controls (if equipped)

The steering wheel may incorporate audio control buttons. These buttons are installed to promote safe driving.

**⚠ CAUTION**

***Do not operate audio remote control buttons simultaneously.***

D300204AHM

***VOLUME (VOL + / -) (1)***

- Push the lever upward (+) to increase the volume.
- Push the lever downward (-) to decrease the volume.

D300203AHM

***SEEK/PRESET ( ∧ / ∨ ) (2)***

The SEEK/PRESET button has different functions based on the system mode. For the following functions the button should be pressed for 0.8 seconds or more.

**RADIO mode**

It will function as the AUTO SEEK select button.

**CD/USB/iPod mode**

It will function as the FF/REW button.

If the SEEK/PRESET button is pressed for less than 0.8 seconds, it will work as follows in each mode.

**RADIO mode**

It will function as the PRESET STATION buttons.

**CD/USB/iPod mode**

It will function as TRACK UP/DOWN button.

D300202AEN

***MODE (3)***

Press the button to change audio source.

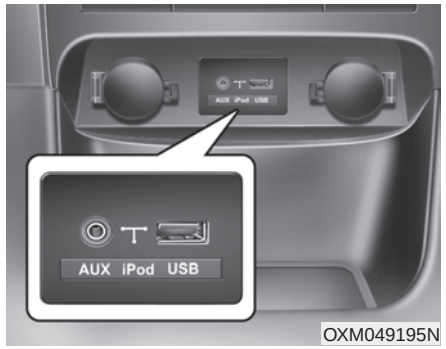
- FM(1~2)➡AM➡SAT(1~3)➡CD➡USB AUX(iPod) FM...

D300205AHM

***MUTE (4)***

- Press the button to mute the sound.
- Press the button to turn off the microphone during a telephone call.

Detailed information for audio control buttons are described in the following pages in this section.




OXM049195N

D300600AHM-EE

### Aux, USB and iPod®* port (if equipped)

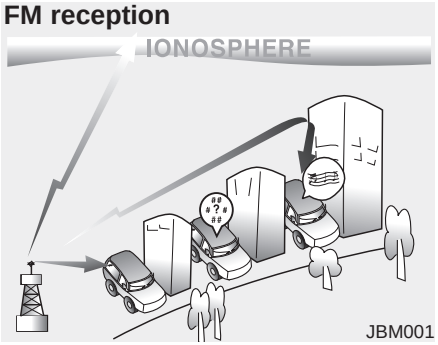
If your vehicle has an aux and/or USB(universal serial bus) port or iPod port, you can use an aux port to connect audio devices and an USB port to plug in an USB and also an iPod port to plug in an iPod.

### ✻ NOTICE

**When using a portable audio device connected to the power outlet, noise may occur during playback. If this happens, use the power source of the portable audio device.**

* iPod® is a trademark of Apple Inc.

**FM reception**




JBM001

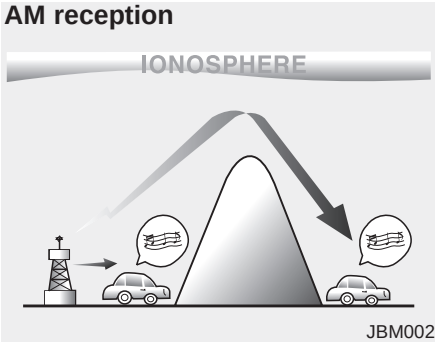
D300800AHM

### How vehicle audio works

AM and FM radio signals are broadcast from transmitter towers located around your city. They are intercepted by the radio antenna on your vehicle. This signal is then received by the radio and sent to your vehicle speakers.

When a strong radio signal has reached your vehicle, the precise engineering of your audio system ensures the best possible quality reproduction. However, in some cases the signal coming to your vehicle may not be strong and clear. This can be due to factors such as the distance from the radio station, closeness of other strong radio stations or the presence of buildings, bridges or other large obstructions in the area.

**AM reception**



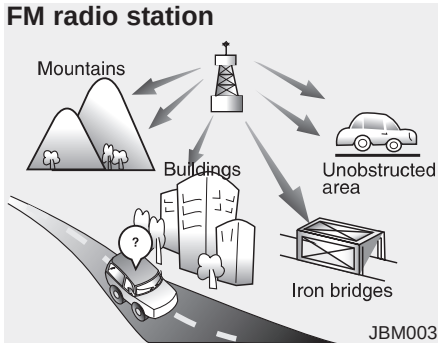

JBM002

AM broadcasts can be received at greater distances than FM broadcasts. This is because AM radio waves are transmitted at low frequencies. These long, low frequency radio waves can follow the curvature of the earth rather than travelling straight out into the atmosphere. In addition, they curve around obstructions so that they can provide better signal coverage.

XM CAN (ENG) 4(102~audio).qxp 4/14/2010 10:53 AM Page 105

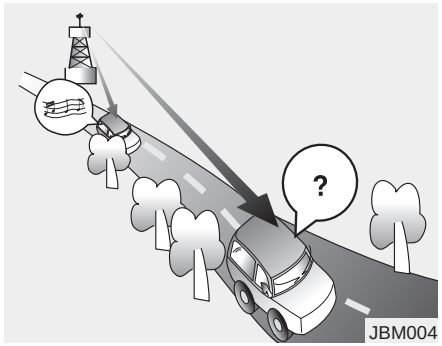


**FM radio station**

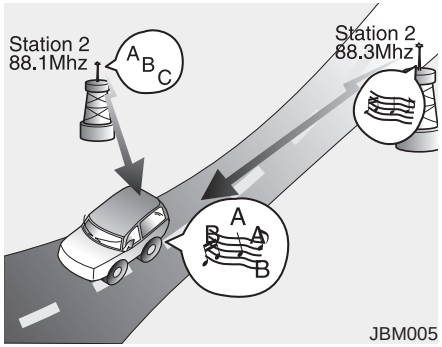



FM broadcasts are transmitted at high frequencies and do not bend to follow the earth's surface. Because of this, FM broadcasts generally begin to fade at short distances from the station

Also, FM signals are easily affected by buildings, mountains, or other obstructions. These can result in certain listening conditions which might lead you to believe a problem exists with your radio. The following conditions are normal and do not indicate radio trouble:




- Fading - As your vehicle moves away from the radio station, the signal will weaken and sound will begin to fade. When this occurs, we suggest that you select another stronger station.
- Flutter/Static - Weak FM signals or large obstructions between the transmitter and your radio can disturb the signal causing static or fluttering noises to occur. Reducing the treble level may lessen this effect until the disturbance clears.



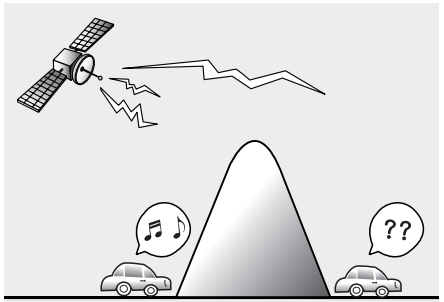

- Station Swapping - As a FM signal weakens, another more powerful signal near the same frequency may begin to play. This is because your radio is designed to lock onto the clearest signal. If this occurs, select another station with a stronger signal.
- Multi-Path Cancellation - Radio signals being received from several directions can cause distortion or fluttering. This can be caused by a direct and reflected signal from the same station, or by signals from two stations with close frequencies. If this occurs, select another station until the condition has passed.

XM CAN (ENG) 4(102~audio).qxp 4/14/2010 10:53 AM Page 106



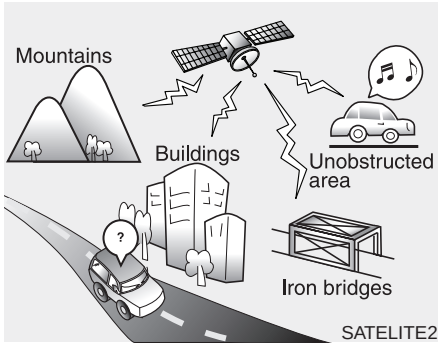
### Satellite radio reception

You may experience difficulties in receiving SIRIUS satellite radio signals in the following situations.




SATELITE1

- If you are driving in a tunnel or a covered parking area.
- If you are driving beneath the top level of a multi-level freeway.
- If you drive under a bridge.
- If you are driving next to a tall vehicle (such as a truck or a bus) that blocks the signal.
- If you are driving in a valley where the surrounding hills or peaks block the signal from the satellite.
- If you are driving on a mountain road where is the signal blocked by mountains.




SATELITE2

- If you are driving in an area with tall trees that block the signal (10 m / 30 ft. or more), for example on an road that goes through a dense forest.
- The signal can become weak in some areas that are not covered by the SIRIUS repeater network.

**NOTE:**

**There may be other unforeseen circumstances leading to reception problems with the SIRIUS satellite radio signal.**

XM CAN (ENG) 4(102~audio).qxp 4/14/2010 10:53 AM Page 107



***Using a cellular phone or a two-way radio***

When a cellular phone is used inside the vehicle, noise may be produced from the audio equipment. This does not mean that something is wrong with the audio equipment. In such a case, use the cellular phone at a place as far as possible from the audio equipment.

**⚠ WARNING**

**Do not use a cellular phone while driving. Stop at a safe location to use a cellular phone.**

## Care of compact discs (CDs)

- If the temperature inside the vehicle is too high, open the vehicle windows for ventilation before using your vehicle audio.
- It is illegal to copy and use MP3/WMA files without permission. Use CDs that are created only by lawful means.
- Do not apply volatile agents such as benzene and thinner, normal cleaners and magnetic sprays made for analogue disc onto CDs.
- To prevent the disc surface from getting damaged. Hold and carry CDs by the edges or the edges of the center hole only.
- Clean the disc surface with a piece of soft cloth before playback (wipe it from the center to the outside edge).
- Do not damage the disc surface or attach pieces of sticky tape or paper onto it.
- Make sure objects other than CDs are not inserted into the CD player (Do not insert more than one CD at a time).
- Keep CDs in their cases after use to protect them from scratches or dirt.
- Depending on the type of CD-R/CD-RW CDs, certain CDs may not operate normally according to manufacturing companies or making and recording methods. In such circumstances, if you still continue to use those CDs, they may cause the malfunction of your vehicle audio system.

### ✻ NOTICE - Playing an Incompatible Copy Protected Audio CD

**Some copy protected CDs, which do not comply with the international audio CD standards (Red Book), may not play on your vehicle audio. Please note that if you try to play copy protected CDs and the CD player does not perform correctly the CDs maybe defective, not the CD player.**

## RADIO, SET UP, VOLUME CONTROL (PA710XM, USA/CANADA)

1. FM/AM Selection Button
2. Power ON/OFF Button and Volume Control Knob
3. Automatic Station Seek Button
4. SCAN Selection Button
5. MUTE Button
6. Preset Selection Buttons
7. TUNE & AUDIO Control Knob
8. SETUP Button

XM CAN (ENG) 4(102~audio).qxp 4/14/2010 10:53 AM Page 109



## Using RADIO, SETUP, VOLUME and AUDIO CONTROL

### 1. FM/AM Selection Button

The FM/AM button toggles between FM and AM. Listed below are the paths as the system switches from FM to AM and back to FM.

- FM/AM : FM1➟FM2➟AM➟FM1...
- FM : FM1➟FM2➟FM1...

### 2. Power ON/OFF Button & Volume Control Knob

- Turns the audio system on/off when the ignition switch is on ACC or ON.
- If the knob is turned clockwise/counterclockwise, the volume will increase /decrease.

### 3. Automatic Station Seek Button

- When the [SEEK ⋁] is pressed, it will automatically tune to the next lower station.
- When the [SEEK ⋀] is pressed, it will automatically tune to the next higher station.

### 4. SCAN Button

- When the button is pressed, it automatically scans the radio stations upwards.
- The SCAN feature steps through each station, starting from the initial station, for ten seconds.
- Press the [SCAN] button again to stop the scan feature and to listen to the currently selected channel.

### 5. MUTE Button

When the button is pressed, stops sound and “Audio Mute” is displayed on LCD.

### 6. Preset Selection Button

- Press [1]~[6] buttons less than 0.8 seconds to play the station saved in each button.
- Press [1]~[6] button more than 0.8 seconds or longer to save the current station to the respective button with a beep.

### 7. TUNE Knob & Audio Control Knob

- Rotate the knob clockwise or counterclock wise to increase or decrease from current frequency.
  (AM 10 kHz, FM 200 kHz)

Pressing the button changes the BASS, MIDDLE, TREBLE, FADER and BALANCE TUNE mode. The mode selected is shown on the display. After selecting each mode, rotate the Audio control knob clockwise or counterclockwise.

• BASS Control

To increase the BASS, rotate the knob clockwise, while to decrease the BASS, rotate the knob counterclockwise.

• MIDDLE Control

To increase the MIDDLE, rotate the knob clockwise, while to decrease the MIDDLE, rotate the knob counterclockwise.

• TREBLE Control

To increase the TREBLE, rotate the knob clockwise, while to decrease the TREBLE, rotate the knob counterclockwise.

XM CAN (ENG) 4(102~audio).qxp 4/14/2010 10:53 AM Page 110



• FADER Control

Turn the control knob clockwise to emphasize rear speaker sound (front speaker sound will be attenuated). When the control knob is turned counterclockwise, front speaker sound will be emphasized (rear speaker sound will be attenuated).

• BALANCE Control

Rotate the knob clockwise to emphasize right speaker sound (left speaker sound will be attenuated). When the control knob is turned counter clockwise, left speaker sound will be emphasized (right speaker sound will be attenuated).

### 8. SETUP Button

Press this button to enter SETUP mode, If no action is taken for 8 seconds, it will return to previous mode.

In “SETUP” mode, rotate the TUNE knob to move the cursor between items, and push the TUNE knob to select.

• SCROLL

Select whether long file names are scrolled continuously (“ON”) or just once (“OFF”).

• SDVC

Select this item to turn the SDVC(Speed Dependent Volume Control) feature ON or OFF. If it is turned ON, volume level is adjusted automatically according to the vehicle speed.

• P.BASS (PowerBass)

This function creates virtual sound effects and allows adjustments to the BASS level.

HIGH ➟ MID ➟ LOW ➟ OFF ➟ HIGH...

• SAT (if available)

Select default display of SIRIUS mode. “Category/Channel name” or “Artist/Song Title” can be selected.

• PHONE (if available)

Select this item to enter BLUETOOTH setup mode. Refer to “BLUETOOTH PHONE OPERATION” section for detailed information.

XM CAN (ENG) 4(102~audio).qxp 4/14/2010 10:53 AM Page 111



## CD (PA710XM, USA/CANADA)

1. CD Loading Slot
2. CD Eject Button
3. CD Selection Button
4. Automatic Track Seek Button
5. RANDOM play Button
6. REPEAT Button
7. CD Indicator
8. SCAN Play Button
9. INFO Button
10. FOLDER Moving Button
11. SEARCH Knob & ENTER Button

XM CAN (ENG) 4(102~audio).qxp 4/14/2010 10:53 AM Page 112



## Using CD Player

### 1. CD Loading Slot

Insert a CD label side up and gently push in while ignition switch is on ACC or ON. The audio automatically switches to CD mode and begins to play the CD. If the audio was turned off, audio power will automatically turned on as the CD is inserted.

- This audio only recognizes 12cm-size, CD-DA (Audio CD) or ISO data-CD (MP3 CD).
- If UDF data-CD or non-CD (e.g. DVD) is inserted, "Reading Error" message will be displayed and the disc will be ejected.

**⚠ CAUTION**

***Do not insert a CD if CD indicator is lit.***

### 2. CD Eject Button

- Press [ ⏏ ] button to eject the CD. This button works regardless of ignition switch status.

### 3. CD Selection Button

If there is a CD in the CD DECK it switches to CD mode.

If there is no CD, then the message "NO DISC" will become displayed on the LCD for 3 seconds and returns to the previous mode.

### 4. Track Selection Button

- Press [TRACK ∨ ] button for less than 0.8 seconds to play from the beginning of current song.
- Press [TRACK ∨ ] button for less than 0.8 seconds and press again within 1 second to play the previous song.
- Press [TRACK ∨ ] button for 0.8 seconds or longer to initiate reverse direction high speed sound search.
- Press [TRACK ∧ ] button for less than 0.8 seconds to play the next song.
- Press [TRACK ∧ ] button for 0.8 seconds or longer to initiate forward direction high speed sound search.

### 5. RANDOM Play Button

Press this button for less than 0.8 seconds to activate 'RDM' mode and more than 0.8 seconds to activate 'ALL RDM' mode.

- RDM : Only files/tracks in a folder/disc are played back in a random sequence.
- ALL RDM (MP3/WMA Only) : All files in a disc are played back in the random sequence.

### 6. REPEAT Button

Press this button for less than 0.8 seconds to activate 'RPT' mode and more than 0.8 seconds to activate 'FLD RPT' mode.

- RPT : Only a track (file) is repeatedly played back.
- FLD RPT (MP3/WMA Only) : Only files are repeatedly played back.

### 7. CD Indicator

When car ignition switch is ACC or ON and if the CD is loaded, this indicator is lit. If the CD is ejected, the light is turned off.

### 8. SCAN Play Button

Play each song in the CD for 10 seconds. To cancel SCAN Play, press this button again.

### 9. INFO Button

Displays the information of the current song.

- Audio CD : Disc Title/Artist, Track Title /Artist, Total Track.

XM CAN (ENG) 4(102~audio).qxp 4/14/2010 10:53 AM Page 113



- MP3 CD : File Name, Title, Artist, Album, Folder, Total Files (Not displayed if the information is unavailable on the CD or file.)

### 10. FOLDER Moving Button

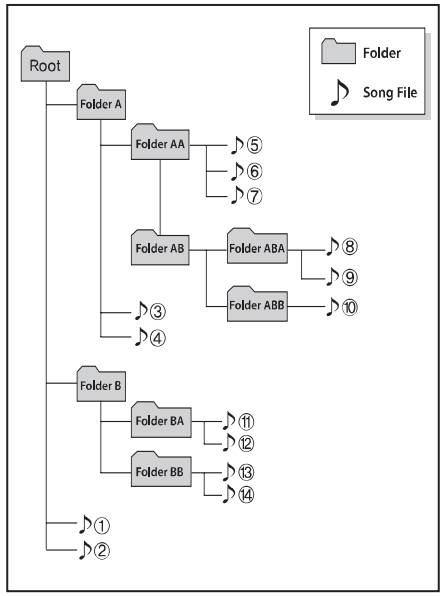
- Press [FOLDER ∨] button to move to child folder of the current folder and display the first song in the folder.
  Press TUNE/ ENTER knob to move to the folder displayed. It will play the first song in the folder.
- Press [FOLDER ∧] button to move to parent folder of the current folder and display the first song in the folder.
  Press TUNE/ENTER knob to move to the folder displayed.

### 11. SEARCH Knob & ENTER Button

- Turn this knob clockwise to browse songs after current song, or counter-clockwise to browse songs before current song. To play the displayed song, press the knob.
- Pressing this knob without turning enters to AUDIO CONTROL mode.

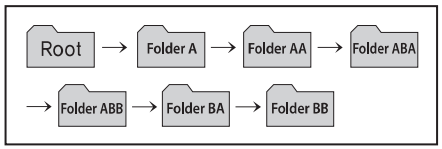
**NOTE:**

**Order of playing files (folders) :**




**1. Song playing order : ① to ⑭ sequentially.**

**2. Folder playing order :**




**✻ If no song file is contained in the folder, that folder is not displayed.**

XM CAN (ENG) 4(102~audio).qxp 4/14/2010 10:53 AM Page 114



## AUX/USB (PA710XM, USA/CANADA)

1. AUX/USB Selection Button
2. TRACK Selection Button
3. RANDOM Playback Button
4. REPEAT Selection Button
5. SCAN Selection Button
6. INFO Button
7. SEARCH Knob & ENTER Button
8. FOLDER Moving Button

XM CAN (ENG) 4(102~audio).qxp 4/14/2010 10:53 AM Page 115



### ⚠ CAUTION IN USING USB DEVICE

- *To use an external USB device, make sure the device is not connected when starting up the vehicle. Connect the device after starting the vehicle.*
- *If you start the engine when the USB device is connected, it may damage the USB device. (USB flashdrives are very sensitive to electric shock.)*
- *If the engine is started up or turned off while the external USB device is connected, the external USB device may not work.*
- *It may not play inauthentic MP3 or WMA files.*
  1) *It can only play MP3 files with the compression rate between 8 Kbps~320 Kbps.*
  2) *It can only play WMA music files with the compression rate between 8 Kbps~320 Kbps.*
- *Take precautions for static electricity when connecting or disconnecting the external USB device.*

*(Continued)*

*(Continued)*

- *An encoded MP3 PLAYER is not recognizable.*
- *Depending on the condition of the external USB device, the connected external USB device can be unrecognizable.*
- *When the formatted byte/sector setting of External USB devices is not either 512BYTE or 2048BYTE, then the device will not be recognized.*
- *Use only a USB device formatted to FAT 12/16/32.*
- *USB devices without USB I/F authentication may not be recognizable.*
- *Make sure the USB connection terminal does not come in contact with people or other objects.*
- *If you repeatedly connect and disconnect the USB device in a short period of time, you may cause damage to the device.*
- *You may hear a strange noise when connecting or disconnecting a USB device.*

*(Continued)*

*(Continued)*

- *If you disconnect the external USB device during playback in USB mode, the external USB device can be damaged or may malfunction. Therefore, disconnect the external USB device when the audio is turned off or in another mode (e.g, Radio, Sirius or CD).*
- *Depending on the type and capacity of the external USB device or the type of files stored on the device there may be a delay in the recognition of the device. This is not an indicator of trouble.*
- *Do not use the USB device for purpose other than playing music files.*
- *Use of USB accessories such as rechargers or heaters using USB I/F may lower performance or cause trouble.*

*(Continued)*

XM CAN (ENG) 4(102~audio).qxp 4/14/2010 10:53 AM Page 116



*(Continued)*

- ***If you use devices such as a USB hub purchased separately, the vehicle's audio system may not recognize the USB device. In that case, connect the USB device directly to the multimedia terminal of the vehicle.***
- ***If USB device is divided by logical drives, only the music files on the highest-priority drive are recognized by car audio.***
- ***Devices such as MP3 players, cellular phones and digital cameras may not be compatible with a standard USB I/F.***
- ***Some non-standard USB devices (METAL COVER TYPE USB) can be unrecognizable.***
- ***Some USB flash memory readers (such as CF, SD, microSD, etc.) or external-HDD type devices can be unrecognizable.***
- ***Music files protected by DRM (DIGITAL RIGHTS MANAGEMENT) are not recognizable.***

*(Continued)*

*(Continued)*

- ***The data in the USB memory may be lost while using this audio. Always back up important data on a personal storage device.***
- ***Please avoid using USB memory products which can be used as key chains or cellular phone accessories as they could cause damage to the USB jack. Please make certain only to use plug type connector products as shown below.***

XM CAN (ENG) 4(102~audio).qxp 4/14/2010 10:53 AM Page 117



## Using USB device

### 1. AUX/USB Selection Button

If the auxiliary device is connected, it switches to AUX or USB mode to play the sound from the auxiliary player.

If there is no auxiliary device, then the message "No Media" will become displayed on the LCD for 3 seconds and returns to previous mode.

### 2. TRACK Selection Button

- Press the [TRACK ∨] button for less than 0.8 seconds to play from the beginning of the current song.

  Press the button for less than 0.8 seconds and press it again within 1 second to move to and play the previous song.

  Press the button for 0.8 seconds or longer to play the song in reverse direction in fast speed.
- Press the [TRACK ∧] button for less than 0.8 seconds to move to the next song. Press the button for 0.8 seconds or longer to play the song in forward direction in fast speed.

### 3. RANDOM Playback Button

- Press this button for less than 0.8 seconds to play songs randomly in current folder.
- Press this button for 0.8 seconds or longer to play songs randomly in entire USB device.
- To cancel RANDOM play, press this button again.

### 4. REPEAT Button

- Press this button for less than 0.8 seconds to repeat current song.
- Press this button for 0.8 seconds or longer to repeat all songs in current folder.
- To cancel REPEAT, press this button again.

### 5. SCAN Selection Button

Plays each song in the USB device for 10 seconds.

To cancel SCAN Play, press this button again.

### 6. INFO Button

Displays the information of the file currently played in the order of FILE NAME ➟ TITLE ➟ ARTIST ➟ ALBUM ➟ FOLDER ➟ TOTAL FILE ➟ NORMAL DISPLAY ➟ FILE NAME ➟… (Displays no information if the file has no song information.)

### 7. SEARCH Knob & ENTER Button

- Turn this knob clockwise to browse songs after current song, or counter clockwise to browse songs before current song. To play the displayed song, press the knob.
- Pressing this knob without turning enters to AUDIO CONTROL mode.

### 8. FOLDER Moving Button

- Press [FOLDER ∨] button to move to child folder of the current folder and display the first song in the folder.

  Press TUNE/ ENTER knob to move to the folder displayed. It will play the first song in the folder.
- Press [FOLDER ∧] button to move to parent folder display the first song in the folder.

  Press TUNE/ENTER knob to move to the folder displayed.

XM CAN (ENG) 4(102~audio).qxp 4/14/2010 10:53 AM Page 118



## iPod® (PA710XM, USA/CANADA)

1. iPod Selection Button
2. TRACK Selection Button
3. REPEAT Selection Button
4. RANDOM Playback Button
5. INFO Button
6. SEARCH Knob & ENTER Button
7. iPod category Selection Button

✻ iPod® is a trademark of Apple, Inc.

XM CAN (ENG) 4(102~audio).qxp 4/14/2010 10:53 AM Page 119



### ✻ NOTICE FOR USING iPod DEVICE

- **Some iPod models might not support the communication protocol and the files will not be played.**
  **Supported iPod models:**
  **- iPod Mini**
  **- iPod 4th(Photo) ~ 6th(Classic) generation**
  **- iPod Nano 1st~4th generation**
  **- iPod Touch 1st~2nd generation**
- **The order of search or playback of songs in the iPod can be different from the order searched in the audio system.**
- **If the iPod crashes due to its own malfunction, reset the iPod. (Reset: Refer to iPod manual)**
- **An iPod may not operate normally on low battery.**

### ⚠ CAUTION IN USING iPod DEVICE

- ***The Kia iPod Power Cable is needed in order to operate an iPod with the audio buttons on the audio system. The USB cable provided by Apple may cause malfunction and should not be used for Kia vehicles.***
  ***✻ The Kia iPod Power Cable may be purchased through your Kia Dealership.***
- ***When connecting iPod with the iPod Power Cable, insert the connector to the multimedia socket completely. If not inserted completely, communications between iPod and audio may be interrupted.***
- ***When adjusting the sound effects of an iPod and the audio system, the sound effects of both devices will overlap and might reduce or distort the quality of the sound.***
- ***Deactivate (turn off) the equalizer function of an iPod when adjusting the audio system's volume, and turn off the equalizer of the audio system when using the equalizer of an iPod.***

***(Continued)***

***(Continued)***

- ***When the iPod cable is connected, the system can be switched to the AUX mode even without the iPod device and may cause noise. Disconnect the iPod cable when you are not using the iPod device.***
- ***When not using iPod with car audio, detach the iPod cable from iPod. Otherwise, the iPod may remain in accessory mode, and may not work properly.***

XM CAN (ENG) 4(102~audio).qxp 4/14/2010 10:53 AM Page 120



## Using iPod

### 1. iPod Selection Button

If iPod is connected, it switches to the iPod mode from the previous mode to play the song files stored in the iPod.

If there is no iPod connected, then it displays the message "No Media" for 3 seconds and returns to the previous mode.

### 2. TRACK Selection Button

- Press the [TRACK ∨] button for less than 0.8 seconds to play from the beginning of the song currently played.

  Press the button for less than 0.8 seconds and press it again within 1 second to move to and play the previous track.

  Press the button for 0.8 seconds or longer to play the song in reverse direction in fast speed.
- Press the [TRACK ∧] button for less than 0.8 seconds to move to the next track.

  Press the button for 0.8 seconds or longer to play the song in forward direction in fast speed.

### 3. REPEAT Button

Repeats the song currently played.

### 4. RANDOM Playback Button

- Press this button for less than 0.8 seconds to shuffle order of all songs in current category. (Song Random)
- Press this button for 0.8 seconds or longer to shuffle order of albums in current category. (Album Random)
- To cancel RANDOM Play, press this button again.

### 5. INFO Button

Displays the information of the file currently played in the order of TITLE ➡ ARTIST ➡ ALBUM ➡ NORMAL DISPLAY ➡ TITLE ➡... (Displays no information if the file has no song information.)

### 6. SEARCH Knob & ENTER Button

When you rotate the knob clockwise, it will display the songs (category) ahead of the song currently played (category in the same level).

Also, when you rotate the knob counterclockwise, it will display the songs (category) before the song currently played (category in the same level).

To listen to the song displayed in the song category, press the button to skip to and play the selected song.

Pressing the button changes the BASS, MIDDLE, TREBLE, FADER and BALANCE TUNE mode. The mode selected is shown on the display. After selecting each mode, rotate the Audio control knob clockwise or counterclockwise.

### 7. iPod category Selection Button

Moves to the upper category from currently played category of the iPod.

To move to (play) the category (song) displayed, press TUNE/ENTER knob.

You will be able to search through the lower category of the selected category.

The order of iPod's category is SONG, ALBUMS, ARTISTS, GENRES, and iPod.

XM CAN (ENG) 4(102~audio).qxp 4/14/2010 10:53 AM Page 121



## SIRIUS Satellite Radio information (if equipped)

### Satellite radio channels:

SIRIUS Satellite Radio has over 130 channels, including 69 channels of 100% commercial-free music, plus sports, news, talk and entertainment available nationwide in your vehicle. For more information and a complete list of SIRIUS Satellite Radio channels, visit sirius.com in the United States, sirius-canada.ca in Canada, or call SIRIUS at 1-888-539-7474.

### Satellite radio reception factors:

To receive the satellite signal, your vehicle has been equipped with a satellite radio antenna located on the roof of your vehicle. The vehicle roof provides the best location for an unobstructed, open view of the sky, a requirement of a satellite radio system. Like AM/FM, there are several factors that can affect satellite radio reception performance:

- Antenna obstructions: For optimal reception performance, keep the antenna clear of snow and ice build-up and keep luggage and other material as far away from the antenna as possible.
- Terrain: Hills, mountains, tall buildings, bridges, tunnels, freeway overpasses, parking garages, dense tree foliage and thunderstorms can interfere with your reception.

### SIRIUS Satellite Radio service:

SIRIUS Satellite Radio is a subscription-based satellite radio service that broadcasts music, sports, news and entertainment programming to radio receivers, which are available for installation in motor vehicles or factory installed, as well as for the home, portable and wireless devices, and through an Internet connection on personal computer.

Vehicles that are equipped with a factory installed SIRIUS Satellite Radio system include:

- Hardware and an introductory trial subscription term, which begins on the date of sale or lease of the vehicle.
- For a small upgrade fee, access to SIRIUS music channels, and other select channels over the Internet using any computer connected to the Internet (U.S. customers only).

  For information on extended subscription terms, contact SIRIUS at 1-888-539-7474.

### NOTE:

**Satellite Radio requires SIRIUS® compatible receiver and a subscription service fee after trial period.**
**Vehicles without a factory-installed radio receiver require hardware purchase and installation. Please see your dealer for further details. All fees and programming subject to change.**
**Subscriptions governed by the SIRIUS Terms & Conditions available at www.sirius.com / serviceterms.**
**Available only in the 48 contiguous United States and the District of Columbia. Service available in Canada; see www.siriuscanada.ca**
**KIA shall not be responsible for any such programming changes.**

**Satellite Radio Electronic Serial Number (ESN):** This 12-digit Satellite Serial Number is needed to re-activate, modify or track your satellite radio account. You will need this number when communicating with SIRIUS.

## SIRIUS SATELLITE RADIO (PA710XM,USA/CANADA)

1. SATELLITE RADIO Selection Button
2. Channel Selection Button
3. Preset Selection Button
4. SCAN Selection Button
5. Tune Knob and Enter Button
6. CAT/FOLDER Button
7. INFO Selection Button

XM CAN (ENG) 4(102~audio).qxp 4/14/2010 10:53 AM Page 123



### Using SIRIUS Satellite Radio

Your Kia vehicle is equipped with a 3 month complimentary period of SIRIUS Satellite Radio so you have access to over 130 channels of music, information, and entertainment programming.

### Activation

In order to extend or reactivate your subscription to SIRIUS Satellite Radio, you will need to contact SIRIUS Customer Care at 888-539-7474. Have your 12 digit SID (Sirius Identification Number)/ESN (Electronic Serial Number) ready. To retrieve the SID/ESN, turn on the radio, press the [SAT] button, and tune to channel zero. Please note that the vehicle will need to be turned on, in Sirius mode, and have an unobstructed view of the sky in order for the radio to receive the activation signal.

### 1. SATELLITE RADIO Selection Button (SIRIUS Satellite Radio)

Press the [SAT] button to switch to SIRIUS Satellite Radio. It cycles through the different bands as noted below.

SAT1➡SAT2➡SAT3➡SAT1➡...

### 2. Channel Selection Button

- Press [∨SEEK∧] button for less than 0.8 seconds to select previous or next channel.
- Press [∨SEEK∧] button for 0.8 seconds or longer to continuously move to previous or next channel.
- If "CATEGORY" Icon is displayed at the top of the screen, channel up/down is done through the channels within current category.

### 3. Preset Selection Button

- Press [1]~[6] buttons less than 0.8 seconds to play the channel saved in each button.
- Press [1]~[6] button for 0.8 seconds or longer to save current channel to the respective button with a beep.

### 4. SCAN Selection Button

- When the [SCAN] button is pressed, it automatically scans the radio stations upwards.
- The SCAN feature steps through every channel, starting from the initial channel, for ten seconds.
- Press the [SCAN] button again to stop the scan feature and to listen to the currently selected channel.
- If "CATEGORY" Icon is displayed at the top of the screen, channel changing is done through the channels within current category.

### 5. Tune Knob and Enter Button

- Rotate clockwise to increase the channel number or to scroll down the category list.
- Rotate counterclockwise to decrease the channel number or to scroll up the category list.
- Press this to make selection of channels or items.

XM CAN (ENG) 4(102~audio).qxp 4/14/2010 10:53 AM Page 124



### 6. CAT/FOLDER Button

- Press [∨CAT∧] button to enter the Category List Mode. The display will indicate the category items, highlight the category that the current channel belongs to.
- In the Category List Mode, press these buttons to navigate category list.
- Press [ENTER] Button to select the lowest channel in highlighted category.
- If channel is selected by selecting category "CATEGORY" Icon is displayed at the top of the screen.

### 7. INFO Selection Button

Displays the information of the current channel as below when the button is pressed each time.

- When default display is CAT/CH Category/Channel➟Artist/Title➟ Composer (if available)➟ Category/ Channel ➟...
- When default display is ART/TITLE Artist/Title➟Category/Channel➟ Composer(if available)➟Artist/Title➟...

## ✻ Troubleshooting

**1. Antenna Error**

**If this message is displayed, the antenna or antenna cable is broken or unplugged. Please consult with your Kia dealership.**

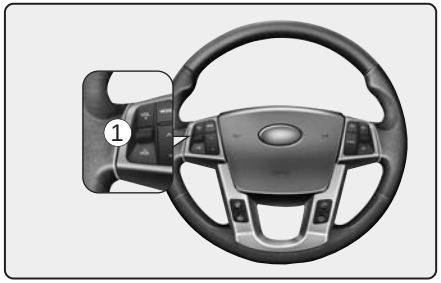
**2. Acquiring Signal**

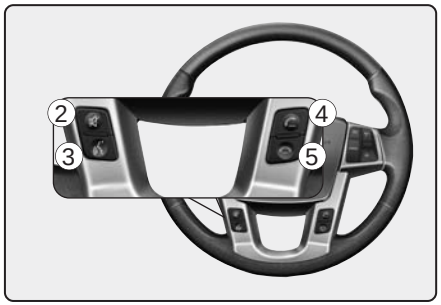
**If this message is displayed, it means that the antenna is covered and that the SIRIUS Satellite Radio signal is not available. Ensure the antenna is uncovered and has a clear view of the sky.**

XM CAN (ENG) 4(102~audio).qxp 4/14/2010 10:53 AM Page 125



## BLUETOOTH PHONE OPERATION




1. VOLUME button : Raises or lowers speaker volume.
2. MUTE : Mute the microphone during a call
3. TALK button : Activates voice recognition.
4. CALL button : Places and transfers calls.
5. END button : Ends calls or cancels functions.

### ■ What is Bluetooth®?

Bluetooth® is a wireless technology that allows multiple devices to be connected in a short range, low-powered devices like hands-free, stereo headset, wireless remocon, etc. For more information, visit the Bluetooth® website at *www.Bluetooth.com*

### ■ General Features

- This audio system supports Bluetooth® hands-free and stereo-headset features.
  - HANDS-FREE feature: Making or receiving calls wirelessly through voice recognition.
  - STEREO-HEADSET feature: Playing music from cellular phones (that supports A2DP feature) wirelessly.

- Voice recognition engine of the Bluetooth® system supports 3 types of languages:
  - English
  - US Spanish
  - Canadian French

### ✻ NOTICE

- **The phone must be paired to the system before using Bluetooth® features.**
- **Only one selected (linked) cellular phone can be used with the system at a time.**
- **Some phones are not fully compatible with this system.**

### ■ Bluetooth Language Setting

The system language can be changed by the following steps:

1. Power on the audio system with the volume set to an audible level.
2. Press and hold button on the steering wheel until the audio displays “Please Wait”.
   - The Bluetooth® system will reply in currently selected language that it is changing to the next language.
   - System language cycles between English, Canadian French and US Spanish.
3. When completed, the audio display returns to normal.
4. Repeat steps 2 and 3 for the next language selection

XM CAN (ENG) 4(102~audio).qxp 4/14/2010 10:53 AM Page 126



**NOTE:**

**The phone needs to be paired again after changing system language.**

**- Avoid resting your thumb or finger on the as the language could unintentionally change.**

### ⚠ CAUTION IN USING BLUETOOTH® CELLULAR PHONE

- ***Do not use a cellular phone or perform Bluetooth® settings (e.g. pairing a phone) while driving.***
- ***Some Bluetooth®-enabled phones may not be recognized by the system or fully compatible with the system.***
- ***Before using Bluetooth® related features of the audio system, refer your phone's User's Manual for phone-side Bluetooth® operations.***
- ***The phone must be paired to the audio system to use Bluetooth® related features.***
- ***You will not be able to use the hands-free feature when your phone (in the car) is outside of the cellular service area (e.g. in a tunnel, in a underground, in a mountainous area, etc.).***
- ***If the cellular phone signal is poor or the vehicles interior noise is too loud, it may be difficult to hear the other person's voice during a call.***

***(Continued)***

***(Continued)***

- ***Do not place the phone near or inside metallic objects, otherwise Communications with Bluetooth® system or cellular service stations can be disturbed.***
- ***While a phone is connected through Bluetooth® your phone may discharge quicker than usual for additional Bluetooth®-related operations.***
- ***Some cellular phones or other devices may cause interference noise or malfunction to audio system. In this case, storing the device in a different location may resolve the situation.***

XM CAN (ENG) 4(102~audio).qxp 4/14/2010 10:53 AM Page 127



## ■ Voice Recognition Activation

• The voice recognition engine contained in the Bluetooth System can be activated in the following conditions:
- Button Activation
  The voice recognition system will be active when the button is pressed and after the sound of a Beep.
- Active Listening
  The voice recognition system will be active for a period of time when the Voice Recognition system has asked for a customer response.

• The system can recognize single digits-from zero to nine while number greater than ten will not be recognized.

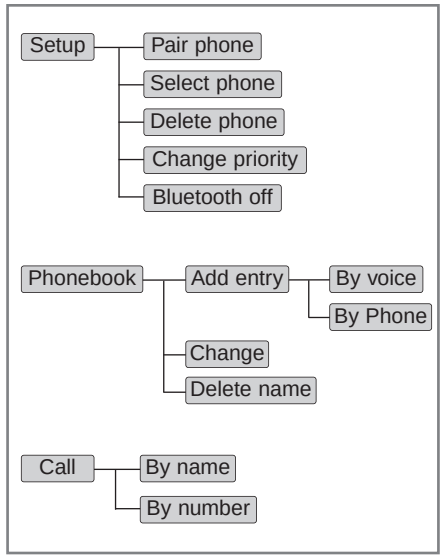
• If the command is not recognized, the system will announce "Pardon" or No input voice signal from microphone. (No response)

• The system shall cancel voice recogntion mode in following cases : When pressing the button and saying cancel following the beep. When not making a call and pressing the button. When voice recognition has failed 3 consecutive times.

• At any time if you say “help”, the system will announce what commands are available.

## ■ Menu tree

The menu tree identifies available voice recognition Bluetooth® functions.

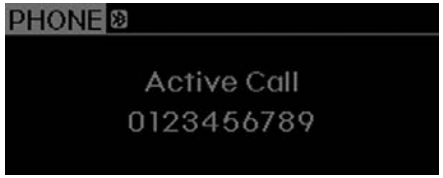



## ■ Voice Operation Tip

To get the best performance out of the Voice Recognition System, observe the followings:
- Keep the interior of the vehicle as quiet as possible. Close the window to eliminate surrounding noise (traffic noise, vibration sounds, etc), which may disturb recognizing the voice command correctly.
- Speak a command after a beep sound within 5 seconds. Otherwise the command will not be received properly.
- Speak in a natural voice without pausing between words.

## ■ Information Display

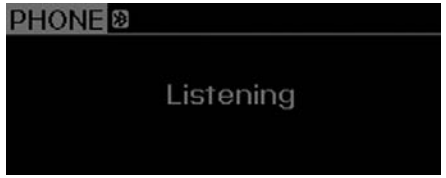
<Active Call>



XM CAN (ENG) 4(102~audio).qxp 4/14/2010 10:53 AM Page 128



<Recognization>



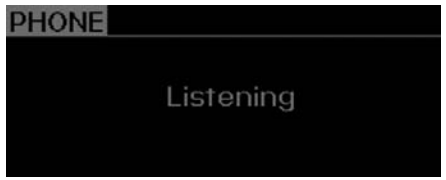

The Bluetooth® icon appears on the upper side of audio display when a phone is connected.

## ■ Phone Setup

All Bluetooth®-related operations can be performed by voice command or by manual operation.

- By Voice Command:

Press button on the steering wheel to activate voice recognition.




- By Manual Operation:

1) Push the “SETUP” button to enter SETUP mode

2) Select “PHONE” item by rotating the TUNE knob, then push the knob.

3) Select desired item by rotating the TUNE knob, then push the knob.

**• Pairing phone**

Before using Bluetooth® features, the phone must be paired (registered) to the audio system. Up to 5 phones can be paired with the system.

**Note:**

**The pairing procedure of the phone varies according to each phone model. Before attempting to pair phone, please see your phone’s User’s Guide for instructions.**

**Note:**

**Once pairing with the phone is completed, there is no need to pair with that phone again unless the phone is deleted manually from the audio system (refer “Deleting Phone” section) or the vehicle’s information is removed from the phone.**

1. Press button.
2. Say “Set Up”.
   - The system replies with available commands.
   - To skip the information message, press again and then a beep is heard.
3. Say “Pair Phone”
4. Say “Yes” to proceed.
5. Say the name of your phone when prompted.
   - Use any name to uniquely describe your phone.

XM CAN (ENG) 4(102~audio).qxp 4/14/2010 10:53 AM Page 129



6. Bluetooth® system will repeat the name you stated.
7. Say "Yes" to confirm.
8. The audio displays “searching ---- passkey: 0000” and asks you to initiate pairing procedure from the phone.
9. Search the Bluetooth® system on your phone .Your phone should display your [vehicle model name] on the Bluetooth® device list. Then attempt pairing on your phone
10. After Pairing is completed, your phone will start to transfer phone/contact list to the audio system.
    - This process may take from a few minutes to over 10 minutes depending on the phone model and number of entries in the phone/contact list.
11. By manual operation:
    - Select “PAIR” in PHONE menu, then proceed from step 5

**Note:**

**Until the audio displays “Transfer Complete”, Bluetooth® hands-free feature may not be fully operational.**

**Note:**

**If the phone is paired to two or more vehicles of the same model, i.e. both vehicles are KIA SORENTO, some phones may not handle Bluetooth® devices of that name correctly. In this case, you may need to change the name displayed on your phone from Sorento to Sorento1 and Sorento2.**

**Refer to your phone’s User’s Guide, or contact your cellular carrier or phone manufacturer for instructions.**

**• Connecting phone**

When the Bluetooth® system is enabled, the phone previously used is automatically selected and re-connected. If you want to select different phone previously paired, the phone can be selected through “Select Phone” menu.

Only a selected phone can be used with the hands-free system at a time.

1. Press button.
2. Say "Set Up".
3. Say "Select Phone" after prompt
   - The system lists all the registered phone names.
4. Say the name or number of desired phone from the list.
5. Say "Yes" to confirm.
6. By manual operation:
   - Select “SELECT” in PHONE menu, then select desired phone from the list.

**• Deleting Phone**

The paired phone can be deleted.

- When the phone is deleted, all the information associated with that phone is also deleted (including phonebook).
- If you want to use the deleted phone with the audio system again, pairing procedure must be completed once more.

1. Press button.
2. Say “Set Up”.
3. Say “Delete Phone” after prompt.
   - The system lists all the registered phone names.
4. Say the name or number of desired phone from the list.
5. Say “Yes” to confirm.
6. By manual operation:
   - Select “DELETE” in PHONE menu, then select desired phone from the list.

XM CAN (ENG) 4(102~audio).qxp 4/14/2010 10:53 AM Page 130



**• Changing Priority**

When several phones are paired to the audio system, the system attempts to connect following order when the Bluetooth® system is enabled:

1) “Priority” checked phone.
2) Previously connected phone
3) Gives up auto connection.

1. Press button.
2. Say “Set Up”.
3. Say “Change Priority” after prompt.
   - The system lists all the registered phone names.
4. Say the name or number of desired phone from the list.
5. Say “Yes” to confirm.
6. By manual operation:
   - Select “PRIORITY” in PHONE menu, then select desired phone from the list.

**• Adjusting Bluetooth® Volume**

Bluetooth® system volume can be adjusted separately from main volume of the audio system. Volume control is available by manual operation only.

- Select “BT VOL” in PHONE menu, adjust volume to desired level by turning the TUNE knob, then press the knob again to confirm.

**• Turning Bluetooth® ON/OFF**

Bluetooth® system can be enabled (ON) or disabled (OFF) by this menu.

- If Bluetooth® is disabled, all the commands related to Bluetooth® system prompts whether you wish to turn Bluetooth® ON or not.
  1. Press button.
  2. Say “Set Up”
  3. Say “Bluetooth Off” after prompt.
  4. Say “Yes” to confirm.
  5. By manual operation:
  - Select “BT Off” in PHONE menu, then after announcement, say “YES” to confirm.

## ■ Phone Book (In-Vehicle)

**• Adding Entry**

Phone numbers and voice tags can be registered. Entries registered in the phone can also be transferred.

**• Adding Entry by Voice**

1. Press button.
2. Say "Phonebook".
   - The system replies with all available commands.
   - To skip the information message, press again and then a beep is heard.
3. Say "Add Entry".
4. Say "By Voice" to proceed.
5. Say the name of the entry when prompted.
6. Say “Yes” to confirm.
7. Say the phone number of that entry when prompted.
8. Say “Store” if phone number input is finished.
9. Say a phone number type. “Home”, “Work”, “Mobile”, “Other” or “Default” is available.
10. Say “Yes” to complete adding entry.
11. Say “Yes” to store additional location for this contact, or say “Cancel” to finish the process.

XM CAN (ENG) 4(102~audio).qxp 4/14/2010 10:53 AM Page 131



### ✻ NOTICE

- **The system can recognize single digits from zero to nine. Numbers that are ten or greater cannot be recognized.**
- **You can enter each digit individually or group digits together in preferred string lengths.**
- **To speed up input, it is a good idea to group all digits into a continuous string.**
- **The display corresponding to each operation appears on the screen as follows:**
- **Input operation example:**
  **1. Say: "Nine, nine, five"**
  **➟ Display: "995"**
  **2. And say: "Seven, three, four"**
  **➟ Display: "995734"**

**• Adding Entry by Phone**

1. Press button.
2. Say "Phonebook".
3. Say "Add Entry" after prompt.
4. Say "By Phone" to proceed.
5. Say "Yes" to confirm.
6. Your phone will start to transfer phone/contact list to the audio system. This process may take over 10 minutes depending on the phone model and number of entries
7. Wait until the audio displays "Transfer Complete" message.

**• Changing Name**

The registered names can be modified.

1. Press button.
2. Say "Phonebook".
3. Say "Change Name" after prompt.
4. Say the name of the entry (voice tag).
5. Say "Yes" to confirm.
6. Say new desired name.

**• Deleting Name**

The registered names can be deleted.

1. Press button.
2. Say "Phonebook".
3. Say "Delete Name" after prompt.
4. Say the name of the entry (voice tag).
5. Say "Yes" to confirm.

## ■ Making a Phone Call

**• Calling by Name**

A phone call can be made by speaking names registered in the audio system.

1. Press button.
2. Say "Call".
3. Say "Name" when prompted.
4. Say desired name (voice tag).
5. Say desired location (phone number type). Only stored locations can be selected.
6. Say "Yes" to confirm and make a call.

**✻ Tip**

**A shortcut to each of the following functions is available:**
**1. Say "Call Name"**
**2. Say "Call <john>"**
**3. Say "Call <john> at <home>"**

XM CAN (ENG) 4(102~audio).qxp 4/14/2010 10:53 AM Page 132



**• Dialing by Number**

A phone call can be made by dialing the spoken numbers. The system can recognize single digits from zero to nine.

1. Press button.
2. Say “Call”.
3. Say “Number” when prompted.
4. Say desired phone numbers.
5. Say “Dial” to complete the number and make a call.

**✻Tip**

**A shortcut to each of the following functions is available:**
**1. Say “Dial Number”**
**2. Say “Dial <digit>”**

## ■ Receiving a Phone Call

When receiving a phone call, a ringtone is audible from speakers and the audio system changes into telephone mode.

When receiving a phone call, “Incoming” message and incoming phone number (if available) are displayed on the audio.

• To Answer a Call:
- Press button on the steering wheel.
• To Reject a Call:
- Press button on the steering wheel.
• To Adjust Ring Volume:
- Use VOLUME buttons on the steering wheel.
• To Transfer a Call to the Phone (Secret Call):
- Press and hold button on the steering wheel until the audio system transfers a call to the phone.

## ■ Talking on the Phone

When talking on the phone, “Active Calls” message and the other party’s phone number (if available) are displayed on the audio.

• To Mute the Microphone
- Press button on the steering wheel.
• To Finish a Call
- Press button on the steering wheel.

### ✻ NOTICE

**In the following situations, you or the other party may have difficulty hearing each other:**

**1. Speaking at the same time, your voice may not reach each other parties. (This is not a malfunction.) Speak alternately with the other party on the phone.**
**2. Keep the Bluetooth(R) volume to a low level. High-level volume may result in distortion and echo.**
**3. When driving on a rough road.**
**4. When driving at high speeds.**
**5. When the window is open.**
**6. When the air conditioning vents are facing the microphone.**
**7. When the sound of the air conditioning fan is loud.**

XM CAN (ENG) 4(102~audio).qxp 4/14/2010 10:53 AM Page 133



### ■ Using the head unit as Bluetooth music

The head unit supports A2DP (Audio Advanced Distribution Profile) and AVRCP (Audio Video Remote Control Profile).

Both profiles are available for listening to the MP3 music via Bluetooth cellular phone supporting above Bluetooth profiles.

To play MP3 music from the Bluetooth cellular phone, press the [AUX] button until “MP3 Play” is displayed on the LCD.

Then try playing music by phone.

When playing music from the Bluetooth cellular phone, the head unit displays MP3 MODE.

**NOTE:**

- **Not only MP3 files, all the sounds that the phone supports can be heard by the audio system.**
- **The Bluetooth cellular phones shall feature A2DP and AVRCP functions.**
- **Some A2DP and AVRCP Bluetooth cellular phones may not play music through the head unit on first try. Please try the below;**

  **i.e : Menu➟Filemanager➟Music➟ Option➟Play via Bluetooth**
- **Please refer to User’s Guide of your phone for more detaild informations. To stop music, try stop music by the phone and change audio mode to differernt one. (e.g. FM, CD, iPod, ...)**

XM CAN (ENG) 5.qxp 11/26/2009 12:00 PM Page 1

**Before driving / 5-3**
**Key positions / 5-4**
**Engine start/stop button / 5-7**
**Manual Transaxle / 5-12**
**Automatic transaxle / 5-15**
**Four wheel drive (4WD) / 5-21**
**Brake system / 5-27**
**Cruise control system / 5-39**
**Economical operation / 5-43**
**Special driving conditions / 5-45**
**Winter driving / 5-50**

# Driving your vehicle

*5*

**Trailer towing / 5-53**
**Vehicle load limit / 5-62**
**Vehicle weight glossary/ 5-67**

XM CAN (ENG) 5.qxp 11/26/2009 12:00 PM Page 2



E010000AUN-EU

**⚠ WARNING - ENGINE EXHAUST CAN BE DANGEROUS!**

Engine exhaust fumes can be extremely dangerous. If, at any time, you smell exhaust fumes inside the vehicle, open the windows immediately.

- **Do not inhale exhaust fumes.**
  Exhaust fumes contain carbon monoxide, a colorless, odorless gas that can cause unconsciousness and death by asphyxiation.
- **Be sure the exhaust system does not leak.**
  The exhaust system should be checked whenever the vehicle is raised to change the oil or for any other purpose. If you hear a change in the sound of the exhaust or if you drive over something that strikes the underneath side of the car, have the exhaust system checked as soon as possible by an authorized KIA dealer.
- **Do not run the engine in an enclosed area.**
  Letting the engine idle in your garage, even with the garage door open, is a hazardous practice. Never run the engine in your garage any longer than it takes to start the engine and back the car out.
- **Avoid idling the engine for prolonged periods with people inside the car.**
  If it is necessary to idle the engine for a prolonged period with people inside the car, be sure to do so only in an open area with the air intake set at "Fresh" and fan operating at one of the higher speeds so fresh air is drawn into the interior.

If you must drive with the tailgate open because you are carrying objects that make this necessary:

1. Close all windows.
2. Open side vents.
3. Set the air intake control at "Fresh", the air flow control at "Floor" or "Face" and the fan at one of the higher speeds.

To assure proper operation of the ventilation system, be sure the ventilation air intakes located just in front of the windshield are kept clear of snow, ice, leaves or other obstructions.

XM CAN (ENG) 5.qxp 11/26/2009 12:00 PM Page 3



## BEFORE DRIVING

E020100AUN

### Before entering vehicle

- Be sure that all windows, outside mirror(s), and outside lights are clean.
- Check the condition of the tires.
- Check under the vehicle for any sign of leaks.
- Be sure there are no obstacles behind you if you intend to back up.

E020200AXM

### Necessary inspections

Fluid levels, such as engine oil, engine coolant, brake fluid, and washer fluid should be checked on a regular basis, at the exact interval depending on the fluid. Further details are provided in section 7, “Maintenance”.

E020300AHM

### Before starting

- Close and lock all doors.
- Position the seat so that all controls are easily reached.
- Adjust the inside and outside rearview mirrors.
- Be sure that all lights work.
- Check all gauges.
- Check the operation of warning lights when the ignition switch is turned to the ON position.
- Release the parking brake and make sure the brake warning light goes out.

For safe operation, be sure you are familiar with your vehicle and its equipment.

**⚠ WARNING**

**All passengers must be properly belted whenever the vehicle is moving. Refer to “Seat belts” in section 3 for more information on their proper use.**

**⚠ WARNING**

**Always check the surrounding areas near your vehicle for people, especially children, before putting a car into D (Drive) or R (Reverse).**

**⚠ WARNING - Driving under the influence of alcohol or drugs**

**Drinking and driving is dangerous. Drunk driving is the number one contributor to the highway death toll each year. Even a small amount of alcohol will affect your reflexes, perceptions and judgment. Driving while under the influence of drugs is as dangerous or more dangerous than driving drunk.**

**You are much more likely to have a serious accident if you drink or take drugs and drive.**

**If you are drinking or taking drugs, don’t drive. Do not ride with a driver who has been drinking or taking drugs. Choose a designated driver or call a cab.**

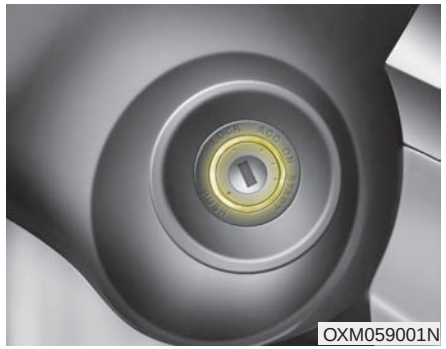
**⚠ WARNING**

**When you intend to park or stop the vehicle with the engine on, be careful not to depress the accelerator pedal for a long period of time. It may overheat the engine or exhaust system and ignite a fire.**

XM CAN (ENG) 5.qxp 11/26/2009 12:00 PM Page 4



## KEY POSITIONS (IF EQUIPPED)


OXM059001N

### Illuminated ignition switch (if equipped)

Whenever a front door is opened, the ignition switch will illuminate for your convenience, provided the ignition switch is not in the ON position. The light will go off immediately when the ignition switch is turned on. It will also go off after about 30 seconds when the door is closed.

OXM059029N

### Ignition switch position

E030201AUN

***LOCK***

The steering wheel locks to protect against theft (if equipped). The ignition key can be removed only in the LOCK position. When turning the ignition switch to the LOCK position, push the key inward at the ACC position and turn the key toward the LOCK position.

E030202AHM

***ACC (Accessory)***

The steering wheel is unlocked and electrical accessories are operative.

### ✻ NOTICE

**If difficulty is experienced turning the ignition switch to the ACC position, turn the key while turning the steering wheel right and left to release the tension.**

E030203AUN

***ON***

The warning lights can be checked before the engine is started. This is the normal running position after the engine is started.

*Do not leave the ignition switch ON if the engine is not running to prevent battery discharge.*

XM CAN (ENG) 5.qxp 11/26/2009 12:00 PM Page 5



E030204APB

***START***

Turn the ignition switch to the START position to start the engine. The engine will crank until you release the key; then it returns to the ON position. The brake warning light can be checked in this position.

E030205AHM

**⚠ WARNING - Ignition switch**

- **Never turn the ignition switch to LOCK or ACC while the vehicle is moving. This would result in loss of directional control and braking function, which could cause an accident.**
- **The anti-theft steering column lock is not a substitute for the parking brake. Before leaving the driver's seat, always make sure the shift lever is engaged in 1st gear for the manual transaxle or P (Park) for automatic transaxle, set the parking brake fully and shut the engine off. Unexpected and sudden vehicle movement may occur if these precautions are not taken.**

**(Continued)**

**(Continued)**

- **Never reach for the ignition switch, or any other controls through the steering wheel while the vehicle is in motion. The presence of your hand or arm in this area could cause a loss of vehicle control, an accident and serious bodily injury or death.**
- **Do not place any movable objects around the driver's seat as they may move while driving, interfere with the driver and lead to an accident.**

E040100AUN

## Starting the engine

**⚠ WARNING**

**Always wear appropriate shoes when operating your vehicle. Unsuitable shoes (high heels, ski boots,etc.) may interfere with your ability to use the brake and accelerator pedal, and the clutch (if equipped).**

XM CAN (ENG) 5.qxp 11/26/2009 12:00 PM Page 6



1. Make sure the parking brake is applied.
2. **Manual Transaxle** - Depress the clutch pedal fully and shift the transaxle into Neutral. Keep the clutch pedal and brake pedal depressed while turning the ignition switch to the start position. The starter will not operate if the clutch pedal is not fully depressed.

   **Automatic Transaxle** - Place the transaxle shift lever in P (Park). Depress the brake pedal fully.

   *You can also start the engine when the shift lever is in the N (Neutral) position.*
3. Turn the ignition switch to START and hold it there until the engine starts (a maximum of 10 seconds), then release the key.
4. In extremely cold weather (below -18°C / 0°F) or after the vehicle has not been operated for several days, let the engine warm up without depressing the accelerator.

*Whether the engine is cold or warm, it should be started* ***without depressing the accelerator.***

**⚠ CAUTION**

***If the engine stalls while you are in motion, do not attempt to move the shift lever to the P (Park) position. If traffic and road conditions permit, you may put the shift lever in the N (Neutral) position while the vehicle is still moving and turn the ignition switch to the START position in an attempt to restart the engine.***

**⚠ CAUTION**

***Do not engage the starter for more than 10 seconds. If the engine stalls or fails to start, wait 5 to 10 seconds before re-engaging the starter. Improper use of the starter may damage it.***

XM CAN (ENG) 5.qxp 11/26/2009 12:00 PM Page 7



## ENGINE START/STOP BUTTON (IF EQUIPPED)

### Illuminated ENGINE START/STOP button

Whenever the front door is opened, the ENGINE START/STOP button will illuminate for your convenience. The light will go off after about 30 seconds when the door is closed. It will also go off immediately when the theft-alarm system is armed.

### ENGINE START/STOP button position

***OFF***

Not illuminated

**• With automatic transaxle**

To turn off the engine (START/RUN position) or vehicle power (ON position), press the ENGINE START/STOP button with the shift lever in the P (Park) position. When you press the ENGINE START/STOP button without the shift lever in the P (Park) position, the ENGINE START/STOP button will not change to the OFF position but to the ACC position.

### ⚠ CAUTION

***You are able to turn off the engine (START/RUN) or vehicle power (ON), only when the vehicle is not in motion. In an emergency situation while the vehicle is in motion, you are able to turn the engine off and to the ACC position by pressing the ENGINE START/STOP button for more than 2 seconds or 3 times successively within 3 seconds. If the vehicle is still moving, you can restart the engine without depressing the brake pedal by pressing the ENGINE START/STOP button with the shift lever in the N (Neutral) position.***

XM CAN (ENG) 5.qxp 11/26/2009 12:00 PM Page 8



***ACC(Accessory)***

Orange indicator

**• With automatic transaxle**

Press the ENGINE START/STOP button while it is in the OFF position without depressing the brake pedal.

If the ENGINE START/STOP button is in the ACC position for more than 1 hour, the button is turned off automatically to prevent battery discharge.

***ON***

Green indicator

**• With automatic transaxle**

Press the ENGINE START/STOP button while it is in the ACC position without depressing the brake pedal.

The warning lights can be checked before the engine is started. Do not leave the ENGINE START/STOP button in the ON position for a long time. The battery may discharge, because the engine is not running.

***START/RUN***

Not illuminated

**• With automatic transaxle**

To start the engine, depress the brake pedal and press the ENGINE START/STOP button with the shift lever in the P (Park) or the N (Neutral) position. For your safety, start the engine with the shift lever in the P (Park) position.

## ✻ NOTICE

**If you press the ENGINE START/STOP button without depressing the brake pedal for automatic transaxle vehicles, the engine will not start and the ENGINE START/STOP button changes as follow: OFF ➔ACC ➔ ON ➔ OFF or ACC**

XM CAN (ENG) 5.qxp 11/26/2009 12:00 PM Page 9



### ✻ NOTICE

**If you leave the ENGINE START/ STOP button in the ACC or ON position for a long time, the battery will discharge.**

### ⚠ WARNING

- **Never press the ENGINE START/ STOP button while the vehicle is in motion except in an emergency. If the engine stops while the vehicle is in motion, this would result in loss of directional control and braking function, which could cause an accident.**
- **Before leaving the driver's seat, always make sure the shift lever is engaged in P (Park), set the parking brake fully and shut the engine off. Unexpected and sudden vehicle movement may occur if these precautions are not taken.**

**(Continued)**

**(Continued)**

- **Never reach for the ENGINE START/STOP button or any other controls through the steering wheel while the vehicle is in motion. The presence of your hand or arm in the area could cause loss of vehicle control, an accident and serious bodily injury or death.**
- **Do not place any movable objects around the driver's seat as they may move while driving, interfere with the driver and lead to an accident.**

E040300AHM-EU

## Starting the engine with a smart key (if equipped)

1. Carry the smart key or leave it inside the vehicle.
2. Make sure the parking brake is firmly applied
3. **Automatic Transaxle** - Place the transaxle shift lever in P (Park). Depress the brake pedal fully.
4. Press the ENGINE START/STOP button while depressing the brake pedal.
5. In extremely cold weather (below -18°C (0°F)) or after the vehicle has not been operated for several days, let the engine warm up without depressing the accelerator.

Whether the engine is cold or warm, it should be started without depressing the accelerator.

XM CAN (ENG) 5.qxp 11/26/2009 12:00 PM Page 10



- Even if the smart key is in the vehicle, if it is far away from you, the engine may not start.
- When the ENGINE START/STOP button is in the ACC position or above, if any door is opened, the system checks for the smart key. If the smart key is not in the vehicle, the "KEY OUT" indicator will blink. And if all doors are closed, the chime will sound for 5 seconds. The indicator or warning will turn off while the vehicle is moving. Always have the smart key with you.

**⚠ WARNING**

**The engine will start, only when the smart key is in the vehicle.**

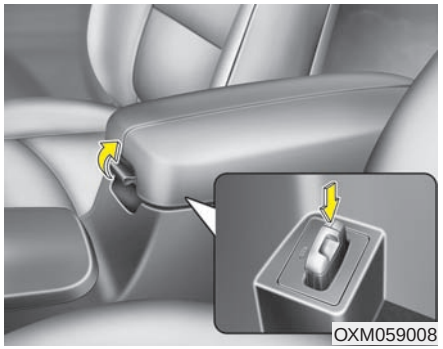
**Never allow children or any person who is unfamiliar with the vehicle touch the ENGINE START/STOP button or related parts.**

**⚠ CAUTION**

***If the engine stalls while the vehicle is in motion, do not attempt to move the shift lever to the P (Park) position. If the traffic and road conditions permit, you may put the shift lever in the N (Neutral) position while the vehicle is still moving and press the ENGINE START/STOP button in an attempt to restart the engine.***

XM CAN (ENG) 5.qxp 11/26/2009 12:01 PM Page 11




OXM059008

### ✻ NOTICE

- **If the battery is weak or the smart key does not work correctly, you can start the engine by inserting the smart key in the smart key holder. When you pull out the smart key from the smart key holder, press the smart key and pull it out.**

**(Continued)**

**(Continued)**

- **When the stop lamp fuse is blown, you can't start the engine normally. Replace the fuse with a new one. If it is not possible, you can start the engine by pressing the ENGINE START/STOP button for 10 seconds while it is in the ACC position. The engine can start without depressing the brake pedal. But for your safety always depress the brake pedal before starting the engine.**

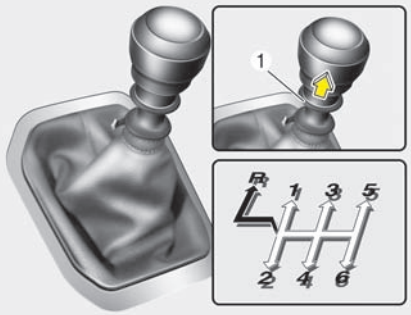
### ⚠ CAUTION

***Do not press the ENGINE START/STOP button for more than 10 seconds except when the stop lamp fuse is blown.***

XM CAN (ENG) 5.qxp 11/26/2009 12:01 PM Page 12



## MANUAL TRANSAXLE (IF EQUIPPED)




⇨ The shift lever can be moved without pulling the ring (1).

➡ The ring (1) must be pulled up while moving the shift lever.

OXM059026

E050000AUN

E050100BUN-C1

### Manual transaxle operation

The manual transaxle has 6 forward gears.

This shift pattern is imprinted on the shift knob. The transaxle is fully synchronized in all forward gears so shifting to either a higher or a lower gear is easily accomplished.

Press the clutch pedal down fully while shifting, then release it slowly.

The gearshift lever must be returned to the neutral position before shifting into R (Reverse).

The ring (1) located immediately below the shift knob must be pulled upward while moving the shift lever to the R position. (if equipped)

*Make sure the vehicle is completely stopped before shifting into R (Reverse).*

*Never operate the engine with the tachometer (rpm) in the red zone.*

### ⚠ CAUTION

- ***When downshifting from fifth gear to fourth gear, caution should be taken not to inadvertently press the gear shift lever sideways in such a manner that second gear is engaged. Such a drastic downshift may cause the engine speed to increase to the point that the tachometer will enter the red-zone. Such overrevving of the engine may possibly cause engine damage.***
- ***Do not downshift more than 2 gears or downshift the gear when the engine is running at high speed (5,000 RPM or higher). Such a downshifting may damage the engine.***

XM CAN (ENG) 5.qxp 11/26/2009 12:01 PM Page 13



- During cold weather, shifting may be difficult until the transaxle lubricant has warmed up. This is normal and not harmful to the transaxle.
- If you've come to a complete stop and it's hard to shift into 1st or R (Reverse), put the shift lever in N (Neutral) position and release the clutch. Press the clutch pedal back down, and then shift into 1st or R (Reverse) gear position.

**⚠ CAUTION**

- ***To avoid premature clutch wear and damage, do not drive with your foot resting on the clutch pedal. Also, don't use the clutch to hold the vehicle stopped on an uphill grade, while waiting for a traffic light, etc.***
- ***Do not use the shift lever as a handrest during driving, as this can result in premature wear of the transaxle shift forks.***

**⚠ WARNING**

- **Before leaving the driver's seat, always set the parking brake fully and shut the engine off. Then make sure the transaxle is shifted into 1st gear when the vehicle is parked on a level or uphill grade, and shifted into R (Reverse) on a downhill grade. Unexpected and sudden vehicle movement can occur if these precautions are not followed in the order identified.**
- **If your vehicle has a manual transaxle not equipped with a ignition lock switch, it may move and cause a serious accident when starting the engine without depressing the clutch pedal while the parking brake is released and the shift lever not in the N (neutral) position.**

E050101AUN

### *Using the clutch*

The clutch should be pressed all the way to the floor before shifting, then released slowly. The clutch pedal should always be fully released while driving. Do not rest your foot on the clutch pedal while driving. This can cause unnecessary wear. Do not partially engage the clutch to hold the car on an incline. This causes unnecessary wear. Use the foot brake or parking brake to hold the car on an incline. Do not operate the clutch pedal rapidly and repeatedly.

E050102AUN

### *Downshifting*

When you must slow down in heavy traffic or while driving up steep hills, downshift before the engine starts to labor. Downshifting reduces the chance of stalling and gives better acceleration when you again need to increase your speed. When the vehicle is traveling down steep hills, downshifting helps maintain safe speed and prolongs brake life.

XM CAN (ENG) 5.qxp 11/26/2009 12:01 PM Page 14



E050200AUN-C1

## Good driving practices

- Never take the vehicle out of gear and coast down a hill. This is extremely hazardous. Always leave the vehicle in gear.
- Don't "ride" the brakes. This can cause them to overheat and malfunction. Instead, when you are driving down a long hill, slow down and shift to a lower gear. When you do this, engine braking will help slow down the vehicle.
- Slow down before shifting to a lower gear. This will help avoid over-revving the engine, which can cause damage.
- Slow down when you encounter cross winds. This gives you much better control of your vehicle.
- Be sure the vehicle is completely stopped before you attempt to shift into reverse. The transaxle can be damaged if you do not. To shift into reverse, depress the clutch, move the shift lever to neutral, then shift to the reverse position.
- Exercise extreme caution when driving on a slippery surface. Be especially careful when braking, accelerating or shifting gears. On a slippery surface, an abrupt change in vehicle speed can cause the drive wheels to lose traction and the vehicle to go out of control.

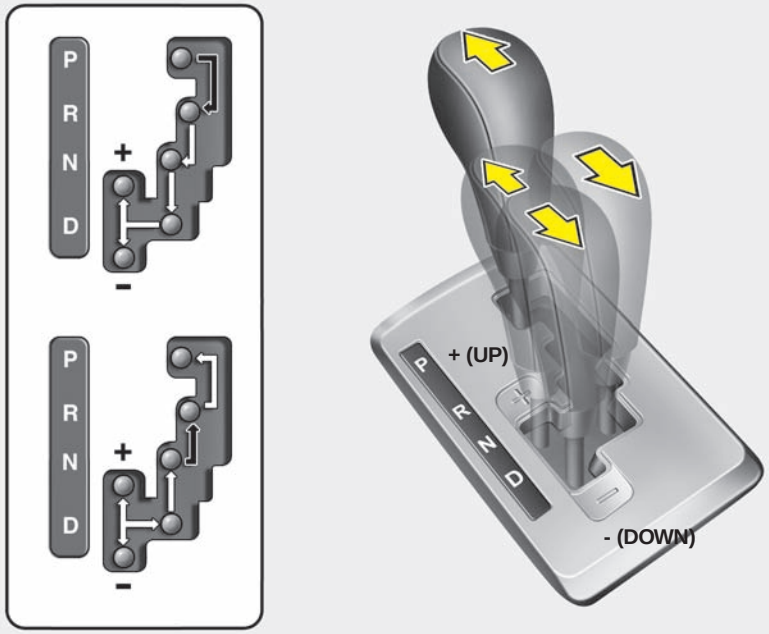
**⚠ WARNING**

- **Always buckle-up! In a collision, an unbelted occupant is significantly more likely to be seriously injured or killed than a properly belted occupant.**
- **Avoid high speeds when cornering or turning.**
- **Do not make quick steering wheel movements, such as sharp lane changes or fast, sharp turns.**
- **The risk of rollover is greatly increased if you lose control of your vehicle at highway speeds.**
- **Loss of control often occurs if two or more wheels drop off the roadway and the driver oversteers to reenter the roadway.**
- **In the event your vehicle leaves the roadway, do not steer sharply. Instead, slow down before pulling back into the travel lanes.**
- **Never exceed posted speed limits.**

XM CAN (ENG) 5.qxp 11/26/2009 12:01 PM Page 15



## AUTOMATIC TRANSAXLE (IF EQUIPPED)




➡ To shift, depress the brake pedal when the ignition switch is in the ON position.

⇨ The shift lever can be shifted freely.

OXM059009

E060000AAM-EU

E060100AAM-EU

### Automatic transaxle operation

The automatic transaxle has 6 forward speeds and one reverse speed. The individual speeds are selected automatically, depending on the position of the shift lever.

### ✻ NOTICE

**The first few shifts on a new vehicle, if the battery has been disconnected, may be somewhat abrupt. This is a normal condition, and the shifting sequence will adjust after shifts are cycled a few times by the TCM (Transaxle Control Module) or PCM (Powertrain Control Module).**

XM CAN (ENG) 5.qxp 11/26/2009 12:01 PM Page 16



*For smooth operation, depress the brake pedal when shifting from N (Neutral) to a forward or reverse gear.*

**⚠ WARNING - Automatic transaxle**

- **Always check the surrounding areas near your vehicle for people, especially children, before shifting the shift lever into D (Drive) or R (Reverse).**
- **Before leaving the driver's seat, always make sure the shift lever is in the P (Park) position; then set the parking brake fully and shut the engine off. Unexpected and sudden vehicle movement can occur if these precautions are not followed in the order identified.**

**⚠ CAUTION**

- ***To avoid damage to your transaxle, do not accelerate the engine in R (Reverse) or any forward gear position with the brakes on.***
- ***When stopped on an incline, do not hold the vehicle with the engine power. Use the service brake or the parking brake.***
- ***Do not shift from N (Neutral) or P (Park) into D (Drive), or R (Reverse) when the engine is above idle speed.***

E060101AAM

### *Transaxle ranges*

The indicator in the instrument cluster displays the shift lever position when the ignition switch is in the ON position.

**P (Park)**

Always come to a complete stop before shifting into P (Park). This position locks the transaxle and prevents the drive wheels from rotating.

**⚠ WARNING**

- **Shifting into P (Park) while the vehicle is in motion will cause the drive wheels to lock which will cause you to lose control of the vehicle.**
- **Do not use the P (Park) position in place of the parking brake. Always make sure the shift lever is latched in the P (Park) position and set the parking brake fully.**
- **Never leave a child unattended in a vehicle.**

XM CAN (ENG) 5.qxp 11/26/2009 12:01 PM Page 17



**⚠ CAUTION**

***The transaxle may be damaged if you shift into P (Park) while the vehicle is in motion.***

**R (Reverse)**

Use this position to drive the vehicle backward.

**⚠ CAUTION**

***Always come to a complete stop before shifting into or out of R (Reverse); you may damage the transaxle if you shift into R (Reverse) while the vehicle is in motion, except when "Rocking the vehicle" explained in this section.***

**N (Neutral)**

The wheels and transaxle are not engaged. The vehicle will roll freely even on the slightest incline unless the parking brake or service brakes are applied.

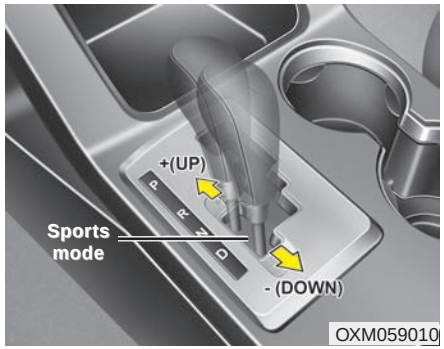
**D (Drive)**

This is the normal forward driving position. The transaxle will automatically shift through a 6-gear sequence, providing the best fuel economy and power.

For extra power when passing another vehicle or climbing grades, depress the accelerator fully, at which time the transaxle will automatically downshift to the next lower gear.

**✻ NOTICE**

**Always come to a complete stop before shifting into D (Drive).**




**Sports mode**

Whether the vehicle is stationary or in motion, sports mode is selected by pushing the shift lever from the D (Drive) position into the manual gate. To return to D (Drive) range operation, push the shift lever back into the main gate.

In sports mode, moving the shift lever backwards and forwards will allow you to make gearshifts rapidly. In contrast to a manual transaxle, the sports mode allows gearshifts with the accelerator pedal depressed.

Up (+) : Push the lever forward once to shift up one gear.

Down (-) : Pull the lever backwards once to shift down one gear.

XM CAN (ENG) 5.qxp 11/26/2009 12:01 PM Page 18



### ✻ NOTICE

- **In sports mode, the driver must execute upshifts in accordance with road conditions, taking care to keep the engine speed below the red zone.**
- **In sports mode, only the 6 forward gears can be selected. To reverse or park the vehicle, move the shift lever to the R (Reverse) or P (Park) position as required.**
- **In sports mode, downshifts are made automatically when the vehicle slows down. When the vehicle stops, 1st gear is automatically selected.**
- **In sports mode, when the engine rpm approaches the red zone shift points are varied to upshift automatically.**
- **To maintain the required levels of vehicle performance and safety, the system may not execute certain gearshifts when the shift lever is operated.**
- **When driving on a slippery road, push the shift lever forward into the +(up) position. This causes the transaxle to shift into the 2nd gear which is better for smooth driving on a slippery road. Push the shift lever to the -(down) side to shift back to the 1st gear.**

***Shift lock system (if equipped)***

For your safety, the automatic transaxle has a shift lock system which prevents shifting the transaxle from P (Park) or N (Neutral) into R (Reverse) unless the brake pedal is depressed.

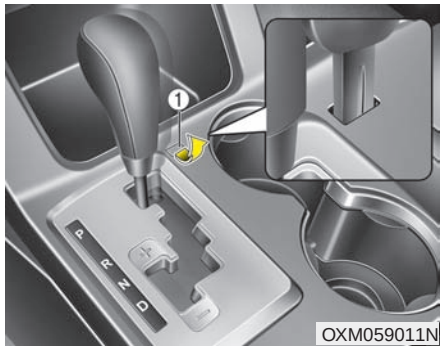
To shift the transaxle from P (Park) or N (Neutral) into R (Reverse):

1. Depress and hold the brake pedal.
2. Start the engine or turn the ignition switch to the ON position.
3. Move the shift lever.

If the brake pedal is repeatedly depressed and released with the shift lever in the P (Park) position, a chattering noise near the shift lever may be heard. It is a normal condition.

### ⚠ WARNING

**Always fully depress the brake pedal before and while shifting out of the P (Park) position into another position to avoid inadvertent motion of the vehicle which could injure persons in or around the vehicle.**




**Shift-lock override**

If the shift lever cannot be moved from the P (Park) or N (Neutral) position into R (Reverse) position with the brake pedal depressed, continue depressing the brake, then do the following:

1. Carefully remove the cap covering the shift-lock access hole (1).
2. Insert a key (or screwdriver) into the access hole and press down on the key (or screwdriver).
3. Move the shift lever.
4. Have your vehicle inspected by an authorized KIA dealer immediately.

XM CAN (ENG) 5.qxp 11/26/2009 12:01 PM Page 19



E060103AHM

***Ignition key interlock system***

The ignition key cannot be removed unless the shift lever is in the P (Park) position. Even if the ignition switch is in the LOCK position, the key also cannot be removed.

If your vehicle is equipped with ENGINE START/STOP button, the button will not change to the OFF position unless the shift lever is in the P (Park) position.

E060200AAM

## Good driving practices

- Never move the gear shift lever from P (Park) or N (Neutral) to any other position with the accelerator pedal depressed.
- Never move the gear shift lever into P (Park) when the vehicle is in motion.
- Be sure the vehicle is completely stopped before you attempt to shift into R (Reverse) or D (Drive).
- Never take the vehicle out of gear and coast down a hill. This may be extremely hazardous. Always leave the car in gear when moving.
- Do not "ride" the brakes. This can cause them to overheat and malfunction. Instead, when you are driving down a long hill, slow down and shift to a lower gear. When you do this, engine braking will help slow down the car.
- Slow down before shifting to a lower gear. Otherwise, the lower gear may not be engaged.
- Always use the parking brake. Do not depend on placing the transaxle in P (Park) to keep the vehicle from moving.
- Exercise extreme caution when driving on a slippery surface. Be especially careful when braking, accelerating or shifting gears. On a slippery surface, an abrupt change in vehicle speed can cause the drive wheels to lose traction and the vehicle to go out of control.
- Optimum vehicle performance and economy is obtained by smoothly depressing and releasing the accelerator pedal.

XM CAN (ENG) 5.qxp 11/26/2009 12:01 PM Page 20



**⚠ WARNING**

- **Always buckle-up! In a collision, an unbelted occupant is significantly more likely to be seriously injured or killed than a properly belted occupant.**
- **Avoid high speeds when cornering or turning.**
- **Do not make quick steering wheel movements, such as sharp lane changes or fast, sharp turns.**
- **The risk of rollover is greatly increased if you lose control of your vehicle at highway speeds.**
- **Loss of control often occurs if two or more wheels drop off the roadway and the driver oversteers to reenter the roadway.**
- **In the event your vehicle leaves the roadway, do not steer sharply. Instead, slow down before pulling back into the travel lanes.**
- **Never exceed posted speed limits.**

**⚠ WARNING**

**If your vehicle becomes stuck in snow, mud, sand, etc., then you may attempt to rock the vehicle free by moving it forward and backward. Do not attempt this procedure if people or objects are anywhere near the vehicle. During the rocking operation the vehicle may suddenly move forward of backward as it becomes unstuck, causing injury or damage to nearby people or objects.**

E060203AUN

***Moving up a steep grade from a standing start***

To move up a steep grade from a standing start, depress the brake pedal, shift the shift lever to D (Drive). Select the appropriate gear depending on load weight and steepness of the grade, and release the parking brake. Depress the accelerator gradually while releasing the service brakes.

**When accelerating from a stop on a steep hill, the vehicle may have a tendency to roll backwards. Shifting the shift lever into 2 (Second Gear) will help prevent the vehicle from rolling backwards.**

XM CAN (ENG) 5.qxp 11/26/2009 12:01 PM Page 21



## FOUR WHEEL DRIVE (4WD) (IF EQUIPPED)

Engine power can be delivered to all front and rear wheels for maximum traction. 4WD is useful when extra traction is required on road, such as, when driving on slippery, muddy, wet, or snow-covered roads. These vehicles are not designed for challenging off-road use. Occasional off-road use such as established unpaved roads and trails are OK. It is always important when traveling off-highway that the driver carefully reduces the speed to a level that does not exceed the safe operating speed for those conditions. In general, off-road conditions provide less traction and braking effectiveness than normal road conditions. The driver must be especially alert to avoid driving on slopes which tilt the vehicle to either side.

These factors must be carefully considered when driving off-road. Keeping the vehicle in contact with the driving surface and under control in these conditions is always the driver's responsibility for the safety of him/herself and his or her passengers.

**⚠ WARNING - Off road driving**

**This vehicle is designed primarily for on road use although it can operate effectively off road. However, it was not designed to drive in challenging off-road conditions. Driving in conditions that exceed the vehicle's intended design or the driver's experience level may result in severe injury or death.**

**⚠ WARNING**

**If the 4WD system warning light ( ) illuminates, this indicates that there is a malfunction in the 4WD system.**

**If this occurs, have your vehicle checked by an authorized KIA dealer as soon as possible.**

### Tight corner brake effect

**⚠ CAUTION - 4WD**

***When turning sharply on a paved road at low speed while in four-wheel drive, steering control will be difficult.***

Tight corner brake effect is a unique characteristic of four-wheel drive vehicles caused by the difference in tire rotation at the four wheels and the zero-degree alignment of the front wheels and suspension.

Sharp turns at low speeds should be carried out with caution.

XM CAN (ENG) 5.qxp 11/26/2009 12:01 PM Page 22



### Four Wheel Drive (4WD) transfer mode selection

| Transfer mode | Selection button | Indicator light | Description |
|---|---|---|---|
| **4WD AUTO** (4WD LOCK is deactivated) | | (Indicator light is not illuminated) | • When driving in 4WD AUTO mode, the vehicle operates similar to conventional 2WD vehicles under normal operating conditions. However, if the system determines that there is a need for the 4WD mode, the engine's driving power is distributed to all four wheels automatically without driver intervention.<br>• When driving on normal roads and pavement, the vehicle moves similar to conventional 2WD vehicles. |
| **4WD LOCK** | | LOCK (Indicator light is illuminated) | • This mode is used for climbing or descending sharp grades, off-road driving, driving on sandy and muddy roads, etc., to maximize traction.<br>• This mode automatically begins to deactivate at speeds above 30 km/h (19 mph) and is shifted to 4WD AUTO mode at speed above 40 km/h (25 mph). If the vehicle decelerates to speeds below 30 km/h (19 mph), however, the transfer mode is shifted into 4WD LOCK mode again. |

### ✻ NOTICE

- **When driving on normal roads, deactivate the 4WD LOCK mode by pushing the 4WD LOCK button (the indicator light goes off). Driving on normal roads with 4WD LOCK mode (especially, when cornering) may cause mechanical noise or vibration. The noise and vibration will disappear when the 4WD LOCK mode is deactivated. Some parts of the power train may be damaged by prolonged driving with the noise and vibration.**
- **When the 4WD LOCK mode is deactivated, a shock may be felt as the drive power is delivered entirely to the front wheels. This shock is not a mechanical failure.**

XM CAN (ENG) 5.qxp 11/26/2009 12:01 PM Page 23

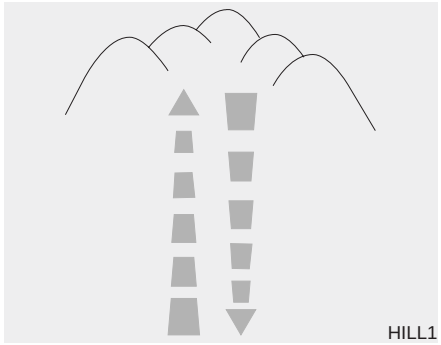


### For safe four-wheel drive operation

**⚠ WARNING - Four-wheel driving**

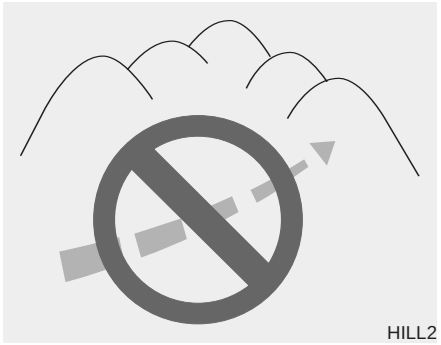
**The conditions of on-road or off-road that demand four-wheel drive mean all functions of your vehicle are exposed to extreme stress than under normal road conditions. Slow down and be ready for changes in the composition and traction of the surface under your tires. If you have any doubt about the safety of the conditions you are facing, stop and consider the best way to proceed. Do not exceed the ability of yourself or your vehicle to operate safely.**

- Do not try to drive in deep standing water or mud since such conditions can stall your engine and clog your exhaust pipes. Do not drive down steep hills since it requires extreme skill to maintain control of the vehicle.



HILL1

- When you are driving up or down hills drive as straight as possible. Use extreme caution in going up or down steep hills, since you may flip your vehicle over depending on the grade, terrain and water/mud conditions.



HILL2

**⚠ WARNING - Hills**

**Driving across the contour of steep hills can be extremely dangerous. This danger can come from slight changes in the wheel angle which can destabilize the vehicle or, even if the vehicle is maintaining stability under power, it can lose that stability if the vehicle stops its forward motion. Your vehicle may roll over without warning and without time for you to correct a mistake that could cause serious injury or death.**

XM CAN (ENG) 5.qxp 11/26/2009 12:01 PM Page 24



- You must consciously take the effort to learn how to corner in a 4WD vehicle. Do not rely on your experience in conventional 2WD vehicles in choosing safe cornering speed in 4WD mode. For starters, you must drive more slowly in 4WD.
- Drive carefully off-road because your vehicle may be damaged by rocks or roots of trees. Become familiar with the off-road conditions where you are going to drive before you begin driving.

**⚠ WARNING - 4WD**

**Reduce speed when you turn corners. The center of gravity of 4WD vehicles is higher than that of conventional 2WD vehicles, making them more likely to roll over when you turn corners too fast.**

OXM059027N

**⚠ WARNING - Steering wheel**

**Do not grab the inside of the steering wheel when you are driving off-road. You may hurt your arm by a sudden steering maneuver or from steering wheel rebound due to impact with objects on the ground. You could lose control of the steering wheel.**

- Always hold the steering wheel firmly when you are driving off-road.
- Make sure all passengers are wearing seat belts.

**⚠ WARNING - Wind danger**

**If you are driving in heavy wind, the vehicle's higher center of gravity decreases your steering control capacity and requires you to drive more slowly.**

- If you need to drive in the water, stop your vehicle, set your transfer to the 4WD LOCK mode and drive at less than 8 km/h (5 mph).

**⚠ WARNING - Driving through water**

**Drive slowly. If you are driving too fast in water, the water can get into the engine compartment and wet the ignition system, causing your vehicle to suddenly stop. If this happens and your vehicle is in a tilted position, your vehicle may roll over.**

XM CAN (ENG) 5.qxp 11/26/2009 12:01 PM Page 25



### ✻ NOTICE

- Do not drive in water if the level is higher than the bottom of the vehicle.
- Check your brake condition once you are out of mud or water. Press the brake pedal several times as you move slowly until you feel normal braking forces return.
- Shorten your scheduled maintenance interval if you drive in off-road conditions such as sand, mud or water. Always wash your vehicle thoroughly after off-road use, especially cleaning the bottom of the vehicle.
- Since the driving torque is always applied to the 4 wheels the performance of the 4WD vehicle is greatly affected by the condition of the tires. Be sure to equip the vehicle with four tires of the same size and type.
- A full time four wheel drive vehicle cannot be towed by an ordinary tow truck. Make sure that the vehicle is placed on a flat bed truck for moving.

### ⚠ WARNING - 4WD driving

- Avoid high cornering speed.
- Do not make quick steering wheel movements, such as sharp lane changes or fast, sharp turns.
- The risk of rollover is greatly increased if you lose control of your vehicle at high speed.
- In a collision, an unbelted person is significantly more likely to die compared to a person wearing a seat belt.
- Loss of control often occurs if two or more wheels drop off the roadway and the driver oversteers to re-enter the roadway. In the event your vehicle leaves the roadway, do not steer sharply. Instead, slow down before pulling back into the travel lanes.

### ⚠ CAUTION - Mud or snow

*If one of the front or rear wheels begins to spin in mud, snow, etc. the vehicle can sometimes be driven out by depressing the accelerator pedal further; however avoid running the engine continuously at high rpm because doing so could damage the 4WD system.*

### ⚠ WARNING - Jacked vehicle

While the full-time 4WD vehicle is being raised on a jack, never start the engine or cause the tires to rotate.

There is the danger that rotating tires touching the ground could cause the vehicle to go off the jack and to jump forward.

XM CAN (ENG) 5.qxp 11/26/2009 12:01 PM Page 26

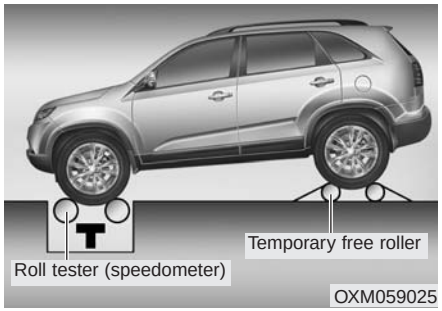


- Full-time 4WD vehicles must be tested on a special four wheel chassis dynamometer.

### ✻ NOTICE

**Never engage the parking brake while performing these tests.**

- A full-time 4WD vehicle should not be tested on a 2WD roll tester. If a 2WD roll tester must be used, perform the following:




1. Check the tire pressures recommended for your vehicle.
2. Place the front wheels on the roll tester for a speedometer test as shown in the illustration.
3. Release the parking brake.
4. Place the rear wheels on the temporary free roller as shown in the illustration.

**⚠ WARNING - Dynamometer testing**

**Keep away from the front of the vehicle while the vehicle is in gear on the dynamometer. This is very dangerous as the vehicle can jump forward and cause serious injury or death.**

XM CAN (ENG) 5.qxp 11/26/2009 12:01 PM Page 27



## BRAKE SYSTEM

E070100AHM

### Power brakes

Your vehicle has power-assisted brakes that adjust automatically through normal usage.

In the event that the power-assisted brakes lose power because of a stalled engine or some other reason, you can still stop your vehicle by applying greater force to the brake pedal than you normally would. The stopping distance, however, will be longer.

When the engine is not running, the reserve brake power is partially depleted each time the brake pedal is applied. Do not pump the brake pedal when the power assist has been interrupted.

Pump the brake pedal only when necessary to maintain steering control on slippery surfaces.

**⚠ WARNING - Brakes**

- **Do not drive with your foot resting on the brake pedal. This will create abnormal high brake temperatures, excessive brake lining and pad wear, and increased stopping distances.**
- **When descending a long or steep hill, shift to a lower gear and avoid continuous application of the brakes. Continuous brake application will cause the brakes to overheat and could result in a temporary loss of braking performance.**
- **Wet brakes may impair the vehicle's ability to safely slow down; the vehicle may also pull to one side when the brakes are applied. Applying the brakes lightly will indicate whether they have been affected in this way. Always test your brakes in this fashion after driving through deep water. To dry the brakes, apply them lightly while maintaining a safe forward speed until brake performance returns to normal.**

E070101AUN

***In the event of brake failure***

If service brakes fail to operate while the vehicle is in motion, you can make an emergency stop with the parking brake. The stopping distance, however, will be much greater than normal.

**⚠ WARNING - Parking brake**

**Applying the parking brake while the vehicle is moving at normal speeds can cause a sudden loss of control of the vehicle. If you must use the parking brake to stop the vehicle, use great caution in applying the brake.**

XM CAN (ENG) 5.qxp 11/26/2009 12:01 PM Page 28



E070102AHM

***Disc brakes wear indicator***

When your brake pads are worn and new pads are required, you will hear a high-pitched warning sound from your front brakes or rear brakes. You may hear this sound come and go or it may occur whenever you depress the brake pedal.

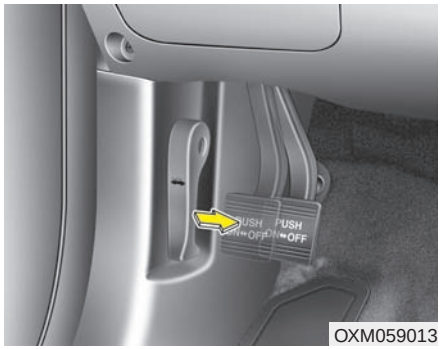
Please remember that some driving conditions or climates may cause a brake squeal when you first apply (or lightly apply) the brakes. This is normal and does not indicate a problem with your brakes.

**⚠ CAUTION**

- ***To avoid costly brake repairs, do not continue to drive with worn brake pads.***
- ***Always replace the front or rear brake pads as pairs.***

**⚠ WARNING - Brake wear**

**This brake wear warning sound means your vehicle needs service. If you ignore this audible warning, you will eventually lose braking performance, which could lead to a serious accident.**



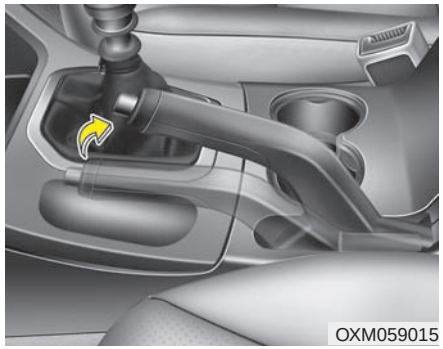
OXM059013

## Parking brake

***Applying the parking brake***

**Foot type**

To engage the parking brake, first apply the foot brake and then depress the parking brake pedal down as far as possible.


OXM059015

E070201AXM

**Hand type**

To engage the parking brake, first apply the foot brake and then without pressing the release button in, pull the parking brake lever up as far as possible.

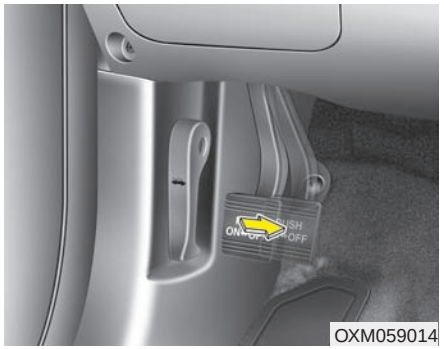
In addition it is recommended that when parking the vehicle on a gradient, the shift lever should be positioned in the appropriate low gear on manual transaxle vehicles.

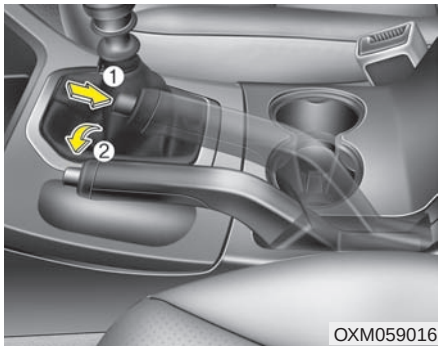
**⚠ CAUTION**

***Driving with the parking brake applied will cause excessive brake pad and brake rotor wear.***

XM CAN (ENG) 5.qxp 11/26/2009 12:02 PM Page 29






### *Releasing the parking brake*

**Foot type**

To release the parking brake, depress the parking brake pedal a second time while applying the foot brake. The pedal will automatically extend to the fully released position.

E070202AFD-U1

**Hand type**

To release the parking brake, first apply the foot brake and pull up the parking brake lever slightly. Secondly press the release button (1) and lower the parking brake lever (2) while holding the button.

**⚠ WARNING**

- **To prevent unintentional movement when stopped and leaving the vehicle, do not use the shift lever instead of the parking brake. Set the parking brake AND make sure the shift lever is securely positioned in 1st (First) gear or R (Reverse) for manual transaxle equipped vehicles and in P (Park) for automatic transaxle equipped vehicles.**
- **Never allow anyone who is unfamiliar with the vehicle to touch the parking brake. If the parking brake is released unintentionally, serious injury may occur.**
- **All vehicles should always have the parking brake fully engaged when parking to avoid inadvertent movement of the vehicle which can injure occupants or pedestrians.**

XM CAN (ENG) 5.qxp 11/26/2009 12:02 PM Page 30

W-75

Check the brake warning light by turning the ignition switch ON (do not start the engine). This light will be illuminated when the parking brake is applied with the ignition switch in the START or ON position.

Before driving, be sure the parking brake is fully released and the brake warning light is off.

If the brake warning light remains on after the parking brake is released while the engine is running, there may be a malfunction in the brake system. Immediate attention is necessary.

If at all possible, cease driving the vehicle immediately. If that is not possible, use extreme caution while operating the vehicle and only continue to drive the vehicle until you can reach a safe location or repair shop.

E070300AHM-EC

## Anti-lock brake system (ABS)

**⚠ WARNING**

**ABS (or ESC) will not prevent accidents due to improper or dangerous driving maneuvers. Even though vehicle control is improved during emergency braking, always maintain a safe distance between you and objects ahead. Vehicle speeds should always be reduced during extreme road conditions.**

**The braking distance for vehicles equipped with an anti-lock braking system (or Electronic Stability Control System) may be longer than for those without it in the following road conditions.**

**During these conditions the vehicle should be driven at reduced speeds:**

- **Rough, gravel or snow-covered roads.**

**(Continued)**

**(Continued)**

- **On roads where the road surface is pitted or has different surface height.**

**The safety features of an ABS (or ESC) equipped vehicle should not be tested by high speed driving or cornering. This could endanger the safety of yourself or others.**

XM CAN (ENG) 5.qxp 11/26/2009 12:02 PM Page 31



The ABS continuously senses the speed of the wheels. If the wheels are going to lock, the ABS system repeatedly modulates the hydraulic brake pressure to the wheels.

When you apply your brakes under conditions which may lock the wheels, you may hear a “tik-tik” sound from the brakes, or feel a corresponding sensation in the brake pedal. This is normal and it means your ABS is active.

In order to obtain the maximum benefit from your ABS in an emergency situation, do not attempt to modulate your brake pressure and do not try to pump your brakes. Press your brake pedal as hard as possible or as hard as the situation allows the ABS to control the force being delivered to the brakes.

### ✻ NOTICE

**A click sound may be heard in the engine compartment when the vehicle begins to move after the engine is started. These conditions are normal and indicate that the anti-lock brake system is functioning properly.**

- Even with the anti-lock brake system, your vehicle still requires sufficient stopping distance. Always maintain a safe distance from the vehicle in front of you.
- Always slow down when cornering. The anti-lock brake system cannot prevent accidents resulting from excessive speeds.
- On loose or uneven road surfaces, operation of the anti-lock brake system may result in a longer stopping distance than for vehicles equipped with a conventional brake system.

W-78

### ⚠ CAUTION

- ***If the ABS warning light is on and stays on, you may have a problem with the ABS. In this case, however, your regular brakes will work normally.***
- ***The ABS warning light will stay on for approximately 3 seconds after the ignition switch is ON. During that time, the ABS will go through self-diagnosis and the light will go off if everything is normal. If the light stays on, you may have a problem with your ABS. Contact an authorized KIA dealer as soon as possible.***

XM CAN (ENG) 5.qxp 11/26/2009 12:02 PM Page 32



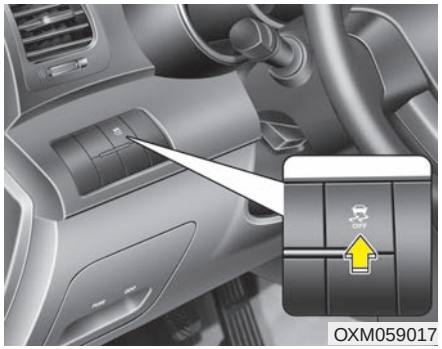
### ⚠ CAUTION

- ***When you drive on a road having poor traction, such as an icy road, and have operated your brakes continuously, the ABS will be active continuously and the ABS warning light may illuminate. Pull your car over to a safe place and stop the engine.***
- ***Restart the engine. If the ABS warning light goes off, then your ABS system is normal. Otherwise, you may have a problem with the ABS. Contact an authorized KIA dealer as soon as possible.***

### ✻ NOTICE

**When you jump start your vehicle because of a drained battery, the engine may not run as smoothly and the ABS warning light may turn on at the same time. This happens because of low battery voltage. It does not mean your ABS has malfunctioned.**

- **Do not pump your brakes!**
- **Have the battery recharged before driving the vehicle.**




E070500AHM-EU

## Electronic stability control (ESC)

The Electronic Stability control (ESC) system is designed to stabilize the vehicle during cornering maneuvers. ESC checks where you are steering and where the vehicle is actually going. ESC applies the brakes on individual wheels and intervenes with the engine management system to stabilize the vehicle.

### ⚠ WARNING

**Never drive too fast according to the road conditions or too quickly when cornering. Electronic stability control (ESC) will not prevent accidents. Excessive speed in turns, abrupt maneuvers and hydroplaning on wet surfaces can still result in serious accidents. Only a safe and attentive driver can prevent accidents by avoiding maneuvers that cause the vehicle to lose traction. Even with ESC installed, always follow all the normal precautions for driving - including driving at safe speeds for the conditions.**

XM CAN (ENG) 5.qxp 11/26/2009 12:02 PM Page 33



The Electronic Stability Control (ESC) system is an electronic system designed to help the driver maintain vehicle control under adverse conditions. It is not a substitute for safe driving practices. Factors including speed, road conditions and driver steering input can all affect whether ESC will be effective in preventing a loss of control. It is still your responsibility to drive and corner at reasonable speeds and to leave a sufficient margin of safety.

When you apply your brakes under conditions which may lock the wheels, you may hear a “tik-tik” sound from the brakes, or feel a corresponding sensation in the brake pedal. This is normal and it means your ESC is active.

### ✻ NOTICE

**A click sound may be heard in the engine compartment when the vehicle begins to move after the engine is started. These conditions are normal and indicate that the Electronic Stability Control System is functioning properly.**

E070501AUN-EU

### *ESC operation*

**ESC ON condition**

- When the ignition is turned ON, ESC and ESC OFF indicator lights illuminate for approximately 3 seconds, then ESC is turned on.
- Press the ESC OFF button for at least half a second after turning the ignition ON to turn ESC off. (ESC OFF indicator will illuminate). To turn the ESC on, press the ESC OFF button (ESC OFF indicator light will go off).
- When starting the engine, you may hear a slight ticking sound. This is the ESC performing an automatic system self-check and does not indicate a problem.

**When operating**

When the ESC is in operation, ESC indicator light blinks.

- When the Electronic Stability Control is operating properly, you can feel a slight pulsation in the vehicle. This is only the effect of brake control and indicates nothing unusual.
- When moving out of the mud or slippery road, pressing the accelerator pedal may not cause the engine rpm (revolutions per minute) to increase.

XM CAN (ENG) 5.qxp 11/26/2009 12:02 PM Page 34



E070502AUN-EU

### *ESC operation off*

**ESC OFF state**

- To cancel ESC operation, press the ESC OFF button (ESC OFF indicator light illuminates).
- If the ignition switch is turned to LOCK position when ESC is off, ESC remains off. Upon restarting the engine, the ESC will automatically turn on again.

■ ESC indicator light

■ ESC OFF indicator light

E070503AAM-EU

### *Indicator light*

When the ignition switch is turned ON, the indicator light illuminates, then goes off if ESC system is operating normally.

The ESC indicator light blinks whenever ESC is operating and illuminates when ESC fails to operate.

The ESC OFF indicator light comes on when the ESC is turned off with the button.

**⚠ CAUTION**

***Driving with varying tire or wheel sizes may cause the ESC system to malfunction. When replacing tires, make sure they are the same size as your original tires.***

**⚠ WARNING**

**The Electronic Stability Control system is only a driving aid; use precautions for safe driving by slowing down on curved, snowy, or icy roads. Drive slowly and don't attempt to accelerate whenever the ESC indicator light is blinking, or when the road surface is slippery.**

XM CAN (ENG) 5.qxp 11/26/2009 12:02 PM Page 35



E070504AAM-EU

*ESC OFF usage*

**When driving**

- It's a good idea to keep the ESC turned on for daily driving whenever possible.
- To turn ESC off while driving, press the ESC OFF button while driving on a flat road surface.

**⚠ WARNING**

**Never press the ESC OFF button while ESC is operating (ESC indicator light blinks).**

**If ESC is turned off while ESC is operating, the vehicle may slip out of control.**

**✻ NOTICE**

- **When operating the vehicle on a dynamometer, ensure that the ESC is turned off (ESC OFF light illuminated). If the ESC is left on, it may prevent the vehicle speed from increasing, and result in false diagnosis.**
- **Turning the ESC off does not affect ABS or brake system operation.**

## Hill-start assist control (HAC) (if equipped)

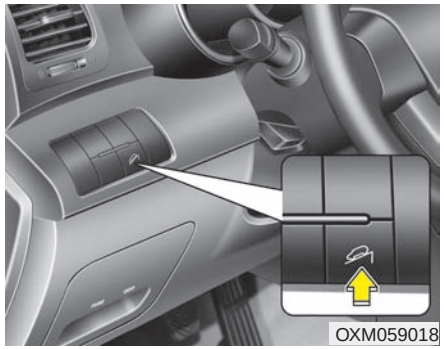
A vehicle has the tendency to roll back on a steep hill when it starts to go after stopping. The Hill-start Assist Control (HAC) prevents the vehicle from rolling back by applying the brakes automatically for about 2 seconds. The brakes are released when the accelerator pedal is depressed or after about 2 seconds.

**⚠ WARNING**

**The HAC is activated only for about 2 seconds, so when the vehicle is starting off always depress the accelerator pedal.**

**✻ NOTICE**

- **The HAC does not operate when the transaxle shift lever is in the P (Park) or N (Neutral) position.**
- **The HAC activates even though the ESC is off but it does not activate when the ESC has malfunctioned.**




## Downhill brake control (DBC) (if equipped)

The Downhill Brake Control (DBC) supports the driver driving down a steep hill without the driver depressing the brake pedal. It slows down the vehicle under 8 km/h (5 mph) and lets the driver concentrate on steering the vehicle.

DBC defaults to the OFF position whenever the ignition is turned on.

The DBC can be turned on or off by pushing the button.

XM CAN (ENG) 5.qxp 11/26/2009 12:02 PM Page 36



| Mode | Indicator light | Description |
|---|---|---|
| **Standby** | illuminated | Press the DBC button when the vehicle speed is under 40 km/h (25 mph). The DBC system will turn ON and enter the standby mode.<br>The system does not turn ON if the vehicle speed is over 40 km/h (25 mph). |
| **Activated** | blinks | In the standby mode, if the vehicle speed is under 35 km/h (22 mph) while driving down a steep hill, the DBC will activate automatically. |
| **Temporarily deactivated** | illuminated | In the activated mode, the DBC will temporarily deactivate under the following conditions:<br>• The hill is not steep enough.<br>• The brake pedal or accelerator pedal is depressed.<br>If the above conditions are gone, the DBC will automatically activate again. |
| **OFF** | not illuminated | The DBC will turn OFF under the following conditions:<br>• The DBC button is pressed again.<br>• The vehicle speed is over 60 km/h (38 mph). |

**⚠ WARNING**

**If the DBC red indicator light illuminates, the system has overheated or something is wrong. The DBC will not activate. If the DBC red indicator light illuminates even though the DBC system has been cooled enough have the system checked by an authorized KIA dealer.**

**✻ NOTICE**

- **The DBC does not turn ON in the P (Park) position.**
- **The DBC may not activate if the ESC (or BAS) is activated.**
- **Noise or vibration may occur from the brakes when the DBC is activated.**
- **The rear stop light comes on when the DBC is activated.**
- **In a very steep hill even though the brake pedal or accelerator pedal is depressed the DBC may not deactivate.**
- **Always turn OFF the DBC on normal roads. The DBC might activate from the standby mode when abrupt corning or driving through speed bumps.**
- **DBC may activate and cause the engine to stop in vehicles with manual transaxle if you drive in 3rd gear (or above) with DBC on. Do not turn on DBC when driving in 3rd gear (or above).**

XM CAN (ENG) 5.qxp 11/26/2009 12:02 PM Page 37



E070600AAM

## Good braking practices

**⚠ WARNING**

- **Whenever you leave or park your vehicle, always set the parking brake as far as possible and shift the vehicle to 1st (First) gear or R (Reverse) for manual transaxle, or P (Park) for automatic transaxle. If the parking brake is not fully engaged, the vehicle may move inadvertently and injure yourself and others.**
- **All vehicles should always have the parking brake fully engaged when parking to avoid inadvertent movement of the vehicle which can injure occupants or pedestrians.**

- Check to be sure the parking brake is not engaged and the parking brake indicator light is out before driving away.
- Driving through water may get the brakes wet. They can also get wet when the vehicle is washed. Wet brakes can be dangerous! Your vehicle will not stop as quickly if the brakes are wet. Wet brakes may cause the vehicle to pull to one side.

  To dry the brakes, apply the brakes lightly until the braking action returns to normal, taking care to keep the vehicle under control at all times. If the braking action does not return to normal, stop as soon as it is safe to do so and call an authorized KIA dealer for assistance.
- Don't coast down hills with the vehicle out of gear. This is extremely hazardous. Keep the vehicle in gear at all times, use the brakes to slow down, then shift to a lower gear so that engine braking will help you maintain a safe speed.
- Don't "ride" the brake pedal. Resting your foot on the brake pedal while driving can be dangerous because the brakes might overheat and lose their effectiveness. It also increases the wear of the brake components.
- If a tire goes flat while you are driving, apply the brakes gently and keep the vehicle pointed straight ahead while you slow down. When you are moving slowly enough for it to be safe to do so, pull off the road and stop in a safe place.

XM CAN (ENG) 5.qxp 11/26/2009 12:02 PM Page 38

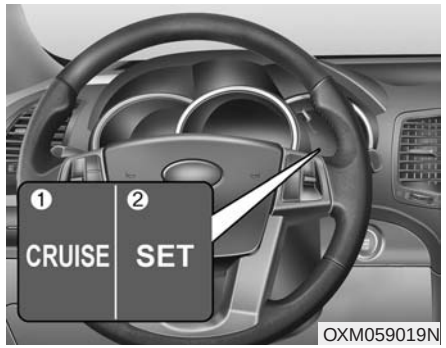


- If your vehicle is equipped with an automatic transaxle, don't let your vehicle creep forward. To avoid creeping forward, keep your foot firmly on the brake pedal when the vehicle is stopped.
- Be cautious when parking on a hill. Firmly engage the parking brake and place the shift lever in P (automatic transaxle) or in first or reverse gear (manual transaxle). If your vehicle is facing downhill, turn the front wheels into the curb to help keep the vehicle from rolling. If your vehicle is facing uphill, turn the front wheels away from the curb to help keep the vehicle from rolling. If there is no curb or if it is required by other conditions to keep the vehicle from rolling, block the wheels.
- Under some conditions your parking brake can freeze in the engaged position. This is most likely to happen when there is an accumulation of snow or ice around or near the rear brakes or if the brakes are wet. If there is a risk that the parking brake may freeze, apply it only temporarily while you put the shift lever in P (automatic transaxle) or in first or reverse gear (manual transaxle) and block the rear wheels so the vehicle cannot roll. Then release the parking brake.
- Do not hold the vehicle on the upgrade with the accelerator pedal. This can cause the transaxle to overheat. Always use the brake pedal or parking brake.

XM CAN (ENG) 5.qxp 11/26/2009 12:02 PM Page 39



## CRUISE CONTROL SYSTEM (IF EQUIPPED)




1. Cruise indicator
2. Cruise set indicator

E090000AAM-EU

The cruise control system allows you to program the vehicle to maintain a constant speed without pressing the accelerator pedal.

This system is designed to function above approximately 40 km/h (25 mph).

### ⚠ WARNING

- **If the cruise control is left on (CRUISE indicator light in the instrument cluster illuminated), the cruise control can be switched on accidentally. Keep the cruise control system off (CRUISE indicator light OFF) when the cruise control is not in use, to avoid inadvertently setting a speed.**
- **Use the cruise control system only when traveling on open highways in good weather.**
- **Do not use the cruise control when it may not be safe to keep the vehicle at a constant speed, for instance, driving in heavy or varying traffic, or on slippery (rainy, icy or snow-covered) or winding roads or over 6% up-hill or down-hill roads.**
- **Pay particular attention to the driving conditions whenever using the cruise control system.**
- **Be careful when driving downhill using the cruise control system, which may increase the vehicle speed.**

### ⚠ CAUTION

***During cruise-speed driving of a manual transaxle vehicle, do not shift into neutral without depressing the clutch pedal, since the engine will be overrevved. If this happens, depress the clutch pedal or release the cruise control ON-OFF switch.***

### ✻ NOTICE

**During normal cruise control operation, when the SET switch is activated or reactivated after applying the brakes, the cruise control will energize after approximately 3 seconds. The delay is normal.**

XM CAN (ENG) 5.qxp 11/26/2009 12:02 PM Page 40

OXM059020N

E090100AUN-KM

### To set cruise control speed:

1. Push the cruise ON-OFF button on the steering wheel, to turn the system on. The CRUISE indicator light in the instrument cluster will illuminate.
2. Accelerate to the desired speed, which must be more than 40 km/h (25 mph).

OXM059021N

3. Push the - SET switch, and release it at the desired speed. The SET indicator light in the instrument cluster will illuminate. Release the accelerator at the same time. The desired speed will automatically be maintained.

*On a steep grade, the vehicle may slow down or speed up slightly while going downhill.*

OXM059022N

E090200AAM-EU

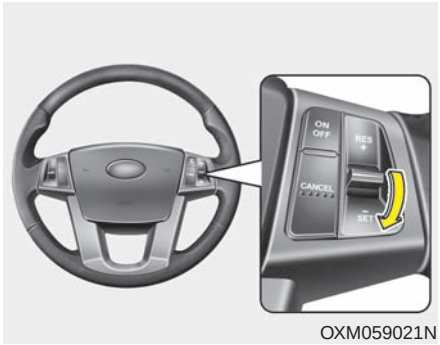
### To increase cruise control set speed:

Follow either of these procedures:

- Push the RES + switch and hold it. Your vehicle will accelerate. Release the switch at the speed you want.
- Push the RES + switch and release it immediately. The cruising speed will increase by 2.0 km/h (1.2 mph) each time the RES + switch is operated in this manner.

XM CAN (ENG) 5.qxp 11/26/2009 12:02 PM Page 41






OXM059021N

E090300AAM-EU

### To decrease the cruising speed:

Follow either of these procedures:

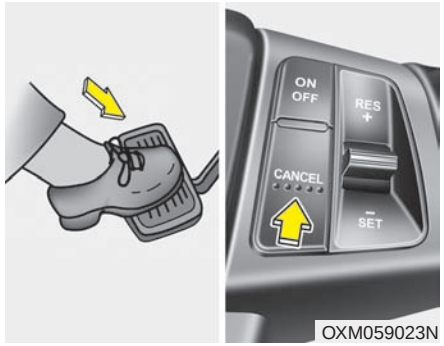
- Push the - SET switch and hold it. Your vehicle will gradually slow down. Release the switch at the speed you want to maintain.
- Push the - SET switch and release it immediately. The cruising speed will decrease by 2.0 km/h (1.2 mph) each time the - SET switch is operated in this manner.

E090400AUN

### To temporarily accelerate with the cruise control on:

If you want to speed up temporarily when the cruise control is on, depress the accelerator pedal. Increased speed will not interfere with cruise control operation or change the set speed.

To return to the set speed, take your foot off the accelerator.




OXM059023N

E090500AAM-EU

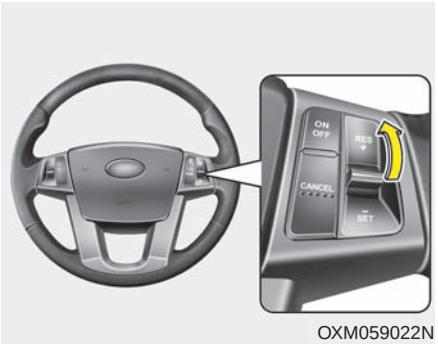
### To cancel cruise control, do one of the following:

- Press the brake pedal.
- Press the clutch pedal with a manual transaxle.
- Shift into N (Neutral) with an automatic transaxle.
- Push the CANCEL switch located on the steering wheel.
- Decrease the vehicle speed lower than the memory speed by 20 km/h (12 mph).
- Decrease the vehicle speed to less than approximately 40 km/h (25 mph).

XM CAN (ENG) 5.qxp 11/26/2009 12:02 PM Page 42



*Each of these actions will cancel cruise control operation (the SET indicator light in the instrument cluster will go off), but it will not turn the system off. If you wish to resume cruise control operation, push the RES + switch located on your steering wheel. You will return to your previously preset speed.*



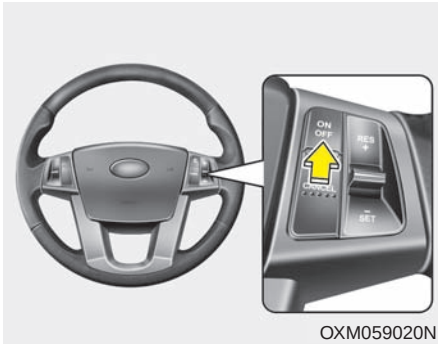

OXM059022N

E090600AAM-EU

**To resume cruising speed at more than approximately 40 km/h (25 mph):**

If any method other than the cruise ON-OFF switch was used to cancel cruising speed and the system is still activated, the most recent set speed will automatically resume when the RES + switch is pushed.

It will not resume, however, if the vehicle speed has dropped below approximately 40 km/h (25 mph).




OXM059020N

E090700AUN-KM

**To turn cruise control off, do one of the following:**

- Push the cruise ON-OFF button (the CRUISE indicator light in the instrument cluster will go off).
- Turn the ignition off.

*Both of these actions will cancel the cruise control operation. If you want to resume the cruise control operation, repeat the steps provided in "To set cruise control speed" on the previous page.*

XM CAN (ENG) 5.qxp 11/26/2009 12:02 PM Page 43



## ECONOMICAL OPERATION

E100000AHM-EU

Your vehicle's fuel economy depends mainly on your style of driving, where you drive and when you drive.

Each of these factors affects how many kilometers (miles) you can get from a liter (gallon) of fuel. To operate your vehicle as economically as possible, use the following driving suggestions to help save money in both fuel and repairs:

- Drive smoothly. Accelerate at a moderate rate. Don't make "jack-rabbit" starts or full-throttle shifts and maintain a steady cruising speed. Don't race between stoplights. Try to adjust your speed to the traffic so you don't have to change speeds unnecessarily. Avoid heavy traffic whenever possible. Always maintain a safe distance from other vehicles so you can avoid unnecessary braking. This also reduces brake wear.
- Drive at a moderate speed. The faster you drive, the more fuel your vehicle uses. Driving at a moderate speed, especially on the highway, is one of the most effective ways to reduce fuel consumption.
- Don't "ride" the brake pedal. This can increase fuel consumption and also increase wear on these components. In addition, driving with your foot resting on the brake pedal may cause the brakes to overheat, which reduces their effectiveness and may lead to more serious consequences.
- Take care of your tires. Keep them inflated to the recommended pressure. Incorrect inflation, either too much or too little, results in unnecessary tire wear. Check the tire pressures at least once a month.
- Be sure that the wheels are aligned correctly. Improper alignment can result from hitting curbs or driving too fast over irregular surfaces. Poor alignment causes faster tire wear and may also result in other problems as well as greater fuel consumption.
- Keep your vehicle in good condition. For better fuel economy and reduced maintenance costs, maintain your vehicle in accordance with the maintenance schedule in section 7. If you drive your vehicle in severe conditions, more frequent maintenance is required (see section 7 for details).
- Keep your vehicle clean. For maximum service, your vehicle should be kept clean and free of corrosive materials. It is especially important that mud, dirt, ice, etc. not be allowed to accumulate on the underside of the vehicle. This extra weight can result in increased fuel consumption and also contribute to corrosion.
- Travel lightly. Don't carry unnecessary weight in your vehicle. Weight reduces fuel economy.
- Don't let the engine idle longer than necessary. If you are waiting (and not in traffic), turn off your engine and restart only when you're ready to go.

XM CAN (ENG) 5.qxp 11/26/2009 12:02 PM Page 44



- Remember, your vehicle does not require extended warm-up. After the engine has started, allow the engine to run for 10 to 20 seconds prior to placing the vehicle in gear. In very cold weather, however, give your engine a slightly longer warm-up period.
- Don't "lug" or "over-rev" the engine. Lugging is driving too slowly in a very high gear resulting in engine bucking. If this happens, shift to a lower gear. Over-revving is racing the engine beyond its safe limit. This can be avoided by shifting at the recommended speed.
- Use your air conditioning sparingly. The air conditioning system is operated by engine power so your fuel economy is reduced when you use it.
- Open windows at high speeds can reduce fuel economy.
- Fuel economy is less in crosswinds and headwinds. To help offset some of this loss, slow down when driving in these conditions.

Keeping a vehicle in good operating condition is important both for economy and safety. Therefore, have an authorized KIA dealer perform scheduled inspections and maintenance.

**⚠ WARNING - Engine off during motion**

**Never turn the engine off to coast down hills or anytime the vehicle is in motion. The power steering and power brakes will not function properly without the engine running. Instead, keep the engine on and downshift to an appropriate gear for engine braking effect. In addition, turning off the ignition while driving could engage the steering wheel lock resulting in loss of vehicle steering which could cause serious injury or death.**

XM CAN (ENG) 5.qxp 11/26/2009 12:02 PM Page 45



## SPECIAL DRIVING CONDITIONS

E110100AHM-EC

### Hazardous driving conditions

When hazardous driving conditions are encountered such as water, snow, ice, mud, sand, or similar hazards, follow these suggestions:

- Drive cautiously and allow extra distance for braking.
- Avoid sudden braking or steering.
- When braking with non-ABS brakes pump the brake pedal with a light up-and-down motion until the vehicle is stopped.

**⚠ WARNING - ABS**

**Do not pump the brake pedal on a vehicle equipped with ABS.**

- If stalled in snow, mud, or sand, use second gear. Accelerate slowly to avoid spinning the drive wheels.
- Use sand, rock salt, or other non-slip material under the drive wheels to provide traction when stalled in ice, snow, or mud.

**⚠ WARNING - Downshifting**

**Downshifting with an automatic transaxle, while driving on slippery surfaces can cause an accident. The sudden change in tire speed could cause the tires to skid. Be careful when downshifting on slippery surfaces.**

E170800AHM

### Reducing the risk of a rollover

This multi-purpose passenger vehicle is defined as a Sports Utility Vehicle (SUV). SUV's have higher ground clearance and a narrower track to make them capable of performing in a wide variety of off-road applications. Specific design characteristics give them a higher center of gravity than ordinary vehicles. An advantage of the higher ground clearance is a better view of the road, which allows you to anticipate problems. They are not designed for cornering at the same speeds as conventional passenger vehicles, any more than low-slung sports vehicles are designed to perform satisfactorily in off-road conditions. Due to this risk, driver and passengers are strongly recommended to buckle their seat belts. In a rollover crash, an unbelted person is more likely to die than a person wearing a seat belt. There are steps that a driver can make to reduce the risk of a rollover. If at all possible, avoid sharp turns or abrupt maneuvers, do not load your roof rack with heavy cargo, and never modify your vehicle in any way.

XM CAN (ENG) 5.qxp 11/26/2009 12:02 PM Page 46



**⚠ WARNING - Rollover**

**As with other Sports Utility Vehicle (SUV), failure to operate this vehicle correctly may result in loss of control, an accident or vehicle rollover.**

- **Utility vehicles have a significantly higher rollover rate than other types of vehicles.**
- **Specific design characteristics (higher ground clearance, narrower track, etc.) give this vehicle a higher center of gravity than ordinary vehicles.**
- **A SUV is not designed for cornering at the same speeds as conventional vehicles.**
- **Avoid sharp turns or abrupt maneuvers.**
- **In a rollover crash, an unbelted person is significantly more likely to die than a person wearing a seat belt. Make sure everyone in the vehicle is properly buckled up.**

E170600AHM

**⚠ WARNING**

**Your vehicle is equipped with tires designed to provide safe ride and handling capability. Do not use a size and type of tire and wheel that is different from the one that is originally installed on your vehicle. It can affect the safety and performance of your vehicle, which could lead to steering failure or rollover and serious injury. When replacing the tires, be sure to equip all four tires with the tire and wheel of the same size, type, tread, brand and load-carrying capacity. If you nevertheless decide to equip your vehicle with any tire/wheel combination not recommended by KIA for off road driving, you should not use these tires for highway driving.**

E110200AAM-EU

## Rocking the vehicle

If it is necessary to rock the vehicle to free it from snow, sand, or mud, first turn the steering wheel right and left to clear the area around your front wheels. Then, shift back and forth between 1st (First) and R (Reverse) in vehicles equipped with a manual transaxle or R (Reverse) and any forward gear in vehicles equipped with an automatic transaxle. Do not race the engine, and spin the wheels as little as possible. If you are still stuck after a few tries, have the vehicle pulled out by a tow vehicle to avoid engine overheating and possible damage to the transaxle.

**⚠ CAUTION**

***Prolonged rocking may cause engine overheating, transaxle damage or failure, and tire damage.***

XM CAN (ENG) 5.qxp 11/26/2009 12:02 PM Page 47



**⚠ WARNING - Spinning tires**

**Do not spin the wheels, especially at speeds more than 56 km/h (35 mph). Spinning the wheels at high speeds when the vehicle is stationary could cause a tire to overheat which could result in tire damage that may injure bystanders.**

**✻ NOTICE**

**The ESC system (if equipped) should be turned OFF prior to rocking the vehicle.**

**⚠ WARNING**

**If your vehicle becomes stuck in snow, mud, sand, etc., then you may attempt to rock the vehicle free by moving it forward and backward. Do not attempt this procedure if people or objects are anywhere near the vehicle. During the rocking operation the vehicle may suddenly move forward of backward as it becomes unstuck, causing injury or damage to nearby people or objects.**

OUN056051

E110300AUN

## Smooth cornering

Avoid braking or gear changing in corners, especially when roads are wet. Ideally, corners should always be taken under gentle acceleration. If you follow these suggestions, tire wear will be held to a minimum.

OCM053010

E110400AUN

## Driving at night

Because night driving presents more hazards than driving in the daylight, here are some important tips to remember:

- Slow down and keep more distance between you and other vehicles, as it may be more difficult to see at night, especially in areas where there may not be any street lights.

XM CAN (ENG) 5.qxp 11/26/2009 12:02 PM Page 48



- Adjust your mirrors to reduce the glare from other driver's headlights.
- Keep your headlights clean and properly aimed on vehicles not equipped with the automatic headlight aiming feature. Dirty or improperly aimed headlights will make it much more difficult to see at night.
- Avoid staring directly at the headlights of oncoming vehicles. You could be temporarily blinded, and it will take several seconds for your eyes to readjust to the darkness.

1VQA3003

E110500AUN

## Driving in the rain

Rain and wet roads can make driving dangerous, especially if you're not prepared for the slick pavement. Here are a few things to consider when driving in the rain:

- A heavy rainfall will make it harder to see and will increase the distance needed to stop your vehicle, so slow down.
- Keep your windshield wiping equipment in good shape. Replace your windshield wiper blades when they show signs of streaking or missing areas on the windshield.
- If your tires are not in good condition, making a quick stop on wet pavement can cause a skid and possibly lead to an accident. Be sure your tires are in good shape.
- Turn on your headlights to make it easier for others to see you.
- Driving too fast through large puddles can affect your brakes. If you must go through puddles, try to drive through them slowly.
- If you believe you may have gotten your brakes wet, apply them lightly while driving until normal braking operation returns.

E110600AUN

## Driving in flooded areas

Avoid driving through flooded areas unless you are sure the water is no higher than the bottom of the wheel hub. Drive through any water slowly. Allow adequate stopping distance because brake performance may be affected.

After driving through water, dry the brakes by gently applying them several times while the vehicle is moving slowly.

XM CAN (ENG) 5.qxp 11/26/2009 12:02 PM Page 49



E110700AHM

## Highway driving

### *Tires*

Adjust the tire inflation pressures to specification. Low tire inflation pressures will result in overheating and possible failure of the tires.

Avoid using worn or damaged tires which may result in reduced traction or tire failure.

**✻ NOTICE**

**Never exceed the maximum tire inflation pressure shown on the tires.**

**⚠ WARNING**

- **Underinflated or overinflated tires can cause poor handling, loss of vehicle control, and sudden tire failure leading to accidents, injuries, and even death. Always check tires for proper inflation before driving. For proper tire pressures, refer to "Tires and wheels" in section 8.**
- **Driving on tires with no or insufficient tread is dangerous. Worn-out tires can result in loss of vehicle control, collisions, injury, and even death. Worn-out tires should be replaced as soon as possible and should never be used for driving. Always check the tire tread before driving your car. For further information and tread limits, refer to "Tires and wheels" in section 7.**

### *Fuel, engine coolant and engine oil*

High speed travel consumes more fuel than urban motoring. Do not forget to check both the engine coolant and engine oil.

### *Drive belt*

A loose or damaged drive belt may result in overheating of the engine.

XM CAN (ENG) 5.qxp 11/26/2009 12:02 PM Page 50



## WINTER DRIVING

E120000ASA

Severe weather conditions in the winter result in greater wear and other problems. To minimize the problems of winter driving, you should follow these suggestions:

E120100AUN-EC

### Snowy or icy conditions

To drive your vehicle in deep snow, it may be necessary to use snow tires on your tires. If snow tires are needed, it is necessary to select tires equivalent in size and type of the original equipment tires. Failure to do so may adversely affect the safety and handling of your vehicle. Furthermore, speeding, rapid acceleration, sudden brake applications, and sharp turns are potentially very hazardous practices.

During deceleration, use engine braking to the fullest extent. Sudden brake applications on snowy or icy roads may cause skids to occur. You need to keep sufficient distance between the vehicle in operation in front and your vehicle. Also, apply the brake gently.

E120101AUN

#### *Snow tires*

If you mount snow tires on your vehicle, make sure they are radial tires of the same size and load range as the original tires. Mount snow tires on all four wheels to balance your vehicle's handling in all weather conditions. Keep in mind that the traction provided by snow tires on dry roads may not be as high as your vehicle's original equipment tires. You should drive cautiously even when the roads are clear. Check with the tire dealer for maximum speed recommendations.

**⚠ WARNING - Snow tire size**

**Snow tires should be equivalent in size and type to the vehicle's standard tires. Otherwise, the safety and handling of your vehicle may be adversely affected.**

*Do not install studded tires without first checking local, state and municipal regulations for possible restrictions against their use.*

XM CAN (ENG) 5.qxp 11/26/2009 12:02 PM Page 51



E120200AUN

### Use high quality ethylene glycol coolant

Your vehicle is delivered with high quality ethylene glycol coolant in the cooling system. It is the only type of coolant that should be used because it helps prevent corrosion in the cooling system, lubricates the water pump and prevents freezing. Be sure to replace or replenish your coolant in accordance with the maintenance schedule in section 7. Before winter, have your coolant tested to assure that its freezing point is sufficient for the temperatures anticipated during the winter.

E120300AUN

### Check battery and cables

Winter puts additional burdens on the battery system. Visually inspect the battery and cables as described in section 7. The level of charge in your battery can be checked by an authorized KIA dealer or a service station.

E120400BUN

### Change to "winter weight" oil if necessary

In some climates it is recommended that a lower viscosity "winter weight" oil be used during cold weather. See section 8 for recommendations. If you aren't sure what weight oil you should use, consult an authorized KIA dealer.

E120500AUN

### Check spark plugs and ignition system

Inspect your spark plugs as described in section 7 and replace them if necessary. Also check all ignition wiring and components to be sure they are not cracked, worn or damaged in any way.

E120600AUN

### To keep locks from freezing

To keep the locks from freezing, squirt an approved de-icer fluid or glycerine into the key opening. If a lock is covered with ice, squirt it with an approved de-icing fluid to remove the ice. If the lock is frozen internally, you may be able to thaw it out by using a heated key. Handle the heated key with care to avoid injury.

E120700AUN

### Use approved window washer anti-freeze in system

To keep the water in the window washer system from freezing, add an approved window washer anti-freeze solution in accordance with instructions on the container. Window washer anti-freeze is available from an authorized KIA dealer and most auto parts outlets. Do not use engine coolant or other types of anti-freeze as these may damage the paint finish.

XM CAN (ENG) 5.qxp 11/26/2009 12:02 PM Page 52



E120800AAM

### Don’t let your parking brake freeze

Under some conditions your parking brake can freeze in the engaged position. This is most likely to happen when there is an accumulation of snow or ice around or near the rear brakes or if the brakes are wet. If there is a risk the parking brake may freeze, apply it only temporarily while you put the gear shift lever in P (Park, automatic transaxle) or in first or reverse gear (manual transaxle) and block the rear wheels so the vehicle cannot roll. Then release the parking brake.

E120900AHM

### Don't let ice and snow accumulate underneath

Under some conditions, snow and ice can build up under the fenders and interfere with the steering. When driving in severe winter conditions where this may happen, you should periodically check underneath the vehicle to be sure the movement of the front wheels and the steering components are not obstructed.

.

E121000ASA-EC

### Carry emergency equipment

Depending on the severity of the weather, you should carry appropriate emergency equipment. Some of the items you may want to carry include tow straps or chains, flashlight, emergency flares, sand, shovel, jumper cables, window scraper, gloves, ground cloth, coveralls, blanket, etc.

XM CAN (ENG) 5.qxp 11/26/2009 12:02 PM Page 53



## TRAILER TOWING

E140000AFD

If you are considering towing with your vehicle, you should first check with your country's Department of Motor Vehicles to determine their legal requirements.

Since laws vary the requirements for towing trailers, cars, or other types of vehicles or apparatus may differ. Ask an authorized KIA dealer for further details before towing.

**⚠ WARNING - Towing a trailer**

**If you don't use the correct equipment and/or drive improperly, you can lose control when you pull a trailer. For example, if the trailer is too heavy, the brakes may not work well - or even at all. You and your passengers could be seriously or fatally injured. Pull a trailer only if you have followed all the steps in this section.**

**⚠ WARNING - Weight limits**

**Before towing, make sure the total trailer weight, GCW (gross combination weight), GVW (gross vehicle weight), GAW (gross axle weight) and trailer tongue load are all within the limits.**

**⚠ CAUTION**

***Pulling a trailer improperly can damage your vehicle and result in costly repairs not covered by your warranty. To pull a trailer correctly, follow the advice in this section.***

Your vehicle can tow a trailer. To identify what the vehicle trailering capacity is for your vehicle, you should read the information in “Weight of the trailer” that appears later in this section.

Remember that trailering is different than just driving your vehicle by itself. Trailering means changes in handling, durability, and fuel economy. Successful, safe trailering requires correct equipment, and it has to be used properly.

This section contains many time-tested, important trailering tips and safety rules. Many of these are important for your safety and that of your passengers. Please read this section carefully before you pull a trailer.

Load-pulling components such as the engine, transaxle, wheel assemblies, and tires are forced to work harder against the load of the added weight. The engine is required to operate at relatively higher speeds and under greater loads. This additional burden generates extra heat. The trailer also adds considerably to wind resistance, increasing the pulling requirements.

XM CAN (ENG) 5.qxp 11/26/2009 12:02 PM Page 54



E140100AUN

## Hitches

It's important to have the correct hitch equipment. Crosswinds, large trucks going by, and rough roads are a few reasons why you'll need the right hitch. Here are some rules to follow:

- Will you have to make any holes in the body of your vehicle when you install a trailer hitch? If you do, then be sure to seal the holes later when you remove the hitch.

  If you don't seal them, deadly carbon monoxide (CO) from your exhaust can get into your vehicle, as well as dirt and water.
- The bumpers on your vehicle are not intended for hitches. Do not attach rental hitches or other bumper-type hitches to them. Use only a frame-mounted hitch that does not attach to the bumper.
- KIA trailer hitch accessory is available at an authorized KIA dealer.

E140200AUN

## Safety chains

You should always attach chains between your vehicle and your trailer. Cross the safety chains under the tongue of the trailer so that the tongue will not drop to the road if it becomes separated from the hitch.

Instructions about safety chains may be provided by the hitch manufacturer or by the trailer manufacturer. Follow the manufacturer's recommendation for attaching safety chains. Always leave just enough slack so you can turn with your trailer. And, never allow safety chains to drag on the ground.

E140300AUN

## Trailer brakes

If your trailer is equipped with a braking system, make sure it conforms to your country's regulations and that it is properly installed and operating correctly.

If your trailer weight exceeds the maximum allowed weight without trailer brakes, then the trailer will also require its own brakes as well. Be sure to read and follow the instructions for the trailer brakes so you'll be able to install, adjust and maintain them properly.

- Don't tap into or modify your vehicle's brake system.

**⚠ WARNING - Trailer brakes**

**Do not use a trailer with its own brakes unless you are absolutely certain that you have properly set up the brake system. This is not a task for amateurs. Use an experienced, competent trailer shop for this work.**

XM CAN (ENG) 5.qxp 11/26/2009 12:02 PM Page 55



E140400AUN

## Driving with a trailer

Towing a trailer requires a certain amount of experience. Before setting out for the open road, you must get to know your trailer. Acquaint yourself with the feel of handling and braking with the added weight of the trailer. And always keep in mind that the vehicle you are driving is now a good deal longer and not nearly so responsive as your vehicle is by itself.

Before you start, check the trailer hitch and platform, safety chains, electrical connector(s), lights, tires and mirror adjustment. If the trailer has electric brakes, start your vehicle and trailer moving and then apply the trailer brake controller by hand to be sure the brakes are working. This lets you check your electrical connection at the same time.

During your trip, check occasionally to be sure that the load is secure, and that the lights and any trailer brakes are still working.

E140401AUN

### *Following distance*

Stay at least twice as far behind the vehicle ahead as you would when driving your vehicle without a trailer. This can help you avoid situations that require heavy braking and sudden turns.

E140402AUN

### *Passing*

You'll need more passing distance up ahead when you're towing a trailer. And, because of the increased vehicle length, you'll need to go much farther beyond the passed vehicle before you can return to your lane. Due to the added load to the engine when going uphill the vehicle may also take longer to pass than it would on flat ground.

E140403AUN

### *Backing up*

Hold the bottom of the steering wheel with one hand. Then, to move the trailer to the left, just move your hand to the left. To move the trailer to the right, move your hand to the right. Always back up slowly and, if possible, have someone guide you.

E140404AUN

### *Making turns*

When you're turning with a trailer, make wider turns than normal. Do this so your trailer won't strike soft shoulders, curbs, road signs, trees, or other objects near the edge of the road. Avoid jerky or sudden maneuvers. Signal well in advance before turning or lane changes.

XM CAN (ENG) 5.qxp 11/26/2009 12:02 PM Page 56



E140405AFD

### *Turn signals when towing a trailer*

When you tow a trailer, your vehicle has to have a different turn signal flasher and extra wiring. The green arrows on your instrument panel will flash whenever you signal a turn or lane change. Properly connected, the trailer lights will also flash to alert other drivers you're about to turn, change lanes, or stop.

When towing a trailer, the green arrows on your instrument panel will flash for turns even if the bulbs on the trailer are burned out. Thus, you may think drivers behind you are seeing your signals when, in fact, they are not. It's important to check occasionally to be sure the trailer bulbs are still working. You must also check the lights every time you disconnect and then reconnect the wires.

Do not connect a trailer lighting system directly to your vehicle's lighting system. Use only an approved trailer wiring harness.

An authorized KIA dealer can assist you in installing the wiring harness.

**⚠ WARNING**

**Failure to use an approved trailer wiring harness could result in damage to the vehicle electrical system and/or personal injury.**

E140406AFD

### *Driving on grades*

Reduce speed and shift to a lower gear before you start down a long or steep downgrade. If you don't shift down, you might have to use your brakes so much that they would get hot and no longer operate efficiently.

On a long uphill grade, shift down and reduce your speed to around 70 km/h (45 mph) to reduce the possibility of engine and transaxle overheating.

If your trailer weighs more than the maximum trailer weight without trailer brakes and you have an automatic transaxle, you should drive in D (Drive) when towing a trailer.

Operating your vehicle in D (Drive) when towing a trailer will minimize heat build up and extend the life of your transaxle.

XM CAN (ENG) 5.qxp 12/9/2009 12:00 PM Page 57



**⚠ CAUTION**

- ***When towing a trailer on steep grades (in excess of 6%) pay close attention to the engine coolant temperature gauge to ensure the engine does not overheat.***

  ***If the needle of the coolant temperature gauge moves across the dial towards "H" (HOT), pull over and stop as soon as it is safe to do so, and allow the engine to idle until it cools down. You may proceed once the engine has cooled sufficiently.***
- ***You must decide driving speed depending on trailer weight and uphill grade to reduce the possibility of engine and transaxle overheating.***

E140407AUN-EA

### *Parking on hills*

Generally, if you have a trailer attached to your vehicle, you should not park your vehicle on a hill. People can be seriously or fatally injured, and both your vehicle and the trailer can be damaged if they unexpectedly roll downhill.

**⚠ WARNING - Parking on a hill**

**Parking your vehicle on a hill with a trailer attached could cause serious injury or death, should the trailer break loose or brake stops working.**

However, if you ever have to park your trailer on a hill, here's how to do it:

1. Pull the vehicle into the parking space. Turn the steering wheel in the direction of the curb (right if headed downhill, left if headed up hill).
2. If the vehicle has a manual transaxle, place the car in neutral. If the vehicle has an automatic transaxle, place the car in P (Park).
3. Set the parking brake and shut off the vehicle.
4. Place chocks under the trailer wheels on the down hill side of the wheels.
5. Start the vehicle, hold the brakes, shift to neutral, release the parking brake and slowly release the brakes until the trailer chocks absorb the load.
6. Reapply the brakes, reapply the parking brake and shift the vehicle to R (Reverse) for manual transaxle or P (Park) for automatic transaxle.
7. Shut off the vehicle and release the vehicle brakes but leave the parking brake set.

**⚠ WARNING - Parking brake**

**It can be dangerous to get out of your vehicle if the parking brake is not firmly set.**

**If you have left the engine running, the vehicle can move suddenly. You or others could be seriously or fatally injured.**

XM CAN (ENG) 5.qxp 11/26/2009 12:02 PM Page 58



**When you are ready to leave after parking on a hill**

1. With the manual transaxle in Neutral or automatic transaxle in P (Park), apply your brakes and hold the brake pedal down while you:
   - Start your engine;
   - Shift into gear; and
   - Release the parking brake.
2. Slowly remove your foot from the brake pedal.
3. Drive slowly until the trailer is clear of the chocks.
4. Stop and have someone pick up and store the chocks.

E140500AUN

## Maintenance when trailer towing

Your vehicle will need service more often when you regularly pull a trailer. Important items to pay particular attention to include engine oil, automatic transaxle fluid, axle lubricant and cooling system fluid. Brake condition is another important item to frequently check. Each item is covered in this manual, and the Index will help you find them quickly. If you're trailering, it's a good idea to review these sections before you start your trip.

Don't forget to also maintain your trailer and hitch. Follow the maintenance schedule that accompanied your trailer and check it periodically. Preferably, conduct the check at the start of each day's driving. Most importantly, all hitch nuts and bolts should be tight.

### ⚠ CAUTION

- ***Due to higher load during trailer usage, overheating might occur in hot days or during uphill driving. If the coolant gauge indicates over-heating, switch off the A/C and stop the vehicle in a safe area to cool down the engine.***
- ***When towing check transaxle fluid more frequently.***

XM CAN (ENG) 5.qxp 5/11/2010 5:53 PM Page 59



E140600BFD

## If you do decide to pull a trailer

Here are some important points if you decide to pull a trailer:

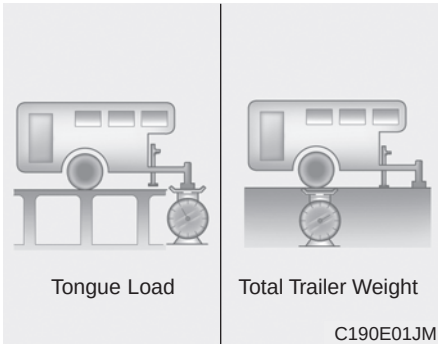
- Consider using a sway control. You can ask a hitch dealer about sway control.
- Do not do any towing with your car during its first 2,000 km (1,200 miles) in order to allow the engine to properly break in. Failure to heed this caution may result in serious engine or transaxle damage.
- When towing a trailer, be sure to consult an authorized KIA dealer for further information on additional requirements such as a towing kit, etc.
- Always drive your vehicle at a moderate speed (less than 100 km/h (60 mph)).
- On a long uphill grade, do not exceed 70 km/h (45 mph) or the posted towing speed limit, whichever is lower.
- The chart contains important considerations that have to do with weight:

kg (lbs.)

| Item \ Engine | | Gasoline Engine | |
|---|---|---|---|
| | | **2.4L** | **3.5L** |
| Maximum trailer weight | Without brake system | 750 (1650) | 750 (1650) |
| | With brake system | N/A | 1588 (3500) |
| Maximum tongue weight | | 159 (350) | 159 (350) |

N/A : Not applicable

To identify what the vehicle trailering capacity is for your vehicle, you should read the information in “Weight of the Trailer” that appears later in this section.

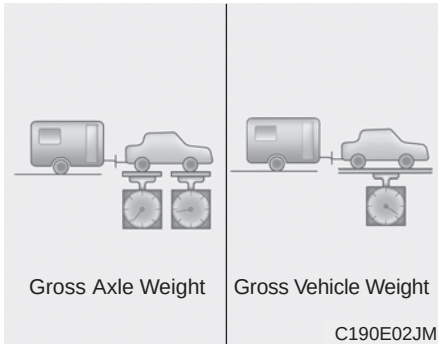



E140601AUN

### *Weight of the trailer*

What is the maximum safe weight of a trailer? It should never weigh more than the maximum trailer weight with trailer brakes. But even that can be too heavy.

It depends on how you plan to use your trailer. For example, speed, altitude, road grades, outside temperature and how often your vehicle is used to pull a trailer are all important. The ideal trailer weight can also depend on any special equipment that you have on your vehicle.




E140602AEN

### *Weight of the trailer tongue*

The tongue load of any trailer is an important weight to measure because it affects the total gross vehicle weight (GVW) of your vehicle. This weight includes the curb weight of the vehicle, any cargo you may carry in it, and the people who will be riding in the vehicle. And if you will tow a trailer, you must add the tongue load to the GVW because your vehicle will also be carrying that weight.

The trailer tongue should weigh a maximum of 10% of the total loaded trailer weight, within the limits of the maximum permissible trailer tongue load. After you've loaded your trailer, weigh the trailer and then the tongue, separately, to see if the weights are proper. If they aren't, you may be able to correct them simply by moving some items around in the trailer.

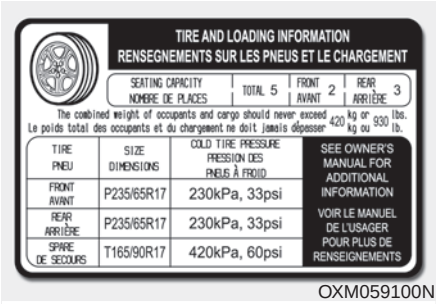
XM CAN (ENG) 5.qxp 11/26/2009 12:03 PM Page 61



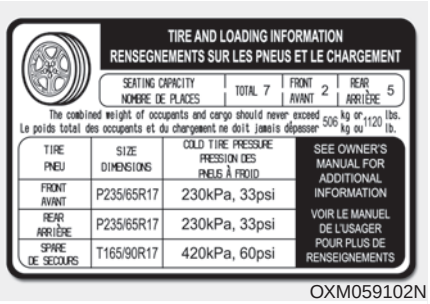
**⚠ WARNING - Trailer**

- **Never load a trailer with more weight in the rear than in the front. The front should be loaded with approximately 60% of the total trailer load; the rear should be loaded with approximately 40% of the total trailer load.**
- **Never exceed the maximum weight limits of the trailer or trailer towing equipment. Improper loading can result in damage to your vehicle and/or personal injury. Check weights and loading at a commercial scale or highway patrol office equipped with scales.**
- **An improperly loaded trailer can cause loss of vehicle control.**

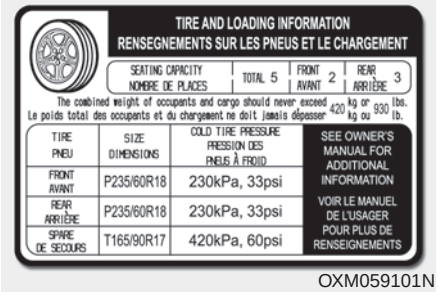
## VEHICLE LOAD LIMIT


TIRE AND LOADING INFORMATION
RENSEGNEMENTS SUR LES PNEUS ET LE CHARGEMENT
SEATING CAPACITY NOMBRE DE PLACES
TOTAL 5
FRONT AVANT 2
REAR ARRIÈRE 3
The combined weight of occupants and cargo should never exceed 420 kg or 930 lbs.
Le poids total des occupants et du chargement ne doit jamais dépasser 420 kg ou 930 lb.
TIRE PNEU
SIZE DIMENSIONS
COLD TIRE PRESSURE PRESSION DES PNEUS À FROID
SEE OWNER'S MANUAL FOR ADDITIONAL INFORMATION
VOIR LE MANUEL DE L'USAGER POUR PLUS DE RENSEIGNEMENTS
FRONT AVANT
P235/65R17
230kPa, 33psi
REAR ARRIÈRE
P235/65R17
230kPa, 33psi
SPARE DE SECOURS
T165/90R17
420kPa, 60psi

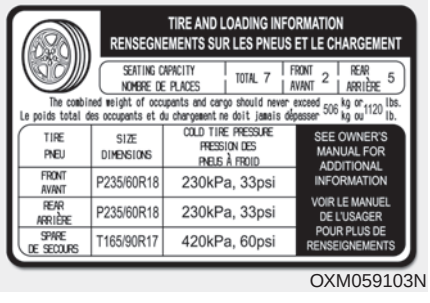
OXM059100N


TIRE AND LOADING INFORMATION
RENSEGNEMENTS SUR LES PNEUS ET LE CHARGEMENT
SEATING CAPACITY NOMBRE DE PLACES
TOTAL 7
FRONT AVANT 2
REAR ARRIÈRE 5
The combined weight of occupants and cargo should never exceed 506 kg or 1120 lbs.
Le poids total des occupants et du chargement ne doit jamais dépasser 506 kg ou 1120 lb.
TIRE PNEU
SIZE DIMENSIONS
COLD TIRE PRESSURE PRESSION DES PNEUS À FROID
SEE OWNER'S MANUAL FOR ADDITIONAL INFORMATION
VOIR LE MANUEL DE L'USAGER POUR PLUS DE RENSEIGNEMENTS
FRONT AVANT
P235/65R17
230kPa, 33psi
REAR ARRIÈRE
P235/65R17
230kPa, 33psi
SPARE DE SECOURS
T165/90R17
420kPa, 60psi

OXM059102N


TIRE AND LOADING INFORMATION
RENSEGNEMENTS SUR LES PNEUS ET LE CHARGEMENT
SEATING CAPACITY NOMBRE DE PLACES
TOTAL 5
FRONT AVANT 2
REAR ARRIÈRE 3
The combined weight of occupants and cargo should never exceed 420 kg or 930 lbs.
Le poids total des occupants et du chargement ne doit jamais dépasser 420 kg ou 930 lb.
TIRE PNEU
SIZE DIMENSIONS
COLD TIRE PRESSURE PRESSION DES PNEUS À FROID
SEE OWNER'S MANUAL FOR ADDITIONAL INFORMATION
VOIR LE MANUEL DE L'USAGER POUR PLUS DE RENSEIGNEMENTS
FRONT AVANT
P235/60R18
230kPa, 33psi
REAR ARRIÈRE
P235/60R18
230kPa, 33psi
SPARE DE SECOURS
T165/90R17
420kPa, 60psi

OXM059101N


TIRE AND LOADING INFORMATION
RENSEGNEMENTS SUR LES PNEUS ET LE CHARGEMENT
SEATING CAPACITY NOMBRE DE PLACES
TOTAL 7
FRONT AVANT 2
REAR ARRIÈRE 5
The combined weight of occupants and cargo should never exceed 506 kg or 1120 lbs.
Le poids total des occupants et du chargement ne doit jamais dépasser 506 kg ou 1120 lb.
TIRE PNEU
SIZE DIMENSIONS
COLD TIRE PRESSURE PRESSION DES PNEUS À FROID
SEE OWNER'S MANUAL FOR ADDITIONAL INFORMATION
VOIR LE MANUEL DE L'USAGER POUR PLUS DE RENSEIGNEMENTS
FRONT AVANT
P235/60R18
230kPa, 33psi
REAR ARRIÈRE
P235/60R18
230kPa, 33psi
SPARE DE SECOURS
T165/90R17
420kPa, 60psi

OXM059103N

E150100AUN

### Tire and loading information label

The label located on the driver's door sill gives the original tire size, cold tire pressures recommended for your vehicle, the number of people that can be in your vehicle and vehicle capacity weight.

E150101AXM

***Vehicle capacity weight:***

5 persons : 420 kg (930 lbs.)

7 persons : 506 kg (1120 lbs.)

Vehicle capacity weight is the maximum combined weight of occupants and cargo. If your vehicle is equipped with a trailer, the combined weight includes the tongue load.

E150102AXM

***Seating capacity:***

Total - 5 persons
(Front seat : 2 persons,
Rear seat : 3 persons)

- 7 persons
(Front seat : 2 persons,
Rear seat : 5 persons)

Seating capacity is the maximum number of occupants including a driver, your vehicle may carry.

However, the seating capacity may be reduced based upon the weight of all of the occupants, and the weight of the cargo being carried or towed.

Do not overload the vehicle as there is a limit to the total weight, or load limit including occupants and cargo, the vehicle can carry.

XM CAN (ENG) 5.qxp 5/6/2010 5:13 PM Page 63



E150103AXM

***Towing capacity:***

- 2.4L Engine

  With/without trailer brakes

  : 750 kg (1650 lbs.)

- 3.5L Engine

  Without trailer brakes

  : 750 kg (1650 lbs.)

  With trailer brakes

  - without trailer package

    : 907kg (2000 lbs.)

  - with trailer package

    : 1588 kg (3500 lbs.)

Towing capacity is the maximum trailer weight including its cargo weight, your vehicle can tow.

E150104AUN

***Cargo capacity:***

The cargo capacity of your vehicle will increase or decrease depending on the weight and the number of occupants and the tongue load, if your vehicle is equipped with a trailer.

E150105AUN-C1

***Steps for determining correct load limit***

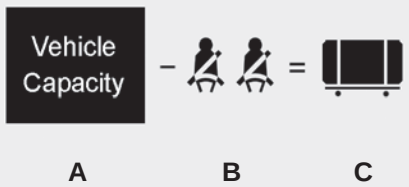
1. Locate the statement "The combined weight of occupants and cargo should never exceed XXX kg or XXX lbs." on your vehicle's placard.
2. Determine the combined weight of the driver and passengers that will be riding in your vehicle.
3. Subtract the combined weight of the driver and passengers from XXX kg or XXX lbs.
4. The resulting figure equals the available amount of cargo and luggage load capacity. For example, if the "XXX" amount equals 635 kg (1400 lbs.) and there will be five 68 kg (150 lbs.) passengers in your vehicle, the amount of available cargo and luggage load capacity is 295 kg (650 lbs).

   (635-340 (5 x 68) = 295 kg or 1400-750 (5 x 150) = 650 lbs.)
5. Determine the combined weight of luggage and cargo being loaded on the vehicle. That weight may not safely exceed the available cargo and luggage load capacity calculated in Step 4.
6. If your vehicle will be towing a trailer, load from your trailer will be transferred to your vehicle. Consult this manual to determine how this reduces the available cargo and luggage load capacity of your vehicle.

XM CAN (ENG) 5.qxp 11/26/2009 12:03 PM Page 64



**Example 1**




C190F01JM

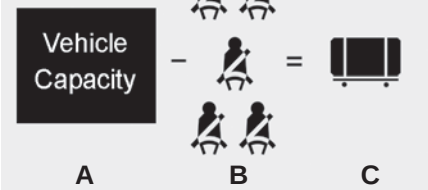
| Item | Description | Total |
|---|---|---|
| A | Vehicle Capacity Weight | 635 kg (1400 lbs) |
| B | Subtract Occupant Weight 68 kg (150 lbs) × 2 | 136 kg (300 lbs) |
| C | Available Cargo and Luggage weight | 499 kg (1100 lbs) |

**Example 2**

C190F02JM

| Item | Description | Total |
|---|---|---|
| A | Vehicle Capacity Weight | 635 kg (1400 lbs) |
| B | Subtract Occupant Weight 68 kg (150 lbs) × 5 | 340 kg (750 lbs) |
| C | Available Cargo and Luggage weight | 295 kg (650 lbs) |

**Example 3**




C190F03JM

| Item | Description | Total |
|---|---|---|
| A | Vehicle Capacity Weight | 635 kg (1400 lbs) |
| B | Subtract Occupant Weight 78 kg (172 lbs) × 5 | 390 kg (860 lbs) |
| C | Available Cargo and Luggage weight | 245 kg (540 lbs) |

Refer to your vehicle's tire and loading information label for specific information about your vehicle's capacity weight and seating positions. The combined weight of the driver, passengers and cargo should never exceed your vehicle's capacity weight.

XM CAN (ENG) 5.qxp 11/26/2009 12:03 PM Page 65



E150200AUN

### Certification label

The certification label is located on the driver's door sill at the center pillar.

This label shows the maximum allowable weight of the fully loaded vehicle. This is called the GVWR (Gross Vehicle Weight Rating). The GVWR includes the weight of the vehicle, all occupants, fuel and cargo.

This label also tells you the maximum weight that can be supported by the front and rear axles, called Gross Axle Weight Rating (GAWR).

To find out the actual loads on your front and rear axles, you need to go to a weigh station and weigh your vehicle. Your dealer can help you with this. Be sure to spread out your load equally on both sides of the centerline.

**⚠ WARNING - Over loading**

- **Never exceed the GVWR for your vehicle, the GAWR for either the front or rear axle and vehicle capacity weight. Exceeding these ratings can cause an accident or vehicle damage. You can calculate the weight of your load by weighing the items (or people) before putting them in the vehicle. Be careful not to overload your vehicle.**
- **Do not load your vehicle any heavier than the GVWR, either the maximum front or rear GAWR and vehicle capacity weight. If you do, parts, including tires on your vehicle can break, and it can change the way your vehicle handles and braking ability. This could cause you to lose control and crash. Also, overloading can shorten the life of your vehicle.**

The label will help you decide how much cargo and installed equipment your vehicle can carry.

If you carry items inside your vehicle - like suitcases, tools, packages, or anything else - they are moving as fast as the vehicle. If you have to stop or turn quickly, or if there is a crash, the items will keep going and can cause an injury if they strike the driver or a passenger.

XM CAN (ENG) 5.qxp 11/26/2009 12:03 PM Page 66



**⚠ WARNING**

- **Overloading your vehicle can cause heat buildup in your vehicle's tires and possible tire failure that could lead to a crash.**
- **Overloading your vehicle can cause increased stopping distances that could lead to a crash.**
- **A crash resulting from poor handling vehicle damage, tire failure, or increased stopping distances could result in serious injury or death.**

**⚠ CAUTION**

- ***Overloading your vehicle may cause damage. Repairs would not be covered by your warranty. Do not overload your vehicle.***
- ***Using heavier suspension components to get added durability might not change your weight ratings. Ask your dealer to help you load your vehicle the right way.***

**⚠ WARNING - Loose cargo**

**Items you carry inside your vehicle can strike and injure occupants in a sudden stop or turn, or in a crash.**

- **Put items in the cargo area of your vehicle. Try to spread the weight evenly.**
- **Never stack items, like suitcases, inside the vehicle above the tops of the seats.**
- **Do not leave an unsecured child restraint in your vehicle.**
- **When you carry something inside the vehicle, secure it.**
- **Do not drive with a seat folded down unless necessary.**

XM CAN (ENG) 5.qxp 11/26/2009 12:03 PM Page 67



## VEHICLE WEIGHT GLOSSARY

E160000AUN

This section will guide you in the proper loading of your vehicle and/or trailer, to keep your loaded vehicle weight within its design rating capability, with or without a trailer. Properly loading your vehicle will provide maximum return of the vehicle design performance. Before loading your vehicle, familiarize yourself with the following terms for determining your vehicle's weight ratings, with or without a trailer, from the vehicle's specifications and the certification label:

E160100AUN

**Base curb weight**

This is the weight of the vehicle including a full tank of fuel and all standard equipment. It does not include passengers, cargo, or optional equipment.

E160200AUN

**Vehicle curb weight**

This is the weight of your new vehicle when you picked it up from your dealer plus any aftermarket equipment.

E160300AUN

**Cargo weight**

This figure includes all weight added to the Base Curb Weight, including cargo and optional equipment.

E160400AUN

**GAW (Gross axle weight)**

This is the total weight placed on each axle (front and rear) - including vehicle curb weight and all payload.

E160500AUN

**GAWR (Gross axle weight rating)**

This is the maximum allowable weight that can be carried by a single axle (front or rear). These numbers are shown on the certification label.
The total load on each axle must never exceed its GAWR.

E160600AUN

**GVW (Gross vehicle weight)**

This is the Base Curb Weight plus actual Cargo Weight plus passengers.

E160700AUN-EU

**GVWR (Gross vehicle weight rating)**

This is the maximum allowable weight of the fully loaded vehicle (including all options, equipment, passengers and cargo). The GVWR is shown on the certification label located on the driver's door sill.

XM CAN (ENG) 6.QXP 11/26/2009 12:05 PM Page 1

**Road warning / 6-2**
**In case of an emergency while driving / 6-2**
**If the engine will not start / 6-3**
**Emergency starting / 6-4**
**If the engine overheats / 6-6**
**If you have a flat tire / 6-7**
**Towing / 6-16**

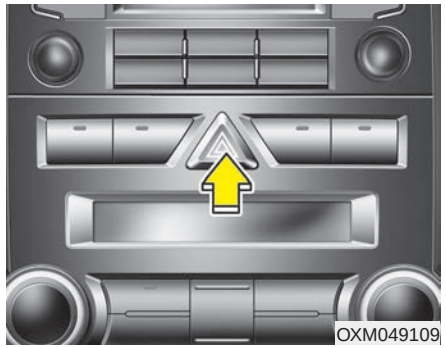
# What to do in an emergency

*6*

XM CAN (ENG) 6.QXP 11/26/2009 12:05 PM Page 2



## ROAD WARNING




F010100ASA

### Hazard warning flasher

The hazard warning flasher serves as a warning to other drivers to exercise extreme caution when approaching, overtaking, or passing your vehicle.

It should be used whenever emergency repairs are being made or when the vehicle is stopped near the edge of a roadway.

Depress the flasher switch with the ignition switch in any position. The flasher switch is located in the center console switch panel. All turn signal lights will flash simultaneously.

- The hazard warning flasher operates whether your vehicle is running or not.
- The turn signals do not work when the hazard flasher is on.
- Care must be taken when using the hazard warning flasher while the vehicle is being towed.

## IN CASE OF AN EMERGENCY WHILE DRIVING

F020100AUN-EU

### If the engine stalls at a crossroad or crossing

If the engine stalls at a crossroad or crossing, set the shift lever in the N (Neutral) position and then push the vehicle to a safe place.

F020200AUN

### If you have a flat tire while driving

If a tire goes flat while you are driving:

1. Take your foot off the accelerator pedal and let the vehicle slow down while driving straight ahead. Do not apply the brakes immediately or attempt to pull off the road as this may cause a loss of control. When the vehicle has slowed to such a speed that it is safe to do so, brake carefully and pull off the road. Drive off the road as far as possible and park on a firm level ground. If you are on a divided highway, do not park in the median area between the two traffic lanes.

XM CAN (ENG) 6.QXP 11/26/2009 12:05 PM Page 3



2. When the vehicle is stopped, turn on your emergency hazard flashers, set the parking brake and put the transaxle in P (Park, automatic transaxle) or reverse (manual transaxle).
3. Have all passengers get out of the vehicle. Be sure they all get out on the side of the car that is away from traffic.
4. When changing a flat tire, follow the instruction provided later in this section.

F020300AUN

### If the engine stalls while driving

1. Reduce your speed gradually, keeping a straight line. Move cautiously off the road to a safe place.
2. Turn on your emergency flashers.
3. Try to start the engine again. If your vehicle will not start, contact an authorized KIA dealer or seek other qualified assistance.

## IF THE ENGINE WILL NOT START

F030100AAM

### If engine doesn't turn over or turns over slowly

1. If your car has an automatic transaxle, be sure the shift lever is in N (Neutral) or P (Park) and the emergency brake is set.
2. Check the battery connections to be sure they are clean and tight.
3. Turn on the interior light. If the light dims or goes out when you operate the starter, the battery is discharged.
4. Check the starter connections to be sure they are securely tightened.
5. Do not push or pull the vehicle to start it. See instructions for "Jump starting".

**⚠ WARNING**

**If the engine will not start, do not push or pull the vehicle to start it. This could result in a collision or cause other damage. In addition, push or pull starting may cause the catalytic converter to overload and create a fire hazard.**

F030200AHM

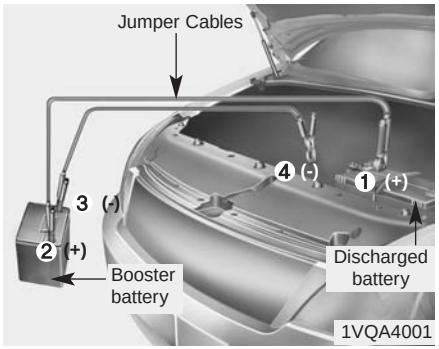
### If engine turns over normally but does not start

1. Check the fuel level.
2. With the ignition switch in the LOCK position, check all connectors at the ignition coils and spark plugs. Reconnect any that may be disconnected or loose.
3. Check the fuel line in the engine compartment.
4. If the engine still does not start, call an authorized KIA dealer or seek other qualified assistance.

XM CAN (ENG) 6.QXP 11/26/2009 12:05 PM Page 4



## EMERGENCY STARTING




F040000AUN

Connect cables in numerical order and disconnect in reverse order.

F040100AHM-U1

### Jump starting

Jump starting can be dangerous if done incorrectly. Therefore, to avoid harm to yourself or damage to your vehicle or battery, follow these jump starting procedures. If in doubt, we strongly recommend that you have a competent technician or towing service jump start your vehicle.

**⚠ CAUTION**

***Use only a 12-volt jumper system. You can damage a 12-volt starting motor, ignition system, and other electrical parts beyond repair by use of a 24-volt power supply (either two 12-volt batteries in series or a 24-volt motor generator set).***

**⚠ WARNING - Battery**

**Never attempt to check the electrolyte level of the battery as this may cause the battery to rupture or explode causing serious injury.**

**⚠ WARNING - Battery**

- **Keep all flames or sparks away from the battery. The battery produces hydrogen gas which may explode if exposed to flame or sparks.**
  **If these instructions are not followed exactly, serious personal injury and damage to the vehicle may occur! If you are not sure how to follow this procedure, seek qualified assistance. Automobile batteries contain sulfuric acid. This is poisonous and highly corrosive. When jump starting, wear protective glasses and be careful not to get acid on yourself, your clothing or on the vehicle.**
- **Do not attempt to jump start the vehicle if the discharged battery is frozen or if the electrolyte level is low; the battery may rupture or explode.**

XM CAN (ENG) 6.QXP 11/26/2009 12:05 PM Page 5



F040101ASA

***Jump starting procedure***

1. Make sure the booster battery is 12-volt and that its negative terminal is grounded.
2. If the booster battery is in another vehicle, do not allow the vehicles to come in contact.
3. Turn off all unnecessary electrical loads.
4. Connect the jumper cables in the exact sequence shown in the illustration. First connect one end of a jumper cable to the positive terminal of the discharged battery (1), then connect the other end to the positive terminal of the booster battery (2).

   Proceed to connect one end of the other jumper cable to the negative terminal of the booster battery (3), then the other end to a solid, stationary, metallic point (for example, the engine lifting bracket) away from the battery (4). Do not connect it to or near any part that moves when the engine is cranked.

   Do not allow the jumper cables to contact anything except the correct battery terminals or the correct ground. Do not lean over the battery when making connections.

**⚠ CAUTION - Battery cables**

***Do not connect the jumper cable from the negative terminal of the booster battery to the negative terminal of the discharged battery. This can cause the discharged battery to overheat and crack, releasing battery acid.***

5. Start the engine of the vehicle with the booster battery and let it run at 2,000 rpm, then start the engine of the vehicle with the discharged battery.

*If the cause of your battery discharging is not apparent, you should have your vehicle checked by an authorized KIA dealer.*

F040200AAM-EU

## Push-starting

Vehicles equipped with automatic transaxle and manual transaxle vehicles equipped with clutch lock system cannot be push-started.

Follow the directions in this section for jump-starting.

**⚠ WARNING**

**Never tow a vehicle to start it because the sudden surge forward when the engine starts could cause a collision with the tow vehicle.**

XM CAN (ENG) 6.QXP 11/26/2009 12:05 PM Page 6



## IF THE ENGINE OVERHEATS

F050000AAM

If your temperature gauge indicates overheating, you experience a loss of power, or hear loud pinging or knocking, the engine will probably be too hot. If this happens, you should:

1. Pull off the road and stop as soon as it is safe to do so.
2. Place the shift lever in P (Park, automatic transaxle) or Neutral (manual transaxle) and set the parking brake. If the air conditioning is on, turn it off.
3. If engine coolant is running out under the vehicle or steam is coming out from underneath the hood, stop the engine. Do not open the hood until the coolant has stopped running or the steaming has stopped. If there is no visible loss of engine coolant and no steam, leave the engine running and check to be sure the engine cooling fan is operating. If the fan is not running, turn the engine off.
4. Check to see if the water pump drive belt is missing. If it is not missing, check to see that it is tight. If the drive belt seems to be satisfactory, check for coolant leaking from the radiator, hoses or under the vehicle. (If the air conditioning had been in use, it is normal for cold water to be draining from it when you stop).

**⚠ WARNING**

**While the engine is running, keep hair, hands and clothing away from moving parts such as the fan and drive belts to prevent injury.**

5. If the water pump drive belt is broken or engine coolant is leaking out, stop the engine immediately and call the nearest authorized KIA dealer for assistance.

**⚠ WARNING**

**Do not remove the radiator cap when the engine is hot. This may result in coolant being blown out of the opening and cause serious burns.**

6. If you cannot find the cause of the overheating, wait until the engine temperature has returned to normal. Then, if coolant has been lost, carefully add coolant to the reservoir to bring the fluid level in the reservoir up to the halfway mark.
7. Proceed with caution, keeping alert for further signs of overheating. If overheating happens again, call an authorized KIA dealer for assistance.

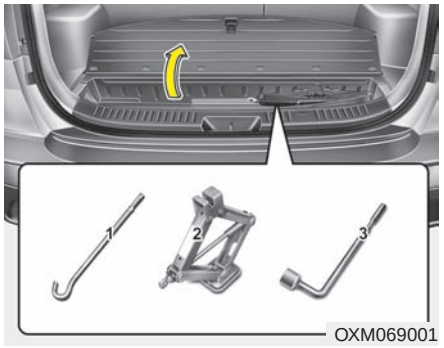
**⚠ CAUTION**

***Serious loss of coolant indicates there is a leak in the cooling system and this should be checked as soon as possible by an authorized KIA dealer.***

XM CAN (ENG) 6.QXP 11/26/2009 12:05 PM Page 7



## IF YOU HAVE A FLAT TIRE




F070100AEN

### Jack and tools

The jack, jack handle, wheel lug nut wrench are stored in the luggage compartment.

Pull up the luggage box cover to reach this equipment.

(1) Jack handle

(2) Jack

(3) Wheel lug nut wrench

F070101AAM

***Jacking instructions***

The jack is provided for emergency tire changing only.

To prevent the jack from “rattling” while the vehicle is in motion, store it properly.

Follow jacking instructions to reduce the possibility of personal injury.

**⚠ WARNING - Changing tires**

- **Never attempt vehicle repairs in the traffic lanes of a public road or highway.**
- **Always move the vehicle completely off the road and onto the shoulder before trying to change a tire. The jack should be used on a firm level ground. If you cannot find a firm, level place off the road, call a towing service company for assistance.**
- **Be sure to use the correct front and rear jacking positions on the vehicle; never use the bumpers or any other part of the vehicle for jack support.**

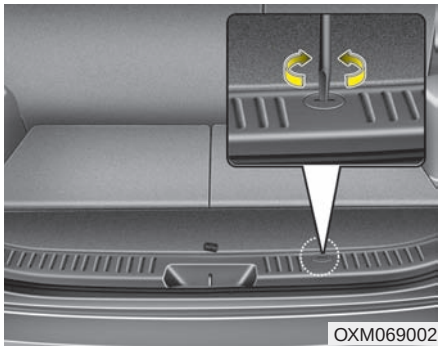
**(Continued)**

XM CAN (ENG) 6.QXP 11/26/2009 12:05 PM Page 8



**(Continued)**

- **The vehicle can easily roll off the jack causing serious injury or death. No person should place any portion of their body under a vehicle that is supported only by a jack; use vehicle support stands.**
- **Do not start or run the engine while the vehicle is on the jack.**
- **Do not allow anyone to remain in the vehicle while it is on the jack.**
- **Make sure any children present are in a secure place away from the road and from the vehicle to be raised with the jack.**

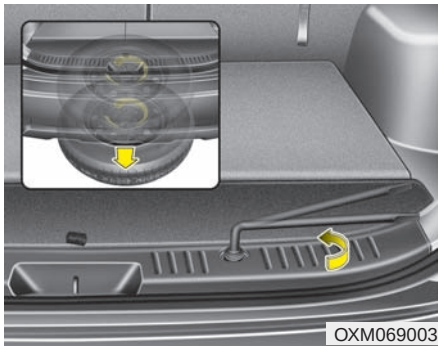

OXM069002

**Removing and storing the spare tire**

Your spare tire is stored underneath your vehicle, directly below the cargo area.

To remove the spare tire:

1. Open the tailgate.
2. Find the plastic hex bolt cover and remove the cover with a flat head object or coin.

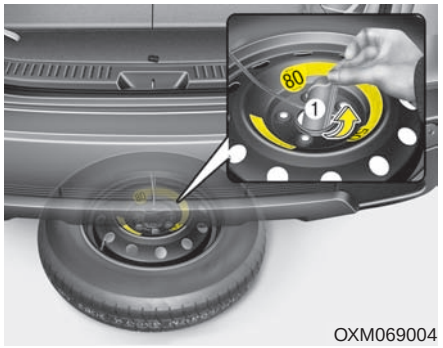

OXM069003

3. Use the wheel lug nut wrench to loosen the bolt enough to lower the spare tire.

   Turn the wrench counterclockwise until the spare tire reaches the ground.

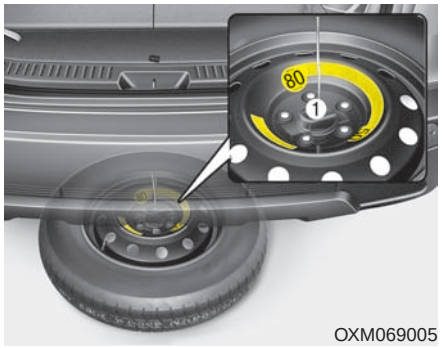
XM CAN (ENG) 6.QXP 11/26/2009 12:06 PM Page 9





OXM069004

4. After the spare tire reaches the ground, continue to turn the wrench counterclockwise, and draw the spare tire outside. Never rotate the wrench excessively, otherwise the spare tire carrier may be damaged.
5. Remove the retainer (1) from the center of the spare tire.



OXM069005

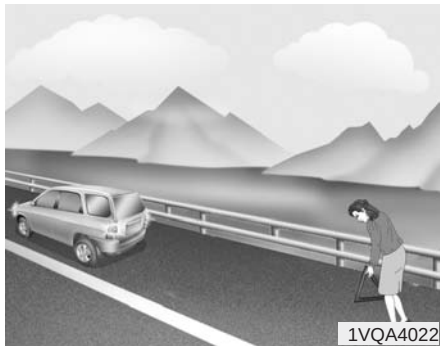
To store the spare tire:

1. Lay the tire on the ground with the valve stem facing up.
2. Place the wheel under the vehicle and install the retainer (1) through the wheel center.
3. Turn the wrench clockwise until it clicks.

**⚠ WARNING**

**Ensure the spare tire retainer is properly aligned with the center of the spare tire to prevent the spare tire from "rattling".**

**Otherwise, it may cause the spare tire to fall off the carrier and lead to an accident.**


1VQA4022

F070300AAM-EU-U1

### Changing tires

1. Park on a level surface and apply the parking brake firmly.
2. Place the transaxle shift lever in R (Reverse) with manual transaxle or P (Park) with automatic transaxle.
3. Activate the hazard warning flasher.

XM CAN (ENG) 6.QXP 11/26/2009 12:06 PM Page 10

4. Remove the wheel lug nut wrench, jack, jack handle, and spare tire from the vehicle.
5. Block both the front and rear of the wheel that is diagonally opposite from the jack position.

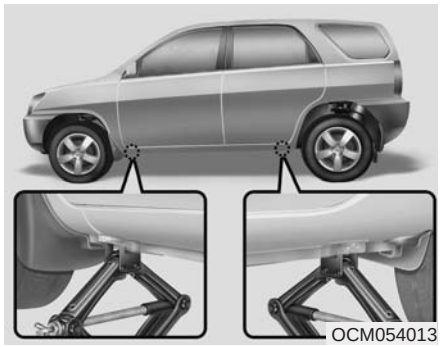
**⚠ WARNING - Changing a tire**

- **To prevent vehicle movement while changing a tire, always set the parking brake fully, and always block the wheel diagonally opposite the wheel being changed.**
- **We recommend that the wheels of the vehicle be blocked, and that no person remain in a vehicle that is being jacked.**

6. Loosen the wheel lug nuts counterclockwise one turn each, but do not remove any nut until the tire has been raised off the ground.

XM CAN (ENG) 6.QXP 11/26/2009 12:06 PM Page 11




OCM054013

7. Place the jack at the front or rear jacking position closest to the tire you are changing. Place the jack at the designated locations under the frame.

**⚠ WARNING - Jack location**
**To reduce the possibility of injury, be sure to use only the jack provided with the vehicle and in the correct jack position; never use any other part of the vehicle for jack support.**

OAM069009

8. Insert the jack handle into the jack and turn it clockwise, raising the vehicle until the tire just clears the ground. This measurement is approximately 3 cm (1 in.).
   Before removing the wheel lug nuts, make sure the vehicle is stable and that there is no chance for movement or slippage.

9. Loosen the wheel nuts and remove them with your fingers. Slide the wheel off the studs and lay it flat so it cannot roll away. To put the wheel on the hub, pick up the spare tire, line up the holes with the studs and slide the wheel onto them. If this is difficult, tip the wheel slightly and get the top hole in the wheel lined up with the top stud. Then jiggle the wheel back and forth until the wheel can slide over the other studs.

XM CAN (ENG) 6.QXP 11/26/2009 12:06 PM Page 12

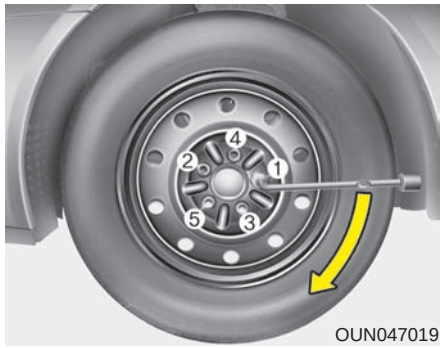


**⚠ WARNING**

**Wheels may have sharp edges. Handle them carefully to avoid possible severe injury. Before putting the wheel into place, be sure that there is nothing on the hub or wheel (such as mud, tar, gravel, etc.) that prevents with the wheel from fitting solidly against the hub.**

**If there is, remove it. If the contact of the mounting surface between the wheel and hub is not good, the wheel nuts could come loose and cause the loss of a wheel. Loss of a wheel may result in loss of control of the vehicle. This may cause serious injury or death.**

10. To install the wheel, hold it on the studs, put the wheel nuts on the studs and tighten them finger tight. Jiggle the tire to be sure it is completely seated, then tighten the nuts as much as possible with your fingers again.
11. Lower the vehicle to the ground by turning the wheel nut wrench counterclockwise.



OUN047019

Then position the wrench as shown in the drawing and tighten the wheel nuts. Be sure the socket is seated completely over the nut. Do not stand on the wrench handle or use an extension pipe over the wrench handle. Go around the wheel tightening every nut following the numerical sequence shown in the image until they are all tight. Then double-check each nut for tightness. After changing wheels, have an authorized KIA dealer tighten the wheel nuts to their proper torque as soon as possible.

**Wheel nut tightening torque:**

9~11 kg·m (65~79 lb·ft)

XM CAN (ENG) 6.QXP 11/26/2009 12:06 PM Page 13



If you have a tire gauge, remove the valve cap and check the air pressure. If the pressure is lower than recommended, drive slowly to the nearest service station and inflate to the correct pressure. If it is too high, adjust it until it is correct. Always reinstall the valve cap after checking or adjusting the tire pressure. If the cap is not replaced, dust and dirt may get into the tire valve and air may leak from the tire. If you lose a valve cap, buy another and install it as soon as possible.

After you have changed the wheels, always secure the flat tire in its place and return the jack and tools to their proper storage locations.

**⚠ CAUTION**

***Your vehicle has metric threads on the wheel studs and nuts. Make certain during wheel removal that the same nuts that were removed are reinstalled - or, if replaced, that nuts with metric threads and the same chamfer configuration are used. Installation of a non-metric thread nut on a metric stud or vice-versa will not secure the wheel to the hub properly and will damage the stud so that it must be replaced.***

***Note that most lug nuts do not have metric threads. Be sure to use extreme care in checking for thread style before installing aftermarket lug nuts or wheels. If in doubt, consult an authorized KIA dealer.***

**⚠ WARNING - Wheel studs**

**If the studs are damaged, they may lose their ability to retain the wheel. This could lead to the loss of the wheel and a collision resulting in serious injuries.**

To prevent the jack, jack handle, wheel lug nut wrench and spare tire from rattling while the vehicle is in motion, store them properly.

**⚠ WARNING - Inadequate spare tire pressure**

**Check the inflation pressures as soon as possible after installing the spare tire. Adjust it to the specified pressure, if necessary. Refer to "Tires and wheels" in section 8.**

XM CAN (ENG) 6.QXP 11/26/2009 12:06 PM Page 14



F070301AUN-EU

***Important - use of compact spare tire (if equipped)***

Your vehicle is equipped with a compact spare tire. This compact spare tire takes up less space than a regular-size tire. This tire is smaller than a conventional tire and is designed for temporary use only.

**⚠ CAUTION**

- ***You should drive carefully when the compact spare is in use. The compact spare should be replaced by the proper conventional tire and rim at the first opportunity.***
- ***The operation of this vehicle is not recommended with more than one compact spare tire in use at the same time.***

**⚠ WARNING**

**The compact spare tire is for emergency use only. Do not operate your vehicle on this compact spare at speeds over 80 km/h (50 mph). The original tire should be repaired or replaced as soon as is possible to avoid failure of the spare possibly leading to personal injury or death.**

The compact spare should be inflated to 420 kPa (60 psi).

**✻ NOTICE**

**Check the inflation pressure after installing the spare tire. Adjust it to the specified pressure, as necessary.**

When using a compact spare tire, observe the following precautions:

- Under no circumstances should you exceed 80 km/h (50 mph); a higher speed could damage the tire.
- Ensure that you drive slowly enough for the road conditions to avoid all hazards. Any road hazard, such as a pothole or debris, could seriously damage the compact spare.
- Any continuous road use of this tire could result in tire failure, loss of vehicle control, and possible personal injury.
- Do not exceed the vehicle's maximum load rating or the load-carrying capacity shown on the sidewall of the compact spare tire.
- Avoid driving over obstacles. The compact spare tire diameter is smaller than the diameter of a conventional tire and reduces the ground clearance approximately 25 mm (1 inch), which could result in damage to the vehicle.

XM CAN (ENG) 6.QXP 11/26/2009 12:06 PM Page 15

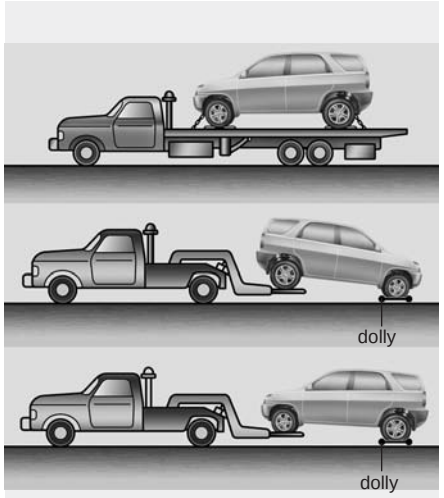


- Do not take this vehicle through an automatic car wash while the compact spare tire is installed.
- Do not use the compact spare tire on any other vehicle because this tire has been designed especially for your vehicle.
- The compact spare tire's tread life is shorter than a regular tire. Inspect your compact spare tire regularly and replace worn compact spare tires with the same size and design, mounted on the same wheel.
- The compact spare tire should not be used on any other wheels, nor should standard tires, snow tires, wheel covers or trim rings be used with the compact spare wheel. If such use is attempted, damage to these items or other car components may occur.
- Do not use more than one compact spare tire at a time.
- Do not tow a trailer while the compact spare tire is installed.

XM CAN (ENG) 6.QXP 11/26/2009 12:06 PM Page 16



## TOWING




F080100AAM-EU

### Towing service

If emergency towing is necessary, we recommend having it done by an authorized KIA dealer or a commercial tow-truck service. Proper lifting and towing procedures are necessary to prevent damage to the vehicle. The use of wheel dollies or flatbed is recommended.

*For trailer towing guidelines information, refer to "Trailer towing" in section 5.*

On 4WD vehicles, your vehicle must be towed with a wheel lift and dollies or flatbed equipment with all the wheels off the ground.

**⚠ CAUTION**

***The 4WD vehicle should never be towed with the wheels on the ground. This can cause serious damage to the transaxle or the 4WD system.***

On 2WD vehicles, it is acceptable to tow the vehicle with the rear wheels on the ground (without dollies) and the front wheels off the ground.

If any of the loaded wheels or suspension components are damaged or the vehicle is being towed with the front wheels on the ground, use a towing dolly under the front wheels.

When being towed by a commercial tow truck and wheel dollies are not used, the front of the vehicle should always be lifted, not the rear.

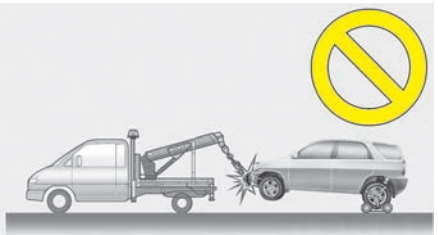
**⚠ WARNING**

**If your vehicle is equipped with side and curtain air bag, set the ignition switch to LOCK or ACC position when the vehicle is being towed.**

**The side and curtain air bag may deploy when the ignitions is ON, and the rollover sensor detects the situation as a rollover.**

XM CAN (ENG) 6.QXP 11/26/2009 12:06 PM Page 17

OUN046030



OCM054034

**⚠ CAUTION**

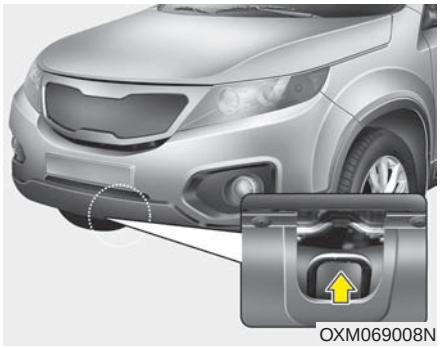
- ***Do not tow the vehicle backwards with the front wheels on the ground as this may cause damage to the vehicle.***
- ***Do not tow with sling-type equipment. Use wheel lift or flatbed equipment.***

When towing your vehicle in an emergency without wheel dollies :

1. Set the ignition switch in the ACC position.
2. Place the transaxle shift lever in N (Neutral).
3. Release the parking brake.

**⚠ CAUTION**

***Failure to place the transaxle shift lever in N (Neutral) may cause internal damage to the transaxle.***



OXM069008N

F080300AHM-EU

## Emergency towing

**If towing is necessary, have it done by an authorized KIA dealer or a commercial tow truck service.**

XM CAN (ENG) 6.QXP 11/26/2009 12:06 PM Page 18



If towing service is not available in an emergency, your vehicle may be temporarily towed using a cable or chain secured to the emergency towing hook under the front (or rear) of the vehicle. Use extreme caution when towing the vehicle. A driver must be in the vehicle to steer it and operate the brakes.

Towing in this manner may be done only on hard-surfaced roads for a short distance and at low speeds. Also, the wheels, axles, power train, steering and brakes must all be in good condition.

- Do not use the tow hooks to pull a vehicle out of mud, sand or other conditions from which the vehicle cannot be driven out under its own power.
- Avoid towing a vehicle heavier than the vehicle doing the towing.
- The drivers of both vehicles should communicate with each other frequently.

**⚠ CAUTION**

- ***Attach a towing strap to the tow hook.***
- ***Using a portion of the vehicle other than the tow hooks for towing may damage the body of your vehicle.***
- ***Only use a cable or chain specifically intended for use in towing vehicles. Securely fasten the cable or chain to the towing hook provided.***

- Before emergency towing, check that the hook is not broken or damaged.
- Fasten the towing cable or chain securely to the hook.
- Do not jerk the hook. Apply it steadily and with even force.
- To avoid damaging the hook, do not pull from the side or at a vertical angle. Always pull straight ahead.

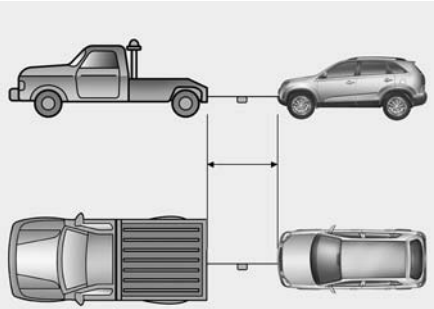
**⚠ WARNING**

**Use extreme caution when towing the vehicle.**

- **Avoid sudden starts or erratic driving maneuvers which would place excessive stress on the emergency towing hook and towing cable or chain. The hook and towing cable or chain may break and cause serious injury or damage.**
- **If the disabled vehicle cannot be moved, do not forcibly continue the towing. Contact an authorized KIA dealer or a commercial tow truck service for assistance.**
- **Tow the vehicle as straight ahead as possible.**
- **Keep away from the vehicle during towing.**

XM CAN (ENG) 6.QXP 11/26/2009 12:06 PM Page 19





OXM069009

- Use a towing strap less than 5 m (16 feet) long. Attach a white or red cloth (about 30 cm (12 inches) wide) in the middle of the strap for easy visibility.
- Drive carefully so that the towing strap is not loose during towing.

F080301AAM-EU

***Emergency towing precautions***

- Turn the ignition switch to ACC so the steering wheel isn't locked.
- Place the transaxle shift lever in N (Neutral).
- Release the parking bake.
- Press the brake pedal with more force than usual since you will have reduced brake performance.
- More steering effort will be required because the power steering system will be disabled.
- If you are driving down a long hill, the brakes may overheat and brake performance will be reduced. Stop often and let the brakes cool off.

**⚠ CAUTION - Automatic transaxle**

- ***If the car is being towed with all four wheels on the ground, it can be towed only from the front. Be sure that the transaxle is in neutral. Be sure the steering is unlocked by placing the ignition switch in the ACC position. A driver must be in the towed vehicle to operate the steering and brakes.***
- ***To avoid serious damage to the automatic transaxle, limit the vehicle speed to 15 km/h (10 mph) and drive less than 1.5 km (1 mile) when towing.***
- ***Before towing, check the automatic transaxle fluid leak under your vehicle. If the automatic transaxle fluid is leaking, a flatbed equipment or towing dolly must be used.***

XM CAN (ENG) 7.qxp 4/14/2010 10:55 AM Page 1

**Engine compartment / 7-2**
**Maintenance services / 7-4**
**Owner maintenance / 7-5**
**Explanation of scheduled maintenance items / 7-11**
**Engine oil / 7-14**
**Engine coolant / 7-15**
**Brake/clutch fluid / 7-18**
**Power steering fluid / 7-19**
**Washer fluid / 7-20**
**Parking brake / 7-20**
**Air cleaner / 7-21**
**Climate control air filter / 7-23**
**Wiper blades / 7-25**
**Battery / 7-29**
**Tires and wheels / 7-32**
**Fuses / 7-45**

# Maintenance 7

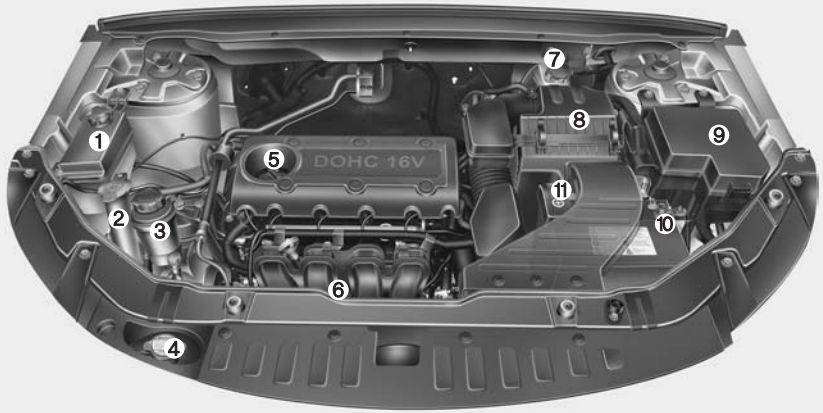
**Appearance care / 7-54**
**Emission control system / 7-60**

XM CAN (ENG) 7.qxp 4/14/2010 10:56 AM Page 2



## ENGINE COMPARTMENT

■ **2.4L**




1. Engine Coolant Reservoir
2. Windshield Washer Fluid Reservoir
3. Power Steering Fluid Reservoir*
4. Radiator Cap
5. Engine Oil Filler Cap
6. Engine Oil Dipstick
7. Brake Fluid Reservoir
8. Air Cleaner
9. Fuse Box
10. Negative Battery Terminal
11. Positive Battery Terminal

* if equipped

❊ The actual engine compartment in the vehicle may differ from the illustration.

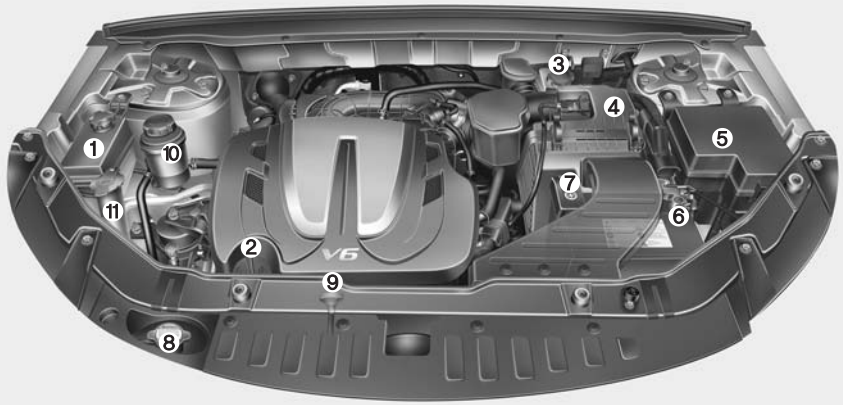
OXM079001N

G010000AAM-EU

XM CAN (ENG) 7.qxp 4/14/2010 10:56 AM Page 3



■ **3.5L**




1. Engine coolant reservoir
2. Engine oil filler cap
3. Brake fluid reservoir
4. Air cleaner
5. Fuse box
6. Negative battery terminal
7. Positive battery terminal
8. Radiator cap
9. Engine oil dipstick
10. Power steering fluid reservoir*
11. Windshield washer fluid reservoir

* if equipped

※ The actual engine compartment in the vehicle may differ from the illustration.

OXM079100

XM CAN (ENG) 7.qxp 4/14/2010 10:56 AM Page 4



## MAINTENANCE SERVICES

G020000AHM

You should exercise the utmost care to prevent damage to your vehicle and injury to yourself whenever performing any maintenance or inspection procedures.

Should you have any doubts concerning the inspection or servicing of your vehicle, we strongly recommend that you have an authorized KIA dealer perform this work.

An authorized KIA dealer has factory trained technicians and genuine KIA parts to service your vehicle properly. For expert advice and quality service, see an authorized KIA dealer.

Inadequate, incomplete or insufficient servicing may result in operational problems with your vehicle that could lead to vehicle damage, an accident, or personal injury.

G020100AUN-EU

### Owner's responsibility

#### ✻ NOTICE

**Maintenance Service and Record Retention are the owner's responsibility.**

You should retain documents that show proper maintenance has been performed on your vehicle in accordance with the scheduled maintenance service charts shown on the following pages. You need this information to establish your compliance with the servicing and maintenance requirements of your vehicle warranties.

Detailed warranty information is provided in your Warranty & Consumer Information manual.

Repairs and adjustments required as a result of improper maintenance or a lack of required maintenance are not covered.

We recommend you have your vehicle maintained and repaired by an authorized KIA dealer. An authorized KIA dealer meets KIA's high service quality standards and receives technical support from KIA in order to provide you with a high level of service satisfaction.

G020200AUN-EU

### Owner maintenance precautions

Improper or incomplete service may result in problems. This section gives instructions only for the maintenance items that are easy to perform.

As explained earlier in this section, several procedures can be done only by an authorized KIA dealer with special tools.

#### ✻ NOTICE

**Improper owner maintenance during the warranty period may affect warranty coverage. For details, read the separate Warranty & Consumer Information manual provided with the vehicle. If you're unsure about any servicing or maintenance procedure, have it done by an authorized KIA dealer.**

XM CAN (ENG) 7.qxp 4/14/2010 10:56 AM Page 5



**⚠ WARNING - Maintenance work**

- **Performing maintenance work on a vehicle can be dangerous. You can be seriously injured while performing some maintenance procedures. If you lack sufficient knowledge and experience or the proper tools and equipment to do the work, have it done by an authorized KIA dealer.**
- **Working under the hood with the engine running is dangerous. It becomes even more dangerous when you wear jewelry or loose clothing. These can become entangled in moving parts and result in injury. Therefore, if you must run the engine while working under the hood, make certain that you remove all jewelry (especially rings, bracelets, watches, and necklaces) and all neckties, scarves, and similar loose clothing before getting near the engine or cooling fans.**

## OWNER MAINTENANCE

G030000AUN

The following lists are vehicle checks and inspections that should be performed by the owner or an authorized KIA dealer at the frequencies indicated to help ensure safe, dependable operation of your vehicle.

Any adverse conditions should be brought to the attention of your dealer as soon as possible.

These Owner Maintenance Checks are generally not covered by warranties and you may be charged for labor, parts and lubricants used.

### Owner maintenance schedule

G030101AHM

***When you stop for fuel:***

- Check the engine oil level.
- Check the coolant level in the coolant reservoir.
- Check the windshield washer fluid level.
- Look for low or under-inflated tires.

**⚠ WARNING**

**Be careful when checking your engine coolant level when the engine is hot. Scalding hot coolant and steam may blow out under pressure. This could cause burns or other serious injury.**

XM CAN (ENG) 7.qxp 4/14/2010 10:56 AM Page 6



G030102AAM

***While operating your vehicle:***

- Note any changes in the sound of the exhaust or any smell of exhaust fumes in the vehicle.
- Check for vibrations in the steering wheel. Notice any increased steering effort or looseness in the steering wheel, or change in its straight-ahead position.
- Notice if your vehicle constantly turns slightly or “pulls” to one side when traveling on smooth, level road.
- When stopping, listen and check for unusual sounds, pulling to one side, increased brake pedal travel or “hard-to-push” brake pedal.
- If any slipping or changes in the operation of your transaxle occurs, check the transaxle fluid level.
- Check the automatic transaxle P (Park) function.
- Check the parking brake.
- Check for fluid leaks under your vehicle (water dripping from the air conditioning system during or after use is normal).

G030103AHM

***At least monthly:***

- Check the coolant level in the engine coolant reservoir.
- Check the operation of all exterior lights, including the stoplights, turn signals and hazard warning flashers.
- Check the inflation pressures of all tires including the spare.

G030104AHM

***At least twice a year (i.e., every Spring and Fall):***

- Check the radiator, heater and air conditioning hoses for leaks or damage.
- Check the windshield washer spray and wiper operation. Clean the wiper blades with clean cloth dampened with washer fluid.
- Check the headlight alignment.
- Check the muffler, exhaust pipes, shields and clamps.
- Check the lap/shoulder belts for wear and function.
- Check for worn tires and loose wheel lug nuts.

G030105AHM-C1

***At least once a year:***

- Clean the body and door drain holes.
- Lubricate the door hinges and checks, and hood hinges.
- Lubricate the door and hood locks and latches.
- Lubricate the door rubber weatherstrips.
- Check the air conditioning system.
- Check the power steering fluid level.
- Inspect and lubricate the automatic transaxle linkage and controls.
- Clean the battery and terminals.
- Check the brake/clutch fluid level.

XM CAN (ENG) 7.qxp 5/10/2010 2:05 PM Page 7



## MAINTENANCE SCHEDULE

G040100AXM-EC

### Engine control system

| MAINTENANCE INTERVALS / MAINTENANCE ITEM | | Kilometers or time in months, whichever comes first | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| | × 1,000 km | 8 | 16 | 24 | 32 | 40 | 48 | 56 | 64 | 72 | 80 | 88 | 96 | 104 | 112 | 120 | 128 |
| | # Months | 4 | 8 | 12 | 16 | 20 | 24 | 28 | 32 | 36 | 40 | 44 | 48 | 52 | 56 | 60 | 64 |
| Engine oil & engine oil filter | (1) | R | R | R | R | R | R | R | R | R | R | R | R | R | R | R | R |
| Drive belts (tension) | | | | | I | | | | I | | | | I | | | | I |
| Cooling system hoses & connections | | | | I | | | I | | | I | | | I | | | I | |
| Engine coolant | (1) | I | I | I | I | I | R | I | I | I | I | I | R | I | I | I | I |
| Fuel filter | | | | | | | R | | | | | | R | | | | |
| Fuel tank cap, lines, EVAP canister and hoses | | | | | | | I | | | | | | I | | | | |
| Fuel tank air filter (CCV filter) | | | | I | | | R | | | I | | | R | | | I | |
| Air cleaner element | (2) | I | I | I | I | I | R | I | I | I | I | I | R | I | I | I | I |
| Ignition wires | | | | | | | I | | | | | | I | | | | |
| Spark plugs | | Replace every 160,000 km | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| Idle speed | | | | I | | | I | | | I | | | I | | | I | |
| Valve clearance | | | | | | | | | | | | | I | | | | |

XM CAN (ENG) 7.qxp 5/27/2010 5:50 PM Page 8



## Chassis and body

| MAINTENANCE INTERVALS / MAINTENANCE ITEM | | Kilometers or time in months, whichever comes first | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| | × 1,000 km | 8 | 16 | 24 | 32 | 40 | 48 | 56 | 64 | 72 | 80 | 88 | 96 | 104 | 112 | 120 | 128 |
| | # Months | 4 | 8 | 12 | 16 | 20 | 24 | 28 | 32 | 36 | 40 | 44 | 48 | 52 | 56 | 60 | 64 |
| Air conditioner compressor operation & refrigerant amount* | | | | I | | | I | | | I | | | I | | | I | |
| Climate control air filter* | | | R | | R | | R | | R | | R | | R | | R | | R |
| Exhaust pipes, heat shield & mountings | | I | | I | | I | | I | | I | | I | | I | | I | |
| Front suspension ball joints | | | | | I | | | | I | | | | I | | | | I |
| Transfer case fluid (4WD)* | | | | I | | | I | | | I | | | R | | | I | |
| Rear differential fluid (4WD)* | | | | I | | | I | | | I | | | R | | | I | |
| Brakes/clutch* fluid | (1) | I | I | I | I | I | I | I | R | I | I | I | I | I | I | I | R |
| Front brake pads & discs | (3) | I | I | I | I | I | I | I | I | I | I | I | I | I | I | I | I |
| Rear brake pads & discs/drums | (3) | I | I | I | I | I | I | I | I | I | I | I | I | I | I | I | I |
| Parking brake | | | I | | I | | I | | I | | I | | I | | I | | I |
| Brake lines & connections (including booster) | | | | I | | | I | | | I | | | I | | | I | |
| Manual transaxle oil* | (1) | | | I | | | I | | | I | | | R | | | I | |
| Clutch* & brake pedal free play | | I | I | I | I | I | I | I | I | I | I | I | I | I | I | I | I |
| Propeller shaft | | | | L | | | L | | | L | | | L | | | L | |

* if equipped

XM CAN (ENG) 7.qxp 4/14/2010 10:56 AM Page 9



## Chassis and body (Continued)

| MAINTENANCE INTERVALS / MAINTENANCE ITEM | | Kilometers or time in months, whichever comes first | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| | × 1,000 km | 8 | 16 | 24 | 32 | 40 | 48 | 56 | 64 | 72 | 80 | 88 | 96 | 104 | 112 | 120 | 128 |
| | # Months | 4 | 8 | 12 | 16 | 20 | 24 | 28 | 32 | 36 | 40 | 44 | 48 | 52 | 56 | 60 | 64 |
| Automatic transaxle fluid* | (1) | | | | | | | | | | | | R | | | | |
| Chassis & underbody bolts & nuts | | I | I | I | I | I | I | I | I | I | I | I | I | I | I | I | I |
| Tire condition & inflation pressure | | I | I | I | I | I | I | I | I | I | I | I | I | I | I | I | I |
| Wheel alignment | (4) | Inspect when abnormal condition noted | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| Tire rotation | | Rotate the tires every 12,000 km | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| Steering operation & linkage | | I | I | I | I | I | I | I | I | I | I | I | I | I | I | I | I |
| Power steering fluid & lines* | | | I | | I | | I | | I | | I | | I | | I | | I |
| Driveshaft dust boots | | | | I | | | I | | | I | | | I | | | I | |
| Seat belts, buckles & anchors | | I | I | I | I | I | I | I | I | I | I | I | I | I | I | I | I |
| Lock, hinges & hood latch | | L | L | L | L | L | L | L | L | L | L | L | L | L | L | L | L |

* if equipped

XM CAN (ENG) 7.qxp 4/14/2010 10:56 AM Page 10



**Chart symbols:**

I- Inspect these items and their related parts. If necessary, correct, clean, refill, adjust or replace.
R- Replace or change
L- Lubricate.

(1) Refer to the lubricant and coolant specifications in the Owner's Manual.
(2) More frequent maintenance is required if driving under dusty conditions.
(3) More frequent maintenance is required if the vehicle is operated under any of the following conditions:
    a. Short-distance driving.
    b. Driving on dusty roads.
    c. Extensive idling or slow-speed driving in stop-and-go traffic.
(4) If necessary, rotate and balance the wheels.

* Note: Check the engine oil and coolant levels every week.

XM CAN (ENG) 7.qxp 4/14/2010 10:56 AM Page 11



## EXPLANATION OF SCHEDULED MAINTENANCE ITEMS

G050100AHM

### Engine oil and filter

The engine oil and filter should be changed at the intervals specified in the maintenance schedule. If the vehicle is being driven in severe conditions, more frequent oil and filter changes are required.

G050200AUN

### Drive belts

Inspect all drive belts for evidence of cuts, cracks, excessive wear or oil saturation and replace if necessary. Drive belts should be checked periodically for proper tension and adjusted as necessary.

G050300AUN

### Fuel filter (cartridge)

A clogged filter can limit the speed at which the vehicle may be driven, damage the emission system and cause multiple issues such as hard starting. If an excessive amount of foreign matter accumulates in the fuel tank, the filter may require replacement more frequently.

After installing a new filter, run the engine for several minutes, and check for leaks at the connections. Fuel filters should be installed by an authorized KIA dealer.

G050400AUN-EU

### Fuel lines, fuel hoses and connections

Check the fuel lines, fuel hoses and connections for leakage and damage. Have an authorized KIA dealer replace any damaged or leaking parts immediately.

G050500AUN

### Timing belt (if equipped)

Inspect all parts related to the timing belt for damage and deformation. Replace any damaged parts immediately.

G050600AUN

### Vapor hose and fuel filler cap

The vapor hose and fuel filler cap should be inspected at those intervals specified in the maintenance schedule. Make sure that a new vapor hose or fuel filler cap is correctly replaced.

G050700AUN

### Vacuum crankcase ventilation hoses

Inspect the surface of hoses for evidence of heat and/or mechanical damage. Hard and brittle rubber, cracking, tears, cuts, abrasions, and excessive swelling indicate deterioration. Particular attention should be paid to examine those hose surfaces nearest to high heat sources, such as the exhaust manifold.

Inspect the hose routing to assure that the hoses do not come in contact with any heat source, sharp edges or moving component which might cause heat damage or mechanical wear. Inspect all hose connections, such as clamps and couplings, to make sure they are secure, and that no leaks are present. Hoses should be replaced immediately if there is any evidence of deterioration or damage.

XM CAN (ENG) 7.qxp 4/14/2010 10:56 AM Page 12



G050800AUN

### Air cleaner filter

A Genuine KIA air cleaner filter is recommended when the filter is replaced.

G050900AUN

### Spark plugs

Make sure to install new spark plugs of the correct heat range.

G051000AHM

### Valve clearance (if equipped)

Inspect for excessive valve noise and/or engine vibration and adjust if necessary. An authorized KIA dealer should perform the operation.

G051100AHM

### Cooling system

Check the cooling system components, such as the radiator, coolant reservoir, hoses and connections for leakage and damage. Replace any damaged parts.

G051200AUN

### Coolant

The coolant should be changed at the intervals specified in the maintenance schedule.

G051300AUN

### Manual transaxle fluid (if equipped)

Inspect the manual transaxle fluid according to the maintenance schedule.

G051400AXM

### Automatic transaxle fluid (if equipped)

The fluid should be changed at an authorized KIA dealer in accordance to the scheduled maintenance at the beginning of this section.

#### ✻ NOTICE

**Automatic transaxle fluid color is basically red.**
**As the vehicle is driven, the automatic transaxle fluid will begin to look darker. It is normal condition and you should not judge the need to replace the fluid based upon the changed color.**

#### ⚠ CAUTION

***The use of a non-specified fluid could result in transaxle malfunction and failure.***

***Use only specified automatic transaxle fluid. (Refer to "Recommended lubricants and capacities" in section 8.)***

G051500AUN

### Brake hoses and lines

Visually check for proper installation, chafing, cracks, deterioration and any leakage. Replace any deteriorated or damaged parts immediately.

G051600AAM

### Brake/Clutch (if equipped) fluid

Check the brake fluid level in the brake fluid reservoir. The level should be between "MIN" and "MAX" marks on the side of the reservoir. Use only hydraulic brake fluid conforming to DOT 3 or DOT 4 specification.

XM CAN (ENG) 7.qxp 4/14/2010 10:56 AM Page 13



G051700AUN

### Parking brake

Inspect the parking brake system including the parking brake lever (or pedal) and cables.

G051900AUN

### Brake discs, pads, calipers and rotors

Check the pads for excessive wear, discs for run out and wear, and calipers for fluid leakage.

G052000AUN

### Exhaust pipe and muffler

Visually inspect the exhaust pipes, muffler and hangers for cracks, deterioration, or damage. Start the engine and listen carefully for any exhaust gas leakage. Tighten connections or replace parts as necessary.

G052100AUN

### Suspension mounting bolts

Check the suspension connections for looseness or damage. Retighten to the specified torque.

G052200AUN

### Steering gear box, linkage & boots/lower arm ball joint

With the vehicle stopped and engine off, check for excessive free-play in the steering wheel.

Check the linkage for bends or damage. Check the dust boots and ball joints for deterioration, cracks, or damage. Replace any damaged parts.

G052300AEN

### Power steering pump, belt and hoses (if equipped)

Check the power steering pump and hoses for leakage and damage. Replace any damaged or leaking parts immediately. Inspect the power steering belt (or drive belt) for evidence of cuts, cracks, excessive wear, oiliness and proper tension. Replace or adjust it if necessary.

G052400AUN

### Drive shafts and boots

Check the drive shafts, boots and clamps for cracks, deterioration, or damage. Replace any damaged parts and, if necessary, repack the grease.

G052500AUN

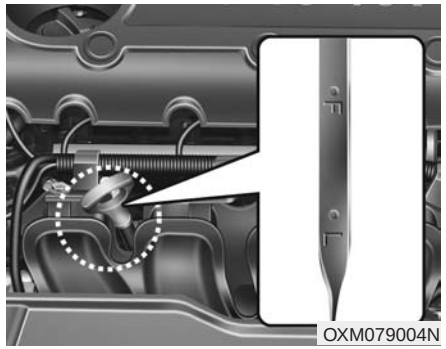
### Air conditioning refrigerant

Check the air conditioning lines and connections for leakage and damage.

XM CAN (ENG) 7.qxp 4/14/2010 10:56 AM Page 14



## ENGINE OIL



OXM079004N

G060100AHM-EU

### Checking the engine oil level

1. Be sure the vehicle is on level ground.
2. Start the engine and allow it to reach normal operating temperature.
3. Turn the engine off and wait for a few minutes (about 5 minutes) for the oil to return to the oil pan.
4. Pull the dipstick out, wipe it clean, and re-insert it fully.

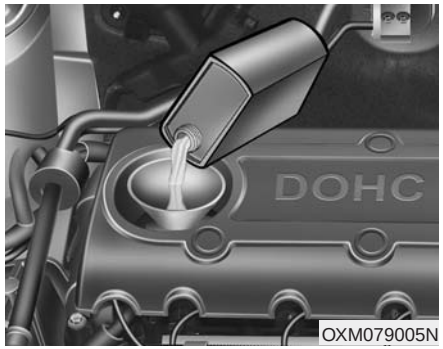
**⚠ WARNING - Radiator hose**

**Be very careful not to touch the radiator hose when checking or adding the engine oil as it may be hot enough to burn you.**

5. Pull the dipstick out again and check the level. The level should be between F and L.

**⚠ CAUTION**

***Do not overfill the engine oil. It may damage the engine.***



OXM079005N

If it is near or at L, add enough oil to bring the level to F. **Do not overfill.**

**Use a funnel to help prevent oil from being spilled on engine components.**

*Use only the specified engine oil. (Refer to "Recommended lubricants and capacities" in section 8.)*

XM CAN (ENG) 7.qxp 4/14/2010 10:56 AM Page 15



G060200BHM

### Changing the engine oil and filter

Have engine oil and filter changed by an authorized KIA dealer according to the Maintenance Schedule at the beginning of this section.

**⚠ WARNING**

**Used engine oil may cause skin irritation or cancer if left in contact with the skin for prolonged periods of time. Used engine oil contains chemicals that have caused cancer in laboratory animals. Always protect your skin by washing your hands thoroughly with soap and warm water as soon as possible after handling used oil.**

## ENGINE COOLANT

G070000AHM

The high-pressure cooling system has a reservoir filled with year round antifreeze coolant. The reservoir is filled at the factory.

Check the antifreeze protection and coolant level at least once a year, at the beginning of the winter season, and before traveling to a colder climate.

G070100AHM

### Checking the coolant level

**⚠ WARNING - Removing radiator cap**

- **Never attempt to remove the radiator cap while the engine is operating or hot. Doing so might lead to cooling system and engine damage. Also, hot coolant or steam could cause serious personal injury.**

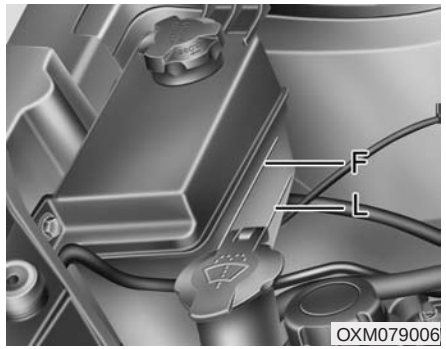
**(Continued)**

**(Continued)**

- **Turn the engine off and wait until it cools down. Use extreme care when removing the radiator cap. Wrap a thick towel around it, and turn it counterclockwise slowly to the first stop. Step back while the pressure is released from the cooling system. When you are sure all the pressure has been released, press down on the cap, using a thick towel, and continue turning counterclockwise to remove it.**
- **Even if the engine is not operating, do not remove the radiator cap or the drain plug while the engine and radiator are hot. Hot coolant and steam may still blow out under pressure, causing serious injury.**

XM CAN (ENG) 7.qxp 4/14/2010 10:56 AM Page 16






Check the condition and connections of all cooling system hoses and heater hoses. Replace any swollen or deteriorated hoses.

The coolant level should be filled between F and L marks on the side of the coolant reservoir when the engine is cool.

If the coolant level is low, add enough specified coolant to provide protection against freezing and corrosion. Bring the level to F, but do not overfill. If frequent additions are required, see an authorized KIA dealer for a cooling system inspection.

G070101AHM

***Recommended engine coolant***

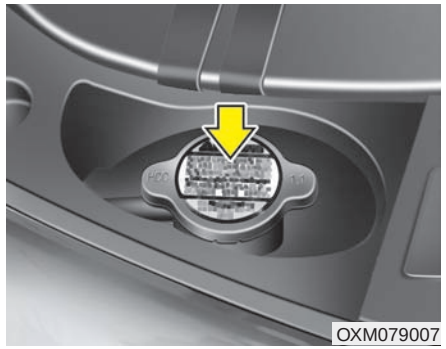
- Use only soft (distilled) water in the coolant mixture.
- The engine in your vehicle has aluminum engine parts and must be protected by an ethylene-glycol-based coolant to prevent corrosion and freezing.
- DO NOT USE alcohol or methanol coolant or mix them with the specified coolant.
- Do not use a solution that contains more than 60% antifreeze or less than 35% antifreeze, which would reduce the effectiveness of the solution.

For mixture percentage, refer to the following table.

| Ambient Temperature | Mixture Percentage (volume) | |
|---|---|---|
| | Antifreeze | Water |
| -15°C (5°F) | 35 | 65 |
| -25°C (-13°F) | 40 | 60 |
| -35°C (-31°F) | 50 | 50 |
| -45°C (-49°F) | 60 | 40 |

XM CAN (ENG) 7.qxp 4/14/2010 10:56 AM Page 17




OXM079007

**⚠ WARNING - Radiator cap**

**Do not remove the radiator cap when the engine and radiator are hot. Scalding hot coolant and steam may blow out under pressure causing serious injury.**

G070200AHM

## Changing the coolant

Have the coolant changed by an authorized KIA dealer according to the Maintenance Schedule at the beginning of this section.

**⚠ CAUTION**

***Put a thick cloth around the radiator cap before refilling the coolant in order to prevent the coolant from overflowing into engine parts such as the alternator.***

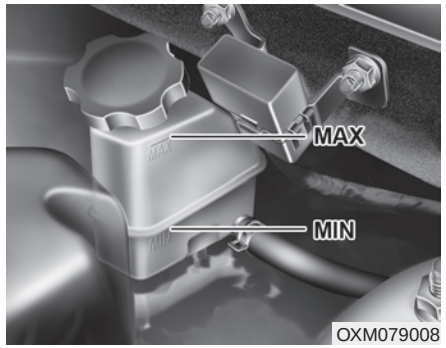
**⚠ WARNING - Coolant**

- **Do not use radiator coolant or antifreeze in the washer fluid reservoir.**
- **Radiator coolant can severely obscure visibility when sprayed on the windshield and may cause loss of vehicle control or damage the paint and body trim.**

XM CAN (ENG) 7.qxp 4/14/2010 10:56 AM Page 18



## BRAKE/CLUTCH (IF EQUIPPED) FLUID




G080100AAM

### Checking the brake/clutch* fluid level

Check the fluid level in the reservoir periodically. The fluid level should be between MAX and MIN marks on the side of the reservoir.

Before removing the reservoir cap and adding brake/clutch* fluid, clean the area around the reservoir cap thoroughly to prevent brake/clutch* fluid contamination.

* if equipped

If the level is low, add fluid to the MAX level. The level will fall with accumulated mileage. This is a normal condition associated with the wear of the brake linings and/or clutch disc (if equipped). If the fluid level is excessively low, have the brake/clutch* system checked by an authorized KIA dealer.

*Use only the specified brake/clutch* fluid. (Refer to "Recommended lubricants and capacities" in section 8.)*

*Never mix different types of fluid.*

**⚠ WARNING - Loss of brake/clutch* fluid**

**In the event the brake/clutch* system requires frequent additions of fluid, the vehicle should be inspected by an authorized KIA dealer.**

**⚠ WARNING - Brake/clutch* fluid**

**When changing and adding brake/clutch* fluid, handle it carefully. Do not let it come in contact with your eyes. If brake/clutch* fluid should come in contact with your eyes, immediately flush them with a large quantity of fresh tap water. Have your eyes examined by a doctor as soon as possible.**

**⚠ CAUTION**

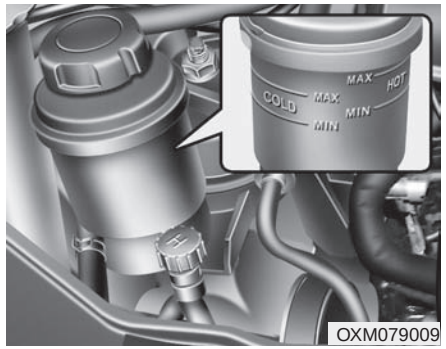
***Do not allow brake/clutch* fluid to contact the vehicle's body paint, as paint damage will result.***

***Brake/clutch* fluid, which has been exposed to open air for an extended time should never be used as its quality cannot be guaranteed. It should be disposed of properly. Don't put in the wrong kind of fluid. A few drops of mineral-based oil, such as engine oil, in your brake/clutch* system can damage brake/clutch* system parts.***

XM CAN (ENG) 7.qxp 4/14/2010 10:57 AM Page 19



## POWER STEERING FLUID (IF EQUIPPED)




G090100AHM

### Checking the power steering fluid level

With the vehicle on level ground, check the fluid level in the power steering reservoir periodically. The fluid should be between MAX and MIN marks on the side of the reservoir at the normal temperature.

Before adding power steering fluid, thoroughly clean the area around the reservoir cap to prevent power steering fluid contamination.

If the level is low, add fluid to the MAX level.

### ✻ NOTICE

**Check that the fluid level is in the "HOT" range on the reservoir. If the fluid is cold, check that it is in the "COLD" range.**

In the event the power steering system requires frequent addition of fluid, the vehicle should be inspected by an authorized KIA dealer.

### ⚠ CAUTION

- ***To avoid damage to the power steering pump, do not operate the vehicle for prolonged periods with a low power steering fluid level.***
- ***Never start the engine when the reservoir tank is empty.***
- ***When adding fluid, be careful that dirt does not get into the tank.***
- ***Too little fluid can result in increased steering effort and/or noise from the power steering system.***
- ***The use of the non-specified fluid could reduce the effectiveness of the power steering system and cause damage to it.***

*Use only the specified power steering fluid. (Refer to "Recommended lubricants and capacities" in section 8.)*

G090200AEN

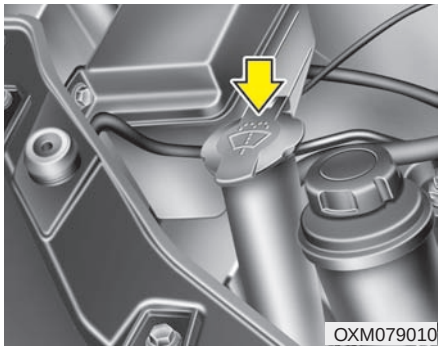
### Checking the power steering hose

Check the connections for oil leaks, damage and twists in the power steering hose before driving.

XM CAN (ENG) 7.qxp 4/14/2010 10:57 AM Page 20



## WASHER FLUID




G120100AUN-C1

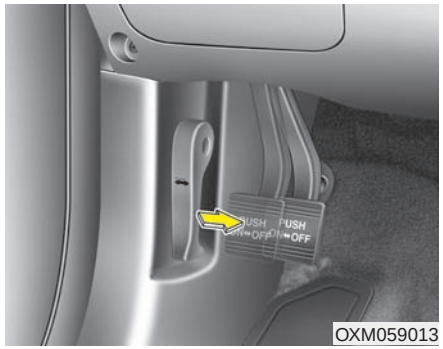
### Checking the washer fluid level

Check the fluid level in the washer fluid reservoir and add fluid if necessary. Plain water may be used if washer fluid is not available. However, use washer solvent with antifreeze characteristics in cold climates to prevent freezing.

**⚠ WARNING - Coolant**

- **Do not use radiator coolant or antifreeze in the washer fluid reservoir.**
- **Radiator coolant can severely obscure visibility when sprayed on the windshield and may cause loss of vehicle control or damage to paint and body trim.**
- **Windshield washer fluid agents contain some amounts of alcohol and can be flammable under certain circumstances. Do not allow sparks or flame to contact the washer fluid or the washer fluid reservoir. Damage to the vehicle or occupants could occur.**
- **Windshield washer fluid is poisonous to humans and animals. Do not drink and avoid contacting windshield washer fluid. Serious injury or death could occur.**

## PARKING BRAKE




### Checking the parking brake

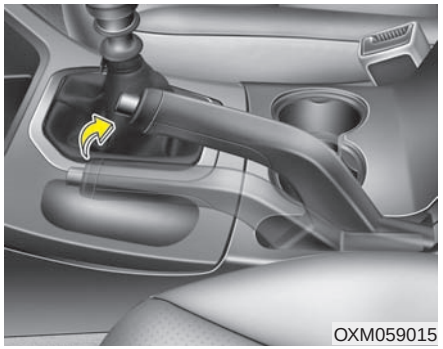
*Type A*

Check whether the stroke is within specification when the parking brake pedal is depressed with 20 kg (44 lb, 196N) of force. Also, the parking brake alone should securely hold the vehicle on a fairly steep grade. If the stroke is more or less than specified, have the parking brake adjusted by an authorized KIA dealer.

**Stroke : 4~5 notch**

XM CAN (ENG) 7.qxp 4/14/2010 10:57 AM Page 21



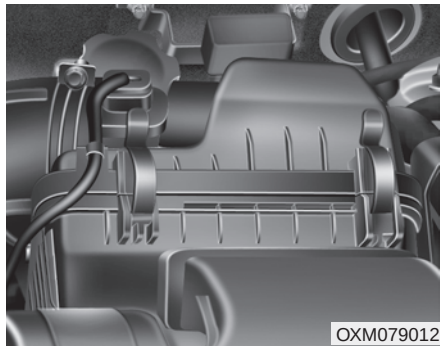



***Type B***

Check the stroke of the parking brake by counting the number of “clicks” heard while fully applying it from the released position. Also, the parking brake alone should securely hold the vehicle on a fairly steep grade. If the stroke is more or less than specified, have the parking brake adjusted by an authorized KIA dealer.

**Stroke : 5~6 “clicks” at a force of 20 kg (44 lbs, 196 N).**

## AIR CLEANER



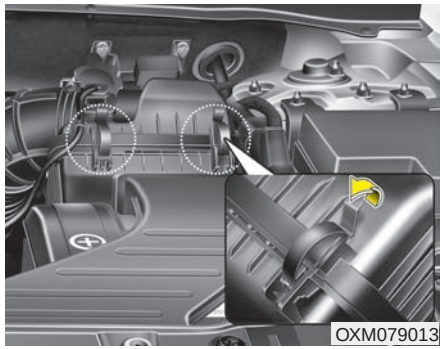

G160100AAM-EC

### Filter replacement

It must be replaced when necessary, and should not be washed.

You can clean the filter when inspecting the air cleaner element.

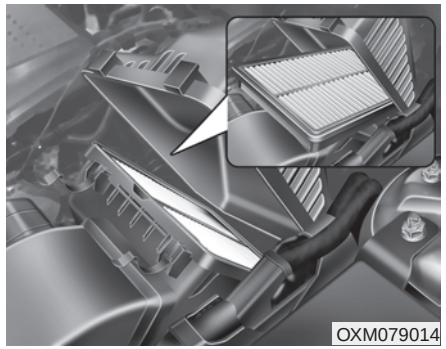
Clean the filter by using compressed air.




1. Loosen the air cleaner cover attaching clips and open the cover.

XM CAN (ENG) 7.qxp 4/14/2010 10:57 AM Page 22






2. Wipe the inside of the air cleaner.
3. Replace the air cleaner filter.
4. Lock the cover with the cover attaching clips.

Replace the filter according to the Maintenance Schedule.
*If the vehicle is operated in extremely dusty or sandy areas, replace the element more often than the usual recommended intervals.*

**⚠ CAUTION**

- ***Do not drive with the air cleaner removed; this will result in excessive engine wear.***
- ***When removing the air cleaner filter, be careful that dust or dirt does not enter the air intake, or damage may result.***
- ***Use a KIA genuine part. Use of non-genuine parts could damage the air flow sensor.***

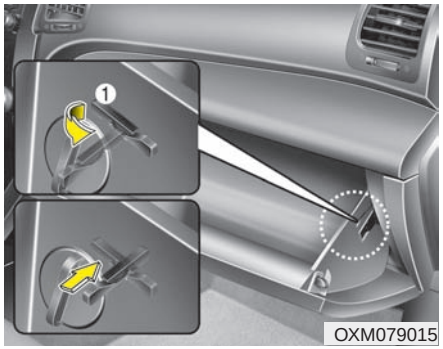
XM CAN (ENG) 7.qxp 4/14/2010 10:57 AM Page 23



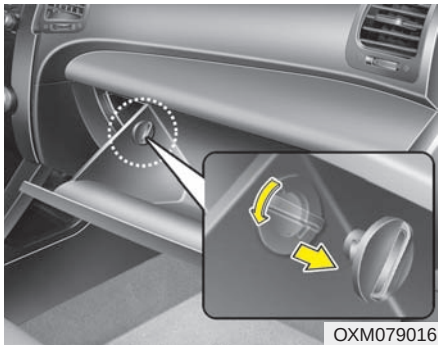
## CLIMATE CONTROL AIR FILTER (IF EQUIPPED)

### Filter inspection

The climate control air filter should be replaced according to the maintenance schedule. If the vehicle is operated in severely air-polluted cities or on dusty rough roads for a long period, it should be inspected more frequently and replaced earlier. When you replace the climate control air filter, replace it performing the following procedure, and be careful to avoid damaging other components.



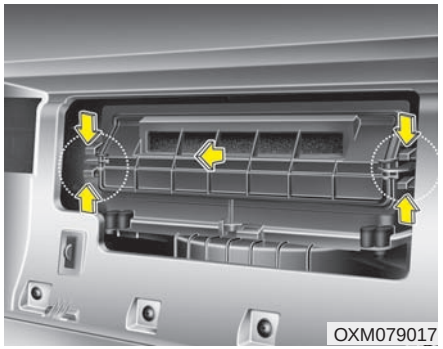

1. Open the glove box and remove the support strap (1).



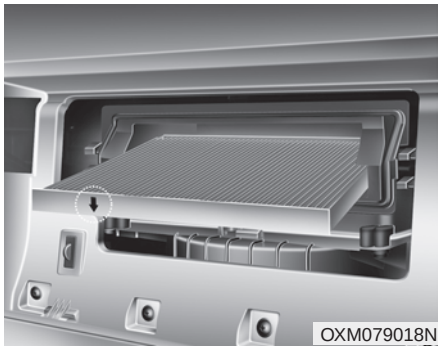

2. With the glove box open, remove the stoppers on both sides.

XM CAN (ENG) 7.qxp 4/14/2010 10:58 AM Page 24




OXM079017

3. Remove the climate control air filter case by pulling out both sides of the cover.


OXM079018N

4. Replace the climate control air filter.
5. Reassemble in the reverse order of disassembly.

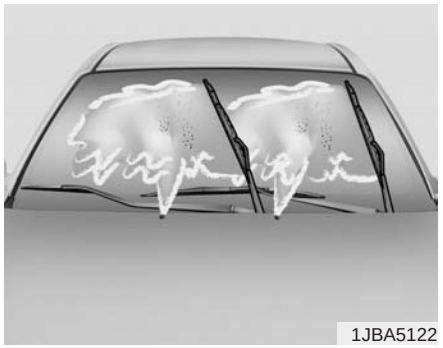
### ✻ NOTICE

**When replacing the climate control air filter install it properly. Otherwise, the system may produce noise and the effectiveness of the filter may be reduced.**

XM CAN (ENG) 7.qxp 4/14/2010 10:58 AM Page 25



## WIPER BLADES




G180100AUN

### Blade inspection

#### ✻ NOTICE

**Commercial hot waxes applied by automatic car washes have been known to make the windshield difficult to clean.**

Contamination of either the windshield or the wiper blades with foreign matter can reduce the effectiveness of the windshield wipers. Common sources of contamination are insects, tree sap, and hot wax treatments used by some commercial car washes. If the blades are not wiping properly, clean both the window and the blades with a good cleaner or mild detergent, and rinse thoroughly with clean water.

#### ⚠ CAUTION

***To prevent damage to the wiper blades, do not use gasoline, kerosene, paint thinner, or other solvents on or near them.***

G180200AUN

### Blade replacement

When the wipers no longer clean adequately, the blades may be worn or cracked, and require replacement.

#### ⚠ CAUTION

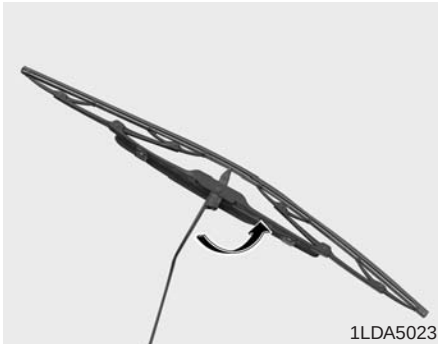
***To prevent damage to the wiper arms or other components, do not attempt to move the wipers manually.***

#### ⚠ CAUTION

***The use of a non-specified wiper blade could result in wiper malfunction and failure.***

XM CAN (ENG) 7.qxp 4/14/2010 10:58 AM Page 26




1LDA5023

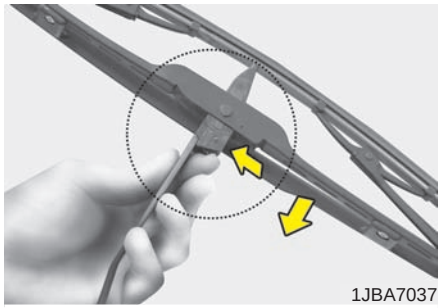
***Front windshield wiper blade***

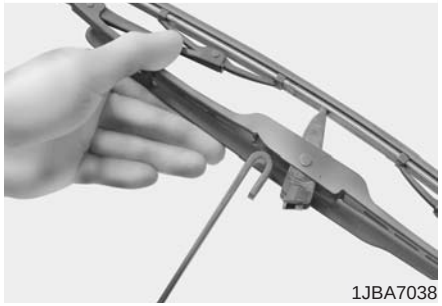
**Type A**

1. Raise the wiper arm and turn the wiper blade assembly to expose the plastic locking clip.

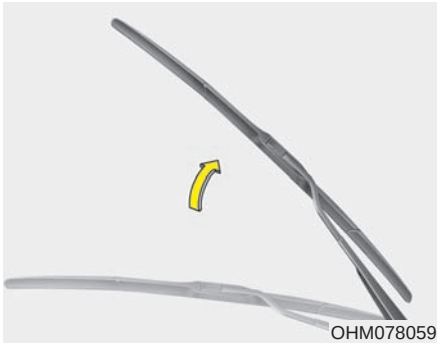
**⚠ CAUTION**

***Do not allow the wiper arm to fall against the windshield, since it may chip or crack the windshield.***


1JBA7037


1JBA7038

2. Compress the clip and slide the blade assembly downward.
3. Lift it off the arm.
4. Install the blade assembly in the reverse order of removal.


OHM078059

**Type B**

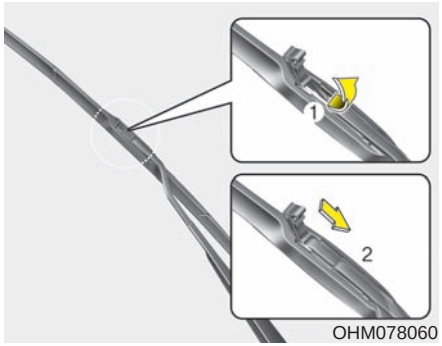
1. Raise the wiper arm.

**⚠ CAUTION**

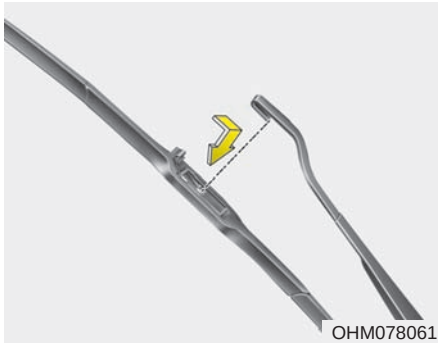
***Do not allow the wiper arm to fall against the windshield, since it may chip or crack the windshield.***

XM CAN (ENG) 7.qxp 4/14/2010 10:58 AM Page 27

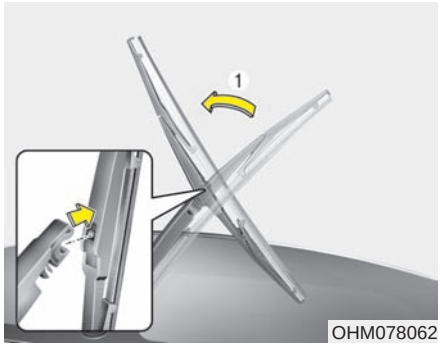





2. Lift up the wiper blade clip. Then pull down the blade assembly and remove it.




3. Install the new blade assembly in the reverse order of removal.

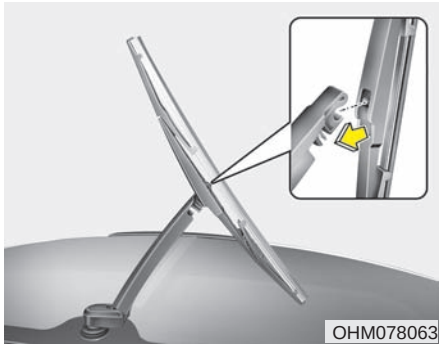



***Rear window wiper blade***

1. Raise the wiper arm and pull out the wiper blade assembly.

XM CAN (ENG) 7.qxp 4/14/2010 10:58 AM Page 28





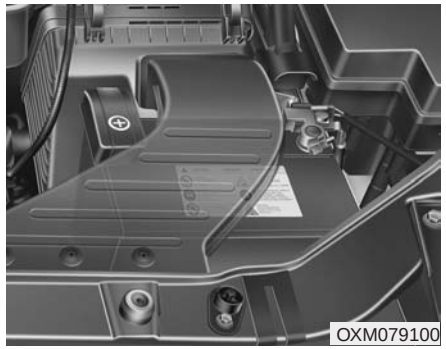

2. Install the new blade assembly by inserting the center part into the slot in the wiper arm until it clicks into place.
3. Make sure the blade assembly is installed firmly by trying to pull it slightly.

To prevent damage to the wiper arms or other components, have an authorized KIA dealer replace the wiper blade.

XM CAN (ENG) 7.qxp 4/14/2010 10:58 AM Page 29



## BATTERY




G190100AAM-EC

### For best battery service

- Keep the battery securely mounted.
- Keep the battery top clean and dry.
- Keep the terminals and connections clean, tight, and coated with petroleum jelly or terminal grease.
- Rinse any spilled electrolyte from the battery immediately with a solution of water and baking soda.
- If the vehicle is not going to be used for an extended time, disconnect the battery cables.

**⚠ WARNING - Battery dangers**

**Always read the following instructions carefully when handling a battery.**

**Keep lighted cigarettes and all other flames or sparks away from the battery.**

**Hydrogen, a highly combustible gas, is always present in battery cells and may explode if ignited.**

**Keep batteries out of the reach of children because batteries contain highly corrosive SULFURIC ACID. Do not allow battery acid to contact your skin, eyes, clothing or paint finish.**

**If any electrolyte gets into your eyes, flush your eyes with clean water for at least 15 minutes and get immediate medical attention.**

**(Continued)**

**(Continued)**

**If electrolyte gets on your skin, thoroughly wash the contacted area. If you feel pain or burning sensation, get medical attention immediately.**

**Wear eye protection when charging or working near a battery. Always provide ventilation when working in an enclosed space.**

**An inappropriately disposed battery can be harmful to the environment and human health. Dispose the battery according to your local law(s) or regulation.**

- **When lifting a plastic-cased battery, excessive pressure on the case may cause battery acid to leak, resulting in personal injury. Lift with a battery carrier or with your hands on opposite corners.**
- **Never attempt to recharge the battery when the battery cables are connected.**

**(Continued)**

XM CAN (ENG) 7.qxp 4/14/2010 10:58 AM Page 30



**(Continued)**

- **The electrical ignition system works with high voltage. Never touch these components with the engine running or the ignition switched on.**

**Failure to follow the above warnings can result in serious bodily injury or death.**

G190200AUN

## Battery recharging

Your vehicle has a maintenance-free, calcium-based battery.

- If the battery becomes discharged in a short time (because, for example, the headlights or interior lights were left on while the vehicle was not in use), recharge it by slow charging (trickle) for 10 hours.
- If the battery gradually discharges because of high electric load while the vehicle is being used, recharge it at 20-30A for two hours.

**⚠ WARNING - Recharging battery**

**When recharging the battery, observe the following precautions:**

- **The battery must be removed from the vehicle and placed in an area with good ventilation.**
- **Do not allow cigarettes, sparks, or flame near the battery.**
- **Watch the battery during charging, and stop or reduce the charging rate if the battery cells begin gassing (boiling) violently or if the temperature of the electrolyte of any cell exceeds 49°C (120°F).**
- **Wear eye protection when checking the battery during charging.**
- **Disconnect the battery charger in the following order.**

1. **Turn off the battery charger main switch.**
2. **Unhook the negative clamp from the negative battery terminal.**
3. **Unhook the positive clamp from the positive battery terminal.**

XM CAN (ENG) 7.qxp 4/14/2010 10:58 AM Page 31



**⚠ WARNING**

- **Before performing maintenance or recharging the battery, turn off all accessories and stop the engine.**
- **The negative battery cable must be removed first and installed last when the battery is disconnected.**

G190300AAM

### Reset items

Items should be reset after the battery has been discharged or the battery has been disconnected.

- Auto up/down window (See section 4)
- Sunroof (See section 4)
- Trip computer (See section 4)
- Climate control system (See section 4)
- Clock (See section 4)
- Audio (See section 4)

XM CAN (ENG) 7.qxp 4/14/2010 10:58 AM Page 32



## TIRES AND WHEELS

G200100AUN

### Tire care

For proper maintenance, safety, and maximum fuel economy, you must always maintain recommended tire inflation pressures and stay within the load limits and weight distribution recommended for your vehicle.

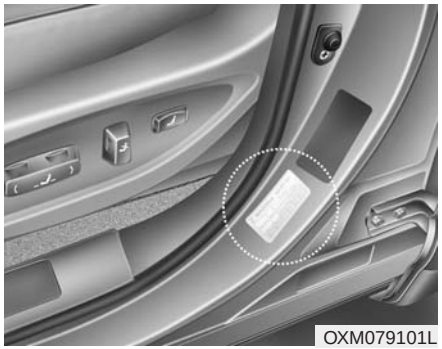
G200200AUN-EU

### Recommended cold tire inflation pressures

All tire pressures (including the spare) should be checked when the tires are cold. “Cold Tires” means the vehicle has not been driven for at least three hours or driven less than 1.6 km (one mile).

Recommended pressures must be maintained for the best ride, vehicle handling, and minimum tire wear.

For recommended inflation pressure, refer to “Tire and wheels” in section 8.



OXM079101L

All specifications (sizes and pressures) can be found on a label attached to the driver’s side center pillar.

**⚠ WARNING - Tire underinflation**

**Severe underinflation can lead to severe heat build-up, causing blowouts, tread separation and other tire failures that can result in the loss of vehicle control leading to severe injury or death. This risk is much higher on hot days and when driving for long periods at high speeds.**

**⚠ CAUTION**

- ***Underinflation also results in excessive wear, poor handling and reduced fuel economy. Wheel deformation also is possible. Keep your tire pressures at the proper levels. If a tire frequently needs refilling, have it checked by an authorized KIA dealer.***
- ***Overinflation produces a harsh ride, excessive wear at the center of the tire tread, and a greater possibility of damage from road hazards.***

XM CAN (ENG) 7.qxp 4/14/2010 10:58 AM Page 33



**⚠ CAUTION**

- ***Warm tires normally exceed recommended cold tire pressures by 28 to 41 kPa (4 to 6 psi). Do not release air from warm tires to adjust the pressure or the tires will be underinflated.***
- ***Be sure to reinstall the tire inflation valve caps. Without the valve cap, dirt or moisture could get into the valve core and cause air leakage. If a valve cap is missing, install a new one as soon as possible.***

**⚠ WARNING - Tire Inflation**

**Overinflation or underinflation can reduce tire life, adversely affect vehicle handling, and lead to sudden tire failure. This could result in loss of vehicle control and potential injury.**

**⚠ CAUTION - Tire pressure**

***Always observe the following:***

- ***Check tire pressure when the tires are cold. (After vehicle has been parked for at least three hours or hasn't been driven more than 1.6 km (one mile) since startup.)***
- ***Check the pressure of your spare tire each time you check the pressure of other tires.***
- ***Never overload your vehicle. Be careful not to overload a vehicle luggage rack if your vehicle is equipped with one.***
- ***Worn, old tires can cause accidents. If your tread is badly worn, or if your tires have been damaged, replace them.***

G200300AUN

## Checking tire inflation pressure

Check your tires once a month or more.

Also, check the tire pressure of the spare tire.

G200301AUN

### *How to check*

Use a good quality gauge to check tire pressure. You can not tell if your tires are properly inflated simply by looking at them. Radial tires may look properly inflated even when they're underinflated.

Check the tire's inflation pressure when the tires are cold. - "Cold" means your vehicle has been sitting for at least three hours or driven no more than 1.6 km (1 mile).

XM CAN (ENG) 7.qxp 4/14/2010 10:58 AM Page 34



Remove the valve cap from the tire valve stem. Press the tire gauge firmly onto the valve to get a pressure measurement. If the cold tire inflation pressure matches the recommended pressure on the tire and loading information label, no further adjustment is necessary. If the pressure is low, add air until you reach the recommended amount.

If you overfill the tire, release air by pushing on the metal stem in the center of the tire valve. Recheck the tire pressure with the tire gauge. Be sure to put the valve caps back on the valve stems. They help prevent leaks by keeping out dirt and moisture.

**⚠ WARNING**

- **Inspect your tires frequently for proper inflation as well as wear and damage. Always use a tire pressure gauge.**
- **Tires with too much or too little pressure wear unevenly causing poor handling, loss of vehicle control, and sudden tire failure leading to accidents, injuries, and even death. The recommended cold tire pressure for your vehicle can be found in this manual and on the tire label located on the driver's side center pillar.**
- **Worn tires can cause accidents. Replace tires that are worn, show uneven wear, or are damaged.**
- **Remember to check the pressure of your spare tire. KIA recommends that you check the spare every time you check the pressure of the other tires on your vehicle.**

G200400AUN

### Tire rotation

To equalize tread wear, it is recommended that the tires be rotated every 12,000 km (7,500 miles) or sooner if irregular wear develops.

During rotation, check the tires for correct balance.

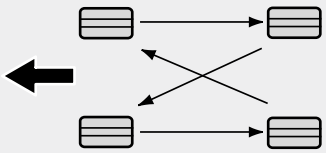
When rotating tires, check for uneven wear and damage. Abnormal wear is usually caused by incorrect tire pressure, improper wheel alignment, out-of-balance wheels, severe braking or severe cornering. Look for bumps or bulges in the tread or side of tire. Replace the tire if you find either of these conditions. Replace the tire if fabric or cord is visible. After rotation, be sure to bring the front and rear tire pressures to specification and check lug nut tightness.

Refer to “Tire and wheels” in section 8.

XM CAN (ENG) 7.qxp 4/14/2010 10:58 AM Page 35

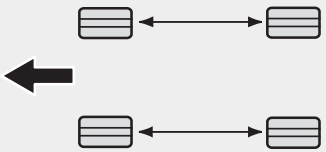


Without a spare tire



S2BLA790A

Directional tires (if equipped)



CBGQ0707A

*Disc brake pads should be inspected for wear whenever tires are rotated.*

### ✻ NOTICE

**Rotate radial tires that have an asymmetric tread pattern only from front to rear and not from right to left.**

### ⚠ WARNING

- **Do not use the compact spare tire (if equipped) for tire rotation.**
- **Do not mix bias ply and radial ply tires under any circumstances. This may cause unusual handling characteristics that could result in death, severe injury, or property damage.**

G200500AUN

### Wheel alignment and tire balance

The wheels on your vehicle were aligned and balanced carefully at the factory to give you the longest tire life and best overall performance.

In most cases, you will not need to have your wheels aligned again. However, if you notice unusual tire wear or your vehicle pulling one way or the other, the alignment may need to be reset.

If you notice your vehicle vibrating when driving on a smooth road, your wheels may need to be rebalanced.

### ⚠ CAUTION

***Improper wheel weights can damage your vehicle's aluminum wheels. Use only approved wheel weights.***

XM CAN (ENG) 7.qxp 4/14/2010 10:58 AM Page 36

G200600AHM-EU

### Tire replacement

If the tire is worn evenly, a tread wear indicator will appear as a solid band across the tread. This shows there is less than 1.6 mm (1/16 inch) of tread left on the tire. Replace the tire when this happens.

Do not wait for the band to appear across the entire tread before replacing the tire.

**⚠ WARNING - Replacing tires**

**To reduce the chance of serious or fatal injuries from an accident caused by tire failure or loss of vehicle control:**

- **Replace tires that are worn, show uneven wear, or are damaged. Worn tires can cause loss of braking effectiveness, steering control, and traction.**
- **Do not drive your vehicle with too little or too much pressure in your tires. This can lead to uneven wear and tire failure.**
- **When replacing tires, never mix radial and bias-ply tires on the same car. You must replace all tires (including the spare) if moving from radial to bias-ply tires.**

**(Continued)**

**(Continued)**

- **Using tires and wheels other than the recommended sizes could cause unusual handling characteristics and poor vehicle control, resulting in a serious accident.**
- **Wheels that do not meet KIA's specifications may fit poorly and result in damage to the vehicle or unusual handling and poor vehicle control.**
- **The ABS works by comparing the speed of the wheels. The tire size affects wheel speed. When replacing tires, all 4 tires must use the same size originally supplied with the vehicle. Using tires of a different size can cause the ABS (Anti-lock Brake System) and ESC (Electronic Stability Control) to work irregularly.**

XM CAN (ENG) 7.qxp 4/14/2010 10:58 AM Page 37



G200601AUN

***Compact spare tire replacement***

A compact spare tire has a shorter tread life than a regular size tire. Replace it when you can see the tread wear indicator bars on the tire. The replacement compact spare tire should be the same size and design tire as the one provided with your new vehicle and should be mounted on the same compact spare tire wheel. The compact spare tire is not designed to be mounted on a regular size wheel, and the compact spare tire wheel is not designed for mounting a regular size tire.

G200700BUN-EC

## Wheel replacement

When replacing the metal wheels for any reason, make sure the new wheels are equivalent to the original factory units in diameter, rim width and offset.

**⚠ WARNING**

**A wheel that is not the correct size may adversely affect wheel and bearing life, braking and stopping abilities, handling characteristics, ground clearance, body-to-tire clearance, speedometer and odometer calibration, headlight aim and bumper height.**

G200800AHM

## Tire traction

Tire traction can be reduced if you drive on worn tires, tires that are improperly inflated or on slippery road surfaces. Tires should be replaced when tread wear indicators appear. Slow down whenever there is rain, snow or ice on the road to reduce the possibility of losing control of the vehicle.

G200900AUN

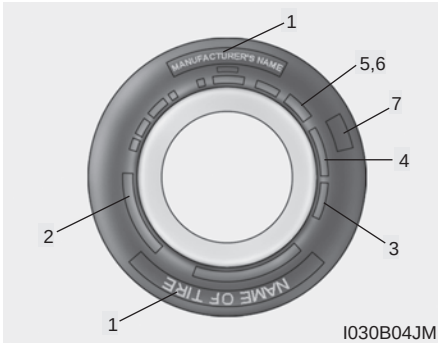
## Tire maintenance

In addition to proper inflation, correct wheel alignment helps to decrease tire wear. If you find a tire is worn unevenly, have your dealer check the wheel alignment.

When you have new tires installed, make sure they are balanced. This will increase vehicle ride comfort and tire life. Additionally, a tire should always be rebalanced if it is removed from the wheel.

XM CAN (ENG) 7.qxp 4/14/2010 10:58 AM Page 38






G201000AUN

## Tire sidewall labeling

This information identifies and describes the fundamental characteristics of the tire and also provides the tire identification number (TIN) for safety standard certification. The TIN can be used to identify the tire in case of a recall.

G201001AUN

***1. Manufacturer or brand name***

Manufacturer or Brand name is shown.

G201002AHM

***2. Tire size designation***

A tire's sidewall is marked with a tire size designation. You will need this information when selecting replacement tires for your vehicle. The following explains what the letters and numbers in the tire size designation mean.

Example tire size designation:

(These numbers are provided as an example only; your tire size designator could vary depending on your vehicle.)

**P235/65R17 108T**

P - Applicable vehicle type (tires marked with the prefix "P" are intended for use on passenger vehicles or light trucks; however, not all tires have this marking).

235 - Tire width in millimeters.

65 - Aspect ratio. The tire's section height as a percentage of its width.

R - Tire construction code (Radial).

17 - Rim diameter in inches.

108 - Load Index, a numerical code associated with the maximum load the tire can carry.

T - Speed Rating Symbol. See the speed rating chart in this section for additional information.

**Wheel size designation**

Wheels are also marked with important information that you need if you ever have to replace one. The following explains what the letters and numbers in the wheel size designation mean.

Example wheel size designation:

**7.0JX17**

7.0 - Rim width in inches.

J - Rim contour designation.

17 - Rim diameter in inches.

XM CAN (ENG) 7.qxp 4/14/2010 10:58 AM Page 39



**Tire speed ratings**

The chart below lists many of the different speed ratings currently being used for passenger car tires. The speed rating is part of the tire size designation on the sidewall of the tire. This symbol corresponds to that tire's designed maximum safe operating speed.

| Speed Rating Symbol | Maximum Speed |
|---|---|
| S | 180 km/h (112 mph) |
| T | 190 km/h (118 mph) |
| H | 210 km/h (130 mph) |
| V | 240 km/h (149 mph) |
| Z | Above 240 km/h (149 mph) |

G201003AHM

***3. Checking tire life (TIN : Tire Identification Number)***

Any tires that are over 6 years old, based on the manufacturing date, (including the spare tire) should be replaced by new ones. You can find the manufacturing date on the tire sidewall (possibly on the inside of the wheel), displaying the DOT Code. The DOT Code is a series of numbers on a tire consisting of numbers and English letters. The manufacturing date is designated by the last four digits (characters) of the DOT code.

**DOT : XXXX XXXX OOOO**

The front part of the DOT means a plant code number, tire size and tread pattern and the last four numbers indicate week and year manufactured.

For example:

DOT XXXX XXXX 1610 represents that the tire was produced in the 16th week of 2010.

**⚠ WARNING - Tire age**

**Tires degrade over time, even when they are not being used.**

**Regardless of the remaining tread, we recommend that tires be replaced after approximately six (6) years of normal service. Heat caused by hot climates or frequent high loading conditions can accelerate the aging process. Failure to follow this warning can result in sudden tire failure, which could lead to a loss of control and an accident involving serious injury or death.**

XM CAN (ENG) 7.qxp 4/14/2010 10:58 AM Page 40



G201004AEN

***4. Tire ply composition and material***

The number of layers or plies of rubber-coated fabric in the tire. Tire manufacturers also must indicate the materials in the tire, which include steel, nylon, polyester, and others. The letter "R" means radial ply construction; the letter "D" means diagonal or bias ply construction; and the letter "B" means belted-bias ply construction.

G201005AUN

***5. Maximum permissible inflation pressure***

This number is the greatest amount of air pressure that should be put in the tire. Do not exceed the maximum permissible inflation pressure. Refer to the Tire and Loading Information label for recommended inflation pressure.

G201006AUN

***6. Maximum load rating***

This number indicates the maximum load in kilograms and pounds that can be carried by the tire. When replacing the tires on the vehicle, always use a tire that has the same load rating as the factory installed tire.

G2010007AEN-EC

***7. Uniform tire quality grading***

Quality grades can be found where applicable on the tire sidewall between tread shoulder and maximum section width.

For example:

TREADWEAR 200

TRACTION AA

TEMPERATURE A

**Tread wear**

The tread wear grade is a comparative rating based on the wear rate of the tire when tested under controlled conditions on a specified government test course. For example, a tire graded 150 would wear one-and-a-half times (1½) as well on the government course as a tire graded 100.

The relative performance of tires depends upon the actual conditions of their use, however, and may depart significantly from the norm due to variations in driving habits, service practices and differences in road characteristics and climate.

These grades are molded on the side-walls of passenger vehicle tires. The tires available as standard or optional equipment on your vehicle may vary with respect to grade.

XM CAN (ENG) 7.qxp 4/14/2010 10:58 AM Page 41



**Traction - AA, A, B & C**

The traction grades, from highest to lowest, are AA, A, B and C. Those grades represent the tire's ability to stop on wet pavement as measured under controlled conditions on specified government test surfaces of asphalt and concrete. A tire marked C may have poor traction performance.

**⚠ WARNING**

**The traction grade assigned to this tire is based on straight-ahead braking traction tests, and does not include acceleration, cornering, hydroplaning, or peak traction characteristics.**

**Temperature -A, B & C**

The temperature grades are A (the highest), B and C representing the tire's resistance to the generation of heat and its ability to dissipate heat when tested under controlled conditions on a specified indoor laboratory test wheel.

Sustained high temperature can cause the material of the tire to degenerate and reduce tire life, and excessive temperature can lead to sudden tire failure. Grades B and A represent higher levels of performance on the laboratory test wheel than the minimum required by law.

**⚠ WARNING - Tire temperature**

**The temperature grade for this tire is established for a tire that is properly inflated and not overloaded. Excessive speed, underinflation, or excessive loading, either separately or in combination, can cause heat build-up and possible sudden tire failure. This can cause loss of vehicle control and serious injury or death.**

XM CAN (ENG) 7.qxp 4/14/2010 10:58 AM Page 42



G201100AAM-EC

**Tire terminology and definitions**

**Air Pressure**: The amount of air inside the tire pressing outward on the tire. Air pressure is expressed in kilopascal (kPa) or pounds per square inch (psi).

**Accessory Weight**: This means the combined weight of optional accessories. Some examples of optional accessories are, automatic transaxle, power seats, and air conditioning.

**Aspect Ratio**: The relationship of a tire's height to its width.

**Belt:** A rubber coated layer of cords that is located between the plies and the tread. Cords may be made from steel or other reinforcing materials.

**Bead**: The tire bead contains steel wires wrapped by steel cords that hold the tire onto the rim.

**Bias Ply Tire**: A pneumatic tire in which the plies are laid at alternate angles less than 90 degrees to the centerline of the tread.

**Cold Tire Pressure**: The amount of air pressure in a tire, measured in kilopascals (kPa) or pounds per square inch (psi) before a tire has built up heat from driving.

**Curb Weight**: This means the weight of a motor vehicle with standard and optional equipment including the maximum capacity of fuel, oil and coolant, but without passengers and cargo.

**DOT Markings**: The DOT code includes the Tire Identification Number (TIN), an alphanumeric designator which can also identify the tire manufacturer, production plant, brand and date of production.

**GVWR**: Gross Vehicle Weight Rating

**GAWR FRT**: Gross Axle Weight Rating for the Front Axle.

**GAWR RR**: Gross Axle Weight Rating for the Rear axle.

**Intended Outboard Sidewall**: The side of an asymmetrical tire, that must always face outward when mounted on a vehicle.

**Kilopascal (kPa)**: The metric unit for air pressure.

**Load Index**: An assigned number ranging from 1 to 279 that corresponds to the load carrying capacity of a tire.

**Maximum Inflation Pressure**: The maximum air pressure to which a cold tire may be inflated. The maximum air pressure is molded onto the sidewall.

**Maximum Load Rating**: The load rating for a tire at the maximum permissible inflation pressure for that tire.

**Maximum Loaded Vehicle Weight**: The sum of curb weight; accessory weight; vehicle capacity weight; and production options weight.

**Normal Occupant Weight**: The number of occupants a vehicle is designed to seat multiplied by 68 kg (150 pounds).

XM CAN (ENG) 7.qxp 4/14/2010 10:58 AM Page 43



**Occupant Distribution**: Designated seating positions.

**Outward Facing Sidewall:** The side of a asymmetrical tire that has a particular side that faces outward when mounted on a vehicle. The outward facing sidewall bears white lettering or bears manufacturer, brand, and/or model name molding that is higher or deeper than the same moldings on the inner facing sidewall.

**Passenger (P-Metric) Tire**: A tire used on passenger cars and some light duty trucks and multipurpose vehicles.

**Recommended Inflation Pressure**: Vehicle manufacturer's recommended tire inflation pressure and shown on the tire placard.

**Radial Ply Tire**: A pneumatic tire in which the ply cords that extend to the beads are laid at 90 degrees to the centerline of the tread.

**Rim**: A metal support for a tire and upon which the tire beads are seated.

**Sidewall**: The portion of a tire between the tread and the bead.

**Speed Rating**: An alphanumeric code assigned to a tire indicating the maximum speed at which a tire can operate.

**Traction**: The friction between the tire and the road surface. The amount of grip provided.

**Tread**: The portion of a tire that comes into contact with the road.

**Treadwear Indicators**: Narrow bands, sometimes called "wear bars," that show across the tread of a tire when only 2/32 inch of tread remains.

**UTQGS**: Uniform Tire Quality Grading Standards, a tire information system that provides consumers with ratings for a tire's traction, temperature and treadwear. Ratings are determined by tire manufacturers using government testing procedures. The ratings are molded into the sidewall of the tire.

**Vehicle Capacity Weight**: The number of designated seating positions multiplied by 68 kg (150 lbs.) plus the rated cargo and luggage load.

**Vehicle Maximum Load on the Tire**: Load on an individual tire due to curb and accessory weight plus maximum occupant and cargo weight.

**Vehicle Normal Load on the Tire**: Load on an individual tire that is determined by distributing to each axle its share of the curb weight, accessory weight, and normal occupant weight and driving by 2.

**Vehicle Placard**: A label permanently attached to a vehicle showing the original equipment tire size and recommended inflation pressure.

XM CAN (ENG) 7.qxp 4/14/2010 10:58 AM Page 44



**All season tires**

KIA specifies all season tires on some models to provide good performance for use all year round, including snowy and icy road conditions. All season tires are identified by ALL SEASON and/or M+S (Mud and Snow) on the tire sidewall. Snow tires have better snow traction than all season tires and may be more appropriate in some areas.

**Summer tires**

KIA specifies summer tires on some models to provide superior performance on dry roads. Summer tire performance is substantially reduced in snow and ice. Summer tires do not have the tire traction rating M+S (Mud and Snow) on the tire side wall. if you plan to operate your vehicle in snowy or icy conditions. KIA recommends the use of snow tires or all season tires on all four wheels.

**Snow tires**

If you equip your car with snow tires, they should be the same size and have the same load capacity as the original tires. Snow tires should be installed on all four wheels; otherwise, poor handling may result.

Snow tires should carry 28 kPa (4 psi ) more air pressure than the pressure recommended for the standard tires on the tire label on the driver's side of the center pillar, or up to the maximum pressure shown on the tire sidewall, whichever is less.

Do not drive faster than 120 km/h (75 mph) when your vehicle is equipped with snow tires.

## Radial-ply tires

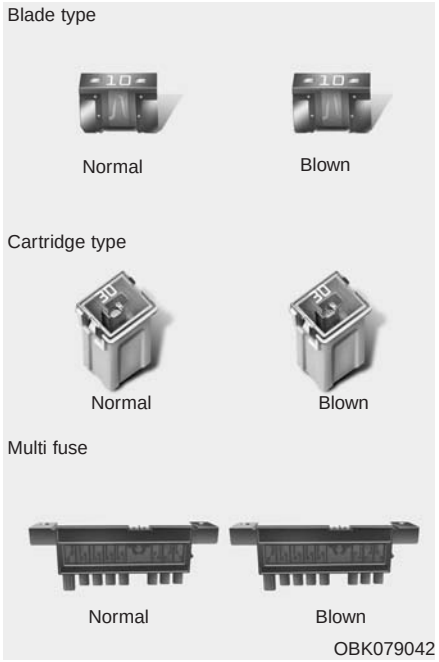
Radial-ply tires provide improved tread life, road hazard resistance and smoother high speed ride. The radial-ply tires used on this vehicle are of belted construction, and are selected to complement the ride and handling characteristics of your vehicle. Radial-ply tires have the same load carrying capacity, as bias-ply or bias belted tires of the same size, and use the same recommended inflation pressure. Mixing of radial-ply tires with bias-ply or bias belted tires is not recommended. Any combinations of radial-ply and bias-ply or bias belted tires when used on the same vehicle will seriously deteriorate vehicle handling. The best rule to follow is: Identical radial-ply tires should always be used as a set of four.

Longer wearing tires can be more susceptible to irregular tread wear. It is very important to follow the tire rotation interval shown in this section to achieve the tread life potential of these tires. Cuts and punctures in radial-ply tires are repairable only in the tread area, because of sidewall flexing. Consult your tire dealer for radial-ply tire repairs.

XM CAN (ENG) 7.qxp 4/14/2010 10:59 AM Page 45



## FUSES




G210000AAM

A vehicle's electrical system is protected from electrical overload damage by fuses.

This vehicle has 2 fuse panels, one located in the driver's side panel bolster, the other in the engine compartment near the battery.

If any of your vehicle's lights, accessories, or controls do not work, check the appropriate circuit fuse. If a fuse has blown, the element inside the fuse will melt.

If the electrical system does not work, first check the driver's side fuse panel.

Always replace a blown fuse with one of the same rating.

If the replacement fuse blows, this indicates an electrical problem. Avoid using the system involved and immediately consult an authorized KIA dealer.

*Three kinds of fuses are used: blade type for lower amperage rating, cartridge type, and multi fuse for higher amperage ratings.*

**⚠ WARNING - Fuse replacement**

- **Never replace a fuse with anything but another fuse of the same rating.**
- **A higher capacity fuse could cause damage and possibly a fire.**
- **Never install a wire instead of the proper fuse - even as a temporary repair. It may cause extensive wiring damage and a possible fire.**

**⚠ CAUTION**

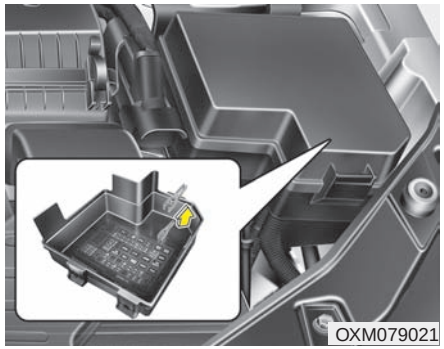
***Do not use a screwdriver or any other metal object to remove fuses because it may cause a short circuit and damage the system.***

XM CAN (ENG) 7.qxp 4/14/2010 10:59 AM Page 46

G210100AAM

## Inner panel fuse replacement

1. Turn the ignition switch and all other switches off.
2. Open the fuse panel cover.




3. Pull the suspected fuse straight out. Use the removal tool provided on the engine compartment fuse panel cover.
4. Check the removed fuse; replace it if it is blown.

   *Spare fuses are provided in the engine compartment fuse panel.*
5. Push in a new fuse of the same rating, and make sure it fits tightly in the clips.

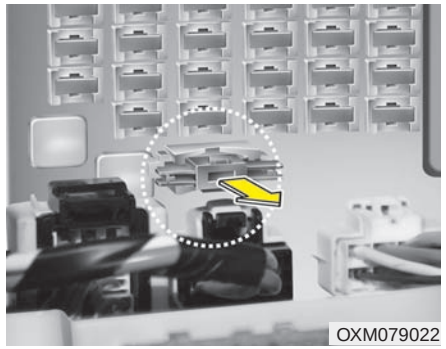
If it fits loosely, consult an authorized KIA dealer.

*If you do not have a spare, use a fuse of the same rating from a circuit you may not need for operating the vehicle, such as the power outlet fuse.*

If the headlights or other electrical components do not work and the fuses are OK, check the fuse panel in the engine compartment. If a fuse is blown, it must be replaced.

XM CAN (ENG) 7.qxp 4/14/2010 10:59 AM Page 47






G210101AHM-C1

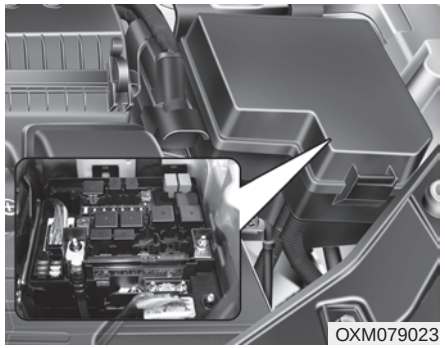
***Memory fuse***

Your vehicle is equipped with a memory fuse to prevent battery discharge if your vehicle is parked without being operated for prolonged periods. Use the following procedures before parking the vehicle for prolonged periods.

1. Turn off the engine.
2. Turn off the headlights and tail lights.
3. Open the driver's side panel cover and pull out the memory fuse.

### ✻ NOTICE

- **If the memory fuse is pulled out from the fuse panel, the warning chime, audio, clock and interior lamps, etc., will not operate. Some items must be reset after replacement. Refer to "Battery" in this section.**
- **Even though the memory fuse is pulled out, the battery can still be discharged by operation of the headlights or other electrical devices.**




G210200AHM

## Engine compartment fuse replacement

1. Turn the ignition switch and all other switches off.
2. Remove the fuse panel cover by pressing the tab and pulling the cover up.

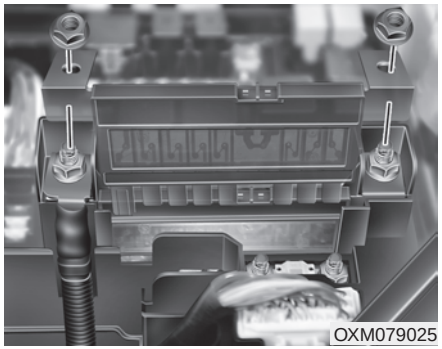
XM CAN (ENG) 7.qxp 4/14/2010 10:59 AM Page 48



3. Check the removed fuse; replace it if it is blown. To remove or insert the fuse, use the fuse puller in the engine compartment fuse panel.
4. Push in a new fuse of the same rating, and make sure it fits tightly in the clips. If it fits loosely, consult an authorized KIA dealer.

### ⚠ CAUTION

***After checking the fuse panel in the engine compartment, securely install the fuse panel cover. If not, electrical failures may occur from water contact.***




G210201AAM

***Multi fuse***

If the multi fuse is blown, it must be removed as follows:

1. Turn off the engine.
2. Disconnect the negative battery cable.
3. Remove the fuse panel on the right side in the engine compartment.
4. Remove the nuts shown in the picture above.
5. Replace the fuse with a new one of the same rating.
6. Reinstall in the reverse order of removal.

### ✻ NOTICE

**If the multi fuse is blown, consult an authorized KIA dealer.**

XM CAN (ENG) 7.qxp 4/14/2010 10:59 AM Page 49



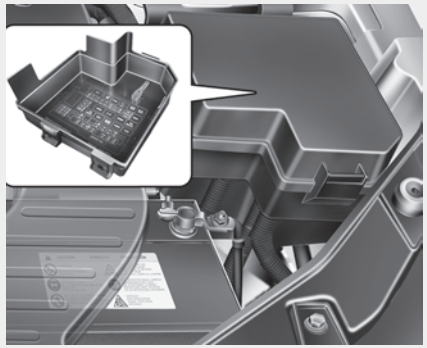
G210300AAM-EU

## Fuse/relay panel description

Inside the fuse/relay panel covers, you can find the fuse/relay label describing fuse/relay name and capacity.

**Inner fuse panel**

**Engine compartment fuse panel**



OXM079026/OXM079027

### ✻ NOTICE

**Not all fuse panel descriptions in this manual may be applicable to your vehicle. It is accurate at the time of printing. When you inspect the fuse panel in your vehicle, refer to the fuse panel label.**

XM CAN (ENG) 7.qxp 4/14/2010 10:59 AM Page 50



**Inner fuse panel**

| Description | Fuse rating | Protected component |
|---|---|---|
| MODULE 2 | 10A | Instrument Cluster (IND./MICOM), Tire Pressure Monitoring Module, Audio, Multifunction Switch (Remocon), Rear Parking Assist Buzzer ICM Relay Box (DBC Relay), ESC Off Switch, DBC Switch, Steering Angle Sensor, Alternator, Smart Key Control Module A/V & Navigation Head Unit, Rear Monitor, IPM (BCM IG1) |
| MODULE 1 | 10A | Smart Key Control Module, Rear Parking Assist Control Module E/R Fuse & Relay Box (Fuse - B/UP LP, ABS, ECU 2), PDM, 4WD ECM |
| RPAS | 7.5A | Rear Parking Assist Switch |
| A/BAG IND | 10A | Instrument Cluster (IND.), PODS Module, Digital Clock |
| A/BAG | 15A | SRS Control Module |
| START | 7.5A | E/R Fuse & Relay Box (Relay - Start, Sub Start, Burglar Alarm), PDM |
| WIPER RR | 15A | ICM Relay Box (Rear Wiper Relay), Rear Wiper Motor<br>Rear Wiper Switch, Rear Washer Switch |
| WIPER FRT | 25A | E/R Fuse & Relay Box (Wiper (Low) Relay), Front Wiper Motor, Multifunction Switch (Wiper) |
| AUDIO 2 | 7.5A | AMP, Power Outside Mirror Switch, Smart Key Control Module, PDM, Audio, A/V & Navigation Head Unit, Digital Clock, IPM (BCM ACC), DVD Player Can, Rear Monitor |
| P/OUTLET RR | 15A | Rear Power Outlet |
| P/OUTLET FRT | 25A | Driver/Passenger Power Outlet |
| MODULE 3 | 7.5A | Not Used |
| A/CON | 7.5A | Front A/C Control Module, Active Incar Sensor, Cluster Ionize, PDM, ICM Relay Box (Front Seat Warmer Relay, Rear A/C Relay) E/R Fuse & Relay Box (Blower Relay), Sunroof Motor, Electro Chromic Mirror, IPM (BCM IG2) |
| AMP | 30A | AMP |
| DRL | 7.5A | Ground (GE01) |
| A/CON MANU | 7.5A | PCM, Front Blower Resistor, Front A/C Control Module |
| A/CON AUTO | 7.5A | Front A/C Control Module |

XM CAN (ENG) 7.qxp 4/14/2010 11:00 AM Page 51



| Description | Fuse rating | Protected component |
|---|---|---|
| B/A HORN | 10A | Burglar Alarm Horn Relay |
| A/CON REAR | 20A | ICM Relay Box (Rear A/C Relay) |
| P/WDW LH | 25A | Driver Power Window Relay, Power Window Main Switch, Rear Power Window Switch LH, Driver Safety Power Window Module |
| P/WDW RH | 25A | Passenger Power Window Relay, Power Window Main Switch<br>Passenger Power Window Switch, Rear Power Window Switch RH |
| MODULE | 15A | Audio, A/V & Navigation Head Unit, RF Receiver, IPM (BCM B+), Rear Monitor |
| ROOM LP | 10A | Instrument Cluster (IND.), Digital Clock, Front A/C Control Module Data Link Connector, Door Warning Switch, Personal Room Lamp Room Lamp Auto Cut Relay, Overhead Console (MAP Lamp) Room Lamp, Cargo Lamp, Driver/Passenger Vanity Lamp Electro Chromic Mirror |
| DOOR LP | 10A | Driver/Passenger Door Scuff Lamp, DVD Player Can |
| DR LOCK | 20A | Door Lock/Unlock Relay, ICM Relay Box (Two Turn Unlock Relay)<br>Driver/Passenger Door Lock Actuator, Rear Door Lock Actuator LH/RH |
| PDM | 20A | PDM |
| SUNROOF | 20A | Sunroof Motor |
| SMART KEY | 10A | PDM, Smart Key Control Module, Start Stop Button Switch, FOB Holder, Key Solenoid |
| S/HTR FRT | 20A | ICM Relay Box (Front Seat Warmer Relay) |
| P/SEAT | 30A | Driver Power Seat Switch, Driver Lumbar Support Switch |
| 4WD | 10A | 4WD ECM, Sport Mode Switch |
| HAZARD | 15A | IPM (Flasher Unit) |
| F/LID | 15A | Tail Gate Relay, Tail Gate Actuator, Fuel Filler Door Switch |
| TPMS | 10A | Tire Pressure Monitoring Module |
| HTD MIRR | 10A | Driver/Passenger Power Outside Mirror, Front A/C Control Module |
| POWER CONNECTOR | | FUSE - MODULE, ROOM LP, DOOR LP |

XM CAN (ENG) 7.qxp 4/14/2010 11:00 AM Page 52



**Engine compartment fuse panel**

| Description | | Fuse rating | Protected component |
|---|---|---|---|
| ALT | | 175A | Alternator |
| MULTI FUSE | I/P B+2 | 60A | IPM (Fuse - S/HTR FRT, P/SEAT, Power Connector - MODULE, ROOM LP DOOR LP) |
| | BLOWER | 40A | Blower Relay |
| | RR HTD | 40A | Rear Defogger Relay |
| | ABS 1 | 40A | ESC Control Module, Multipurpose Check Connector |
| | ABS 2 | 40A | ESC Control Module, Multipurpo se Check Connector |
| | I/P B+3 | 60A | IPM (Fuse - HAZARD, TPMS, F/LID) |
| | I/P B+1 | 60A | IPM (Fuse - DR LOCK, SUNROOF, 4WD, PDM, SMART KEY) |
| FUSE | IGN 2 | 40A | Start Relay, W/O Smart Key - Ignition Switch, With Smart Key - PDM Relay Box (IGN2 Relay) |
| | TRAILER | 30A | Trailer Power Outlet |
| | IGN 1 | 30A | W/O Smart Key - Ignition Switch, With Smart Key - PDM Relay Box (IGN1 Relay) |
| | HORN | 15A | Horn Relay |
| | STOP LP | 15A | Stop Lamp Switch, ICM Relay Box (DBC Relay) |
| | B+ SENSOR | 15A | Battery Sensor |
| | DEICER | 15A | Front Wiper Deicer Relay |
| | C/FAN | 50A | Cooling Fan Relay Low/High |
| | I/P B+4 | 50A | IPM (Fuse - P/WDW LH, P/WDW RH, B/A HORN, A/CON REAR, AMP) |
| | ECU 2 | 7.5A | Sub Start Relay, PCM, Transaxle Range Switch, Alternator (G6DC) |
| | ABS | 7.5A | ESC Control Module, Multipurpose Check Connector, Stop Lamp Switch (G4KE) |
| | B/UP LP | 7.5A | Back-Up Lamp Relay (A/T), Back-Up Lamp Switch (M/T) |

XM CAN (ENG) 7.qxp 4/14/2010 11:00 AM Page 53



| Description | | Fuse rating | Protected component |
|---|---|---|---|
| EMS BOX | ECU | 30A | Engine Control Relay |
| | ECU 3 | 20A | G4KE - Ignition Coil #1/2/3/4, Condenser<br>G6DC - Ignition Coil #1/2/3/4/5/6, Condenser #1/2 |
| | SENSOR 1 | 10A | G4KE - Variable Intake Manifold Valve, Crankshaft Position Sensor, Immobilizer Module, Camshaft Position Sensor #1/2, Oil Control Valve #1/2, Canister Purge Control Solenoid Valve, Canister Close Valve, Cooling Fan (Low) Relay<br>G6DC - Variable Intake Manifold Valve #1/2, Immobilizer Module, Canister Purge Control Solenoid Valve, Oil Control Valve #1/2 (Exhaust), Oil Control Valve #1/2 (Intake), Canister Close Valve |
| | SENSOR 2 | 10A | G6DC - Cooling Fan (Low) Relay, Stop Lamp Switch |
| | SENSOR 3 | 10A | G4KE - Injector #1/2/3/4, A/C Relay<br>G6DC - PCM, Injector #1/2/3/4/5/6, A/C Relay |
| | SENSOR 4 | 15A | G4KE - Oxygen Sensor Up/Down, Fuel Pump Relay<br>G6DC - PCM, Oxygen Sensor #1/2/3/4, Fuel Pump Relay, Variable Charge Motion Actuator |
| | ECU 1 | 15A | PCM |
| | A/CON | 10A | A/C Relay |
| | F/PUMP | 15A | Fuel Pump Relay |

XM CAN (ENG) 7.qxp 4/14/2010 11:00 AM Page 54



# APPEARANCE CARE

## Exterior care

G230101AUN

### *Exterior general caution*

It is very important to follow the label directions when using any chemical cleaner or polish. Read all warning and caution statements that appear on the label.

G230102BUN

### *Finish maintenance*

**Washing**

To help protect your vehicle's finish from rust and deterioration, wash it thoroughly and frequently at least once a month with lukewarm or cold water.

If you use your vehicle for off-road driving, you should wash it after each off-road trip. Pay special attention to the removal of any accumulation of salt, dirt, mud, and other foreign materials. Make sure the drain holes in the lower edges of the doors and rocker panels are kept clear and clean.

Insects, tar, tree sap, bird droppings, industrial pollution and similar deposits can damage your vehicle's finish if not removed immediately.

Even prompt washing with plain water may not completely remove all these deposits. A mild soap, safe for use on painted surfaces, may be used.

After washing, rinse the vehicle thoroughly with lukewarm or cold water. Do not allow soap to dry on the finish.

**⚠ CAUTION**

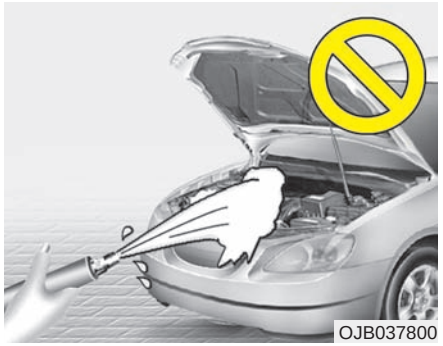
- ***Do not use strong soap, chemical detergents or hot water, and do not wash the vehicle in direct sunlight or when the body of the vehicle is warm.***
- ***Be careful when washing the side windows of your vehicle. Especailly, with high-pressure water. Water may leak through the windows and wet the interior.***
- ***To prevent damage to the plastic parts, do not clean with chemical solvents or strong detergents.***

**⚠ WARNING - Wet brakes**

**After washing the vehicle, test the brakes while driving slowly to see if they have been affected by water. If braking performance is impaired, dry the brakes by applying them lightly while maintaining a slow forward speed.**

XM CAN (ENG) 7.qxp 4/14/2010 11:00 AM Page 55




OJB037800

**⚠ CAUTION**

- ***Water washing in the engine compartment including high pressure water washing may cause the failure of electrical circuits located in the engine compartment.***
- ***Never allow water or other liquids to come in contact with electrical/electronic components inside the vehicle as this may damage them.***

**Waxing**

Wax the vehicle when water will no longer bead on the paint.

Always wash and dry the vehicle before waxing. Use a good quality liquid or paste wax, and follow the manufacturer's instructions. Wax all metal trim to protect it and to maintain its luster.

Removing oil, tar, and similar materials with a spot remover will usually strip the wax from the finish. Be sure to re-wax these areas even if the rest of the vehicle does not yet need waxing.

**⚠ CAUTION**

- ***Wiping dust or dirt off the body with a dry cloth will scratch the finish.***
- ***Do not use steel wool, abrasive cleaners, acid detergents or strong detergents containing high alkaline or caustic agents on chrome-plated or anodized aluminum parts. This may result in damage to the protective coating and cause discoloration or paint deterioration.***

G230103AUN

***Finish damage repair***

Deep scratches or stone chips in the painted surface must be repaired promptly. Exposed metal will quickly rust and may develop into a major repair expense.

**✻ NOTICE**

**If your vehicle is damaged and requires any metal repair or replacement, be sure the body shop applies anti-corrosion materials to the parts repaired or replaced.**

G230104AUN

***Bright-metal maintenance***

- To remove road tar and insects, use a tar remover, not a scraper or other sharp object.
- To protect the surfaces of bright-metal parts from corrosion, apply a coating of wax or chrome preservative and rub to a high luster.
- During winter weather or in coastal areas, cover the bright metal parts with a heavier coating of wax or preservative. If necessary, coat the parts with non-corrosive petroleum jelly or other protective compound.

XM CAN (ENG) 7.qxp 4/14/2010 11:00 AM Page 56



G230105ASA

### *Underbody maintenance*

Corrosive materials used for ice and snow removal and dust control may collect on the underbody. If these materials are not removed, accelerated rusting can occur on underbody parts such as the fuel lines, frame, floor pan and exhaust system, even though they have been treated with rust protection.

Thoroughly flush the vehicle underbody and wheel openings with lukewarm or cold water once a month, after off-road driving and at the end of each winter. Pay special attention to these areas because it is difficult to see all the mud and dirt. It will do more harm than good to wet down the road grime without removing it. The lower edges of the doors, rocker panels, and frame members have drain holes that should not be allowed to clog with dirt; trapped water in these areas can cause rusting.

**⚠ WARNING**

**After washing the vehicle, test the brakes while driving slowly to see if they have been affected by water. If braking performance is impaired, dry the brakes by applying them lightly while maintaining a slow forward speed.**

G230106AAM

### *Aluminum wheel maintenance*

The aluminum wheels are coated with a clear protective finish.

- Do not use any abrasive cleaner, polishing compound, solvent, or wire brushes on aluminum wheels. They may scratch or damage the finish.
- Use only mild soap or neutral detergent, and rinse thoroughly with water. Also, be sure to clean the wheels after driving on salted roads. This helps prevent corrosion.
- Avoid washing the wheels with high-speed car wash brushes.
- Do not use any cleaners containing acid or acid detergents. It may damage and corrode the aluminum wheels coated with a clear protective finish.

XM CAN (ENG) 7.qxp 4/14/2010 11:00 AM Page 57



G230107AHM

### *Corrosion protection*

**Protecting your vehicle from corrosion**

By using the most advanced design and construction practices to combat corrosion, we produce vehicles of the highest quality. However, this is only part of the job. To achieve the long-term corrosion resistance your vehicle can deliver, the owner's cooperation and assistance is also required.

**Common causes of corrosion**

The most common causes of corrosion on your vehicle are:

- Road salt, dirt and moisture that is allowed to accumulate underneath the vehicle.
- Removal of paint or protective coatings by stones, gravel, abrasion or minor scrapes and dents which leave unprotected metal exposed to corrosion.

**High-corrosion areas**

If you live in an area where your vehicle is regularly exposed to corrosive materials, corrosion protection is particularly important. Some of the common causes of accelerated corrosion are road salts, dust control chemicals, ocean air and industrial pollution.

**Moisture breeds corrosion**

Moisture creates the conditions in which corrosion is most likely to occur. For example, corrosion is accelerated by high humidity, particularly when temperatures are just above freezing. In such conditions, the corrosive material is kept in contact with the vehicle's surface by moisture that evaporate slowly.

Mud is particularly corrosive because it dries slowly and holds moisture in contact with the vehicle. Although the mud appears to be dry, it can still retain the moisture and promote corrosion.

High temperatures can also accelerate corrosion of parts that are not properly ventilated so the moisture can be dispersed. For all these reasons, it is particularly important to keep your vehicle clean and free of mud or accumulations of other materials. This applies not only to the visible surfaces but particularly to the underside of the vehicle.

XM CAN (ENG) 7.qxp 4/14/2010 11:00 AM Page 58



**To help prevent corrosion**

You can help prevent corrosion from getting started by observing the following:

**Keep your vehicle clean**

The best way to prevent corrosion is to keep your vehicle clean and free of corrosive materials. Attention to the underside of the vehicle is particularly important.

- If you live in a high-corrosion area — where road salts are used, near the ocean, areas with industrial pollution, acid rain, etc.—, you should take extra care to prevent corrosion. In winter, hose off the underside of your vehicle at least once a month and be sure to clean the underside thoroughly when winter is over.
- When cleaning underneath the vehicle, give particular attention to the components under the fenders and other areas that are hidden from view. Do a thorough job; just dampening the accumulated mud rather than washing it away will accelerate corrosion rather than prevent it. Water under high pressure and steam are particularly effective in removing accumulated mud and corrosive materials.
- When cleaning lower door panels, rocker panels and frame members, be sure that drain holes are kept open so that moisture can escape and not be trapped inside to accelerate corrosion.

**Keep your garage dry**

Don't park your vehicle in a damp, poorly ventilated garage. This creates a favorable environment for corrosion. This is particularly true if you wash your vehicle in the garage or drive it into the garage when it is still wet or covered with snow, ice or mud. Even a heated garage can contribute to corrosion unless it is well ventilated so moisture is dispersed.

**Keep paint and trim in good condition**

Scratches or chips in the finish should be covered with "touch-up" paint as soon as possible to reduce the possibility of corrosion. If bare metal is showing through, the attention of a qualified body and paint shop is recommended.

Bird droppings : Bird droppings are highly corrosive and may damage painted surfaces in just a few hours. Always remove bird droppings as soon as possible.

**Don't neglect the interior**

Moisture can collect under the floor mats and carpeting and cause corrosion. Check under the mats periodically to be sure the carpeting is dry. Use particular care if you carry fertilizers, cleaning materials or chemicals in the vehicle.

These should be carried only in proper containers and any spills or leaks should be cleaned up, flushed with clean water and thoroughly dried.

XM CAN (ENG) 7.qxp 4/14/2010 11:00 AM Page 59



## Interior care

G230201BHM

### *Interior general precautions*

Prevent caustic solutions, such as perfumes or cosmetic oils, from coming into contact with the dashboard because they may cause damage or discoloration. If they do come in contact with the dashboard, wipe off immediately. If necessary, use a vinyl cleaner, see product instructions for correct usage.

**⚠ CAUTION**

***Never allow water or other liquids to come in contact with electrical/electronic components inside the vehicle as this may damage them.***

**⚠ CAUTION**

***When cleaning leather products (steering wheel, seats etc.), use neutral detergents or low alcohol content solutions. If you use high alcohol content solutions or acid/alkaline detergents, the color of the leather may fade or the surface may get stripped off.***

G230202AUN

### *Cleaning the upholstery and interior trim*

**Vinyl**

Remove dust and loose dirt from vinyl with a whisk broom or vacuum cleaner. Clean vinyl surfaces with a vinyl cleaner.

**Fabric**

Remove dust and loose dirt from fabric with a whisk broom or vacuum cleaner. Clean with a mild soap solution recommended for upholstery or carpets. Remove fresh spots immediately with a fabric spot cleaner. If fresh spots do not receive immediate attention, the fabric can be stained and its color can be affected. Also, its fire-resistant properties can be reduced if the material is not properly maintained.

**⚠ CAUTION**

***Using anything but recommended cleaners and procedures may affect the fabric's appearance and fire-resistant properties.***

G230203AUN

### *Cleaning the lap/shoulder belt webbing*

Clean the belt webbing with any mild soap solution recommended for cleaning upholstery or carpet. Follow the instructions provided with the soap. Do not bleach or re-dye the webbing because this may weaken it.

G230204AHM

### *Cleaning the interior window glass*

If the interior glass surfaces of the vehicle become fogged (that is, covered with an oily, greasy or waxy film), they should be cleaned with a glass cleaner. Follow the directions on the glass cleaner container.

**⚠ CAUTION**

***Do not scrape or scratch the inside of the rear window. This may result in damage of the rear window defroster grid.***

XM CAN (ENG) 7.qxp 4/14/2010 11:00 AM Page 60



## EMISSION CONTROL SYSTEM

G270000AHM-EU

The emission control system of your vehicle is covered by a written limited warranty. Please see the warranty information contained in the Warranty & Maintenance booklet in your vehicle.

Your vehicle is equipped with an emission control system to meet all applicable emission regulations.

There are three emission control systems, as follows.

(1) Crankcase emission control system
(2) Evaporative emission control system
(3) Exhaust emission control system

In order to assure the proper function of the emission control systems, it is recommended that you have your vehicle inspected and maintained by an authorized KIA dealer in accordance with the maintenance schedule in this manual.

**Caution for the Inspection and Maintenance Test (With Electronic Stability Control (ESC) system)**

- **To prevent the vehicle from misfiring during dynamometer testing, turn the Electronic Stability Control (ESC) system off by pressing the ESC switch.**
- **After dynamometer testing is completed, turn the ESC system back on by pressing the ESC switch again.**

G270100AUN

### 1. Crankcase emission control system

The positive crankcase ventilation system is employed to prevent air pollution caused by blow-by gases being emitted from the crankcase. This system supplies fresh filtered air to the crankcase through the air intake hose. Inside the crankcase, the fresh air mixes with blow-by gases, which then pass through the PCV valve into the induction system.

G270200AUN

### 2. Evaporative emission control (including ORVR: Onboard Refueling Vapor Recovery) system

The Evaporative Emission Control System is designed to prevent fuel vapors from escaping into the atmosphere.

(The ORVR system is designed to allow the vapors from the fuel tank to be loaded into a canister while refueling at the gas station, preventing the escape of fuel vapors into the atmosphere.)

XM CAN (ENG) 7.qxp 4/14/2010 11:00 AM Page 61



G270201AUN

### *Canister*

Fuel vapors generated inside the fuel tank are absorbed and stored in the onboard canister. When the engine is running, the fuel vapors absorbed in the canister are drawn into the surge tank through the purge control solenoid valve.

G270202AHM

### *Purge Control Solenoid Valve (PCSV)*

The purge control solenoid valve is controlled by the Engine Control Module (ECM); when the engine coolant temperature is low during idling, the PCSV closes so that evaporated fuel is not taken into the engine. After the engine warms up during ordinary driving, the PCSV opens to introduce evaporated fuel to the engine.

G270300AUN

## 3. Exhaust emission control system

The Exhaust Emission Control System is a highly effective system which controls exhaust emissions while maintaining good vehicle performance.

G270301AUN

### *Vehicle modifications*

This vehicle should not be modified. Modification of your vehicle could affect its performance, safety or durability and may even violate governmental safety and emissions regulations.

In addition, damage or performance problems resulting from any modification may not be covered under warranty.

G270302AUN-EC

### *Engine exhaust gas precautions (carbon monoxide)*

- Carbon monoxide can be present with other exhaust fumes. Therefore, if you smell exhaust fumes of any kind inside your vehicle, have it inspected and repaired immediately. If you ever suspect exhaust fumes are coming into your vehicle, drive it only with all the windows fully open. Have your vehicle checked and repaired immediately.

**⚠ WARNING - Exhaust**

**Engine exhaust gases contain carbon monoxide (CO). Though colorless and odorless, it is dangerous and could be lethal if inhaled. Follow the instructions on this page to avoid CO poisoning.**

XM CAN (ENG) 7.qxp 4/14/2010 11:00 AM Page 62



- Do not operate the engine in confined or closed areas (such as garages) any more than what is necessary to move the vehicle in or out of the area.
- When the vehicle is stopped in an open area for more than a short time with the engine running, adjust the ventilation system (as needed) to draw outside air into the vehicle.
- Never sit in a parked or stopped vehicle for any extended time with the engine running.
- When the engine stalls or fails to start, excessive attempts to restart the engine may cause damage to the emission control system.

G270303AAM

***Operating precautions for catalytic converters (if equipped)***

**⚠ WARNING - Fire**

**A hot exhaust system can ignite flammable items under your vehicle. Do not park, idle or drive the vehicle over or near flammable objects, such as grass, vegetation, paper, leaves, etc.**

Your vehicle is equipped with a catalytic converter emission control device.

Therefore, the following precautions must be observed:

- Use only UNLEADED FUEL for gasoline engines.
- Do not operate the vehicle when there are signs of engine malfunction, such as misfire or a noticeable loss of performance.
- Do not misuse or abuse the engine. Examples of misuse are coasting with the ignition off and descending steep grades in gear with the ignition off.
- Do not operate the engine at high idle speed for extended periods (5 minutes or more).
- Do not modify or tamper with any part of the engine or emission control system. All inspections and adjustments must be made by an authorized KIA dealer.
- Avoid driving with a extremely low fuel level. Running out of fuel could cause the engine to misfire, damaging the catalytic converter.

Failure to observe these precautions could result in damage to the catalytic converter and to your vehicle. Additionally, such actions could void your warranties.

XM CAN (ENG) 8.qxp 4/14/2010 11:02 AM Page 1

**Dimensions / 8-2**
**Bulb wattage / 8-2**
**Tires and wheels / 8-3**
**Recommended lubricants and capacities / 8-4**
**Vehicle identification number (VIN) / 8-7**
**Vehicle certification label / 8-7**
**Tire specification and pressure label / 8-8**
**Engine number / 8-8**

# Specifications & Consumer information 8

XM CAN (ENG) 8.qxp 4/14/2010 11:02 AM Page 2



## DIMENSIONS

I010000AXM-EU

| Item | mm (in) |
|---|---|
| Overall length | 4670 (183.9) |
| Overall width | 1885 (74.2) |
| Overall height | 1710 (67.3)/1745 (68.7)*1/1755 (69.1)*2 |
| Front tread | 1618 (63.7) |
| Rear tread | 1621 (63.8) |
| Wheelbase | 2700 (106.3) |

*1 with roof rack
*2 with sunroof and roof rack

## BULB WATTAGE

I030000AXM-EU

| Light Bulb | Wattage |
|---|---|
| Headlights (Low) | 55 |
| Headlights (High) | 55 |
| Front turn signal lights / Position lights | 28/8 |
| Side turn signal* | LED |
| Front fog lights* | 27 |
| Stop and tail lights | 28/8 |
| Tail lights | 8 *1 |
| Rear turn signal lights | 27 |
| Back-up lights | 16 |
| High mounted stop light | LED |
| License plate lights | 5 |
| Map lamps* | 6 |
| Room lamps | 8 or 10 |
| Luggage lamp* | 10 |
| Vanity mirror lamps* | 5 |
| Door mood lamps* | LED |

* If equipped
*1 Can use 28/8

XM CAN (ENG) 8.qxp 4/14/2010 11:02 AM Page 3



## TIRES AND WHEELS

I020000AXM-EU

| Item | Tire size | Wheel size | Cold tire inflation pressure kPa (psi) | | Wheel lug nut torque kg•m (lb•ft, N•m) |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| | | | Front | Rear | |
| Full size tire | P235/65R17 | 7.0J×17 | 230 (33) | 230 (33) | 9~11 (65~79, 88~107) |
| | P235/60R18 | 7.0J×18 | | | |
| Compact spare tire (if equipped) | T165/90R17 | 4.0T×17 | 420 (60) | 420 (60) | |

**⚠ CAUTION**

***When replacing tires, use the same size originally supplied with the vehicle.***

***Using tires of a different size can damage the related parts or make it work irregularly.***

XM CAN (ENG) 8.qxp 4/14/2010 11:02 AM Page 4



## RECOMMENDED LUBRICANTS AND CAPACITIES

To help achieve proper engine and powertrain performance and durability, use only lubricants of the proper quality. The correct lubricants also help promote engine efficiency that results in improved fuel economy.

These lubricants and fluids are recommended for use in your vehicle.

| Lubricant | | | Volume | Classification |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| Engine oil *1 *2 (drain and refill) | 2.4 Engine | | 4.6 *l* (4.86 US qt.) | API Service SM*3, ILSAC GF-4 or above |
| | 3.5 Engine | | 5.2 *l* (5.49 US qt.) | |
| Manual transaxle fluid | 2.4 Engine | | 1.8 *l* (1.90 US qt.) | API GL-4, SAE 75W/85 |
| Automatic transaxle fluid | 2.4 Engine | | 7.1 *l* (7.50 US qt.) | MICHANG ATF SP-IV<br>SK ATF SP-IV<br>NOCA ATF SP-IV<br>KIA genuine ATF SP-IV |
| | 3.5 Engine | | 7.8 *l* (8.24 US qt.) | |
| Power steering | | | 1.0 *l* (1.06 US qt.) | PSF-3 |
| Coolant | 2.4 Engine | MT | 6.5 *l* (6.87 US qt.) | Mixture of antifreeze and distilled water<br>(Ethylene glycol base coolant for aluminum radiator) |
| | | AT | 6.6 *l* (6.97 US qt.) | |
| | 3.5 Engine | AT | 8.6 *l* (9.09 US qt.) | |

XM CAN (ENG) 8.qxp 4/14/2010 11:02 AM Page 5



| Lubricant | | Volume | Classification |
|---|---|---|---|
| Brake fluid | | 0.7~0.8 *l* (0.7~0.8 US qt.) | FMVSS116 DOT-3 or DOT-4 |
| Rear differential oil (4WD) | | 0.7 *l* (0.74 US qt.) | HYPOID GEAR OIL API GL-5, SAE 75W/90 (SHELL SPIRAX X or equivalent) |
| Transfer case oil (4WD) | 2.4 Engine | 0.6 *l* (0.63 US qt.) | HYPOID GEAR OIL API GL-5, SAE 75W/90 (SHELL SPIRAX X or equivalent) |
| | 3.5 Engine | 0.7 *l* (0.74 US qt.) | |
| Fuel | | 68 *l* (17.96 US gal.) | Refer to “Fuel requirements” in section 1 |

*1 Refer to the recommended SAE viscosity numbers on the next page.

*2 Engine oils labeled Energy Conserving Oil are now available. Along with other additional benefits, they contribute to fuel economy by reducing the amount of fuel necessary to overcome engine friction. Often, these improvements are difficult to measure in everyday driving, but in a year’s time, they can offer significant cost and energy savings.

*3 If the API service SM engine oil is not available in your country, you are able to use API service SL.

MT : Manual transaxle

AT : Automatic transaxle

XM CAN (ENG) 8.qxp 4/14/2010 11:02 AM Page 6



I040000AAM-EU

## Recommended SAE viscosity number

**⚠ CAUTION**

***Always be sure to clean the area around any filler plug, drain plug, or dipstick before checking or draining any lubricant. This is especially important in dusty or sandy areas and when the vehicle is used on unpaved roads. Cleaning the plug and dipstick areas will prevent dirt and grit from entering the engine and other mechanisms that could be damaged.***

Engine oil viscosity (thickness) has an effect on fuel economy and cold weather operating (engine start and engine oil flowability). Lower viscosity engine oils can provide better fuel economy and cold weather performance, however, higher viscosity engine oils are required for satisfactory lubrication in hot weather. Using oils of any viscosity other than those recommended could result in engine damage.

When choosing an oil, consider the range of temperature your vehicle will be operated in before the next oil change. Proceed to select the recommended oil viscosity from the chart.

**Temperature Range for SAE Viscosity Numbers**

| | | | | | | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| Temperature | °C | -30 | -20 | -10 | 0 | 10 | 20 | 30 | 40 | 50 |
| | (°F) | -10 | 0 | 20 | 40 | 60 | 80 | 100 | 120 | |
| Gasoline Engine Oil *1 | | | | 10W-30 | | | | | | |
| | | 5W-20 (5W-30) | | | | | | | | |

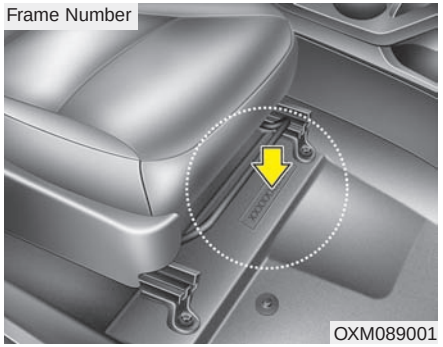
1. For better fuel economy, it is recommended to use the engine oil of a viscosity grade SAE 5W-20 (API SM / ILSAC GF-4). However, if the engine oil is not available in your country, select the proper engine oil using the engine oil viscosity chart.

XM CAN (ENG) 8.qxp 4/14/2010 11:02 AM Page 7



## VEHICLE IDENTIFICATION NUMBER (VIN)

Frame Number

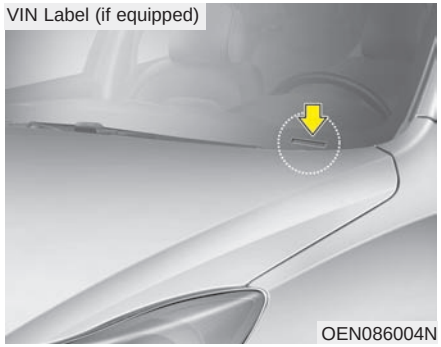



H010000AXM

The vehicle identification number (VIN) is the number used in registering your vehicle and in all legal matters pertaining to its ownership, etc.

The number is punched on the floor under the front passenger seat. To check the number, open the carpet flap.

VIN Label (if equipped)




The VIN is also on a plate attached to the top of the dashboard. The number on the plate can easily be seen through the windshield from outside.

## VEHICLE CERTIFICATION LABEL

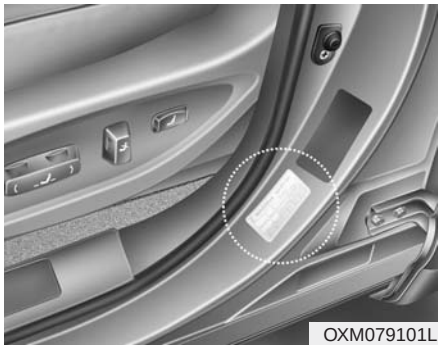
H020000AUN

The vehicle certification label attached on the driver's side center pillar gives the vehicle identification number (VIN).

XM CAN (ENG) 8.qxp 4/14/2010 11:02 AM Page 8



## TIRE SPECIFICATION AND PRESSURE LABEL

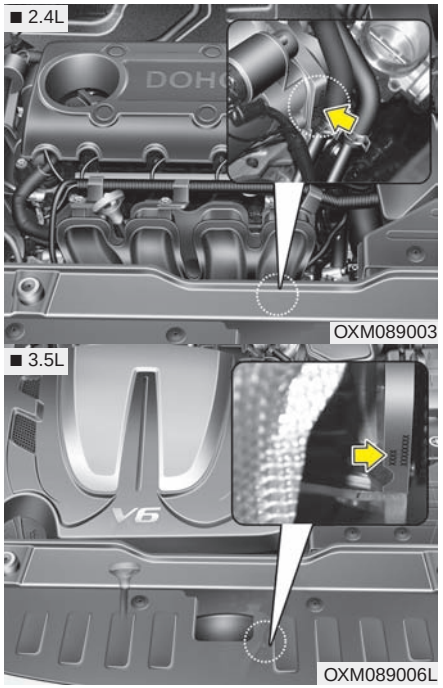



H030000APB

The tires supplied on your new vehicle are chosen to provide the best performance for normal driving.

The tire label located on the driver's side center pillar gives the tire pressures recommended for your vehicle.

## ENGINE NUMBER




H04000AUN

The engine number is stamped on the engine block as shown in the drawing.

XM CAN (ENG) INDEX.QXP 12/4/2009 11:14 AM Page 1

# Index

I

XM CAN (ENG) INDEX.QXP 12/4/2009 11:14 AM Page 2



## A


Air bags ····· 3-39
- Air bag warning label ····· 3-65
- Air bag warning light ····· 3-42
- Curtain air bag ····· 3-57
- Driver's and passenger's front air bag ····· 3-51
- Occupant detection system ····· 3-45
- Side impact air bag ····· 3-55

Air cleaner ····· 7-21
Alarm system ····· 4-13
Antenna ····· 4-102
Anti-lock brake system (ABS) ····· 5-30
Appearance care ····· 7-54
- Exterior care ····· 7-54
- Interior care ····· 7-59

Armrest ····· 3-18
Audio system ····· 4-102
- Antenna ····· 4-102
- Steering wheel audio control ····· 4-102

Auto lock mode (Passenger seat belt) ····· 3-34
Automatic climate control system ····· 4-83
- Air conditioning ····· 4-89
- Automatic heating and air conditioning ····· 4-84
- Manual heating and air conditioning ····· 4-85

Automatic transaxle ····· 5-15
- Ignition key interlock system ····· 5-19
- Shift lock system ····· 5-18
- Sports mode ····· 5-17


## B


Battery ····· 7-29
Battery saver function ····· 4-63
Before driving ····· 5-3
Bottle holders, see cup holders ····· 4-96
Brake system ····· 5-27
- Anti-lock brake system (ABS) ····· 5-30
- Electronic stability control (ESC) ····· 5-32
- Parking brake ····· 5-28
- Power brakes ····· 5-27

Brake/clutch fluid ····· 7-18
Bulb wattage ····· 8-2


## C


Capacities (Lubricants) ····· 8-4
Care
- Exterior care ····· 7-54
- Interior care ····· 7-59
- Tire care ····· 7-32

Cargo capacity ····· 5-63
Cargo weight ····· 5-67
Center console storage ····· 4-94
Central door lock switch ····· 4-17
Certification label ····· 5-65
Changing tires ····· 6-9

XM CAN (ENG) INDEX.QXP 12/4/2009 11:14 AM Page 3



Chains
Safety chains ····5-54
Checking tire inflation pressure····7-33
Child restraint system ····3-31
Auto lock mode (Passenger seat belt)····3-34
Lower anchor system ····3-37
Tether anchor system ····3-36
Child-protector rear door lock ····4-18
Climate control system (Automatic) ····4-83
Air conditioning ····4-89
Automatic heating and air conditioning····4-84
Manual heating and air conditioning ····4-85
3rd row air conditioning····4-79
Climate control system (Manual) ····4-74
Air conditioning ····4-79
Heating and air conditioning····4-75
3rd row air conditioning····4-79
Climate control air filter····4-82, 7-23
Clock (Digital)····4-98
Combined instrument, see instrument cluster ····4-44
Compact spare tire ····6-14
Compact spare tire replacement ····7-37
Coolant····7-15
Cooling fluid, see engine coolant ····7-15
Crankcase emission control system····7-60
Cruise control system ····5-39
Cup holder ····4-96
Curtain air bag ····3-57

## D

Dashboard, see instrument cluster····4-44
Dashboard illumination, see instrument panel illumination····4-45
Defogging (Windshield) ····4-91
Defogging logic (Windshield)····4-92
Defroster (Rear window)····4-73
Defrosting (Windshield) ····4-91
Digital clock····4-98
Dimensions ····8-2
Display illumination, see instrument panel illumination····4-45
Displays, see instrument cluster ····4-44
Door locks····4-15
Central door lock switch ····4-17
Child-protector rear door lock ····4-18
Drinks holders, see cup holders····4-96
Driver's air bag····3-51
Driving at night····5-47
Driving in flooded areas ····5-48
Driving in the rain ····5-48

## E

Economical operation ····5-43
Electric chromic mirror (ECM)····4-36

XM CAN (ENG) INDEX.QXP 12/4/2009 11:14 AM Page 4



Emergency starting ····6-4
Jump starting ····6-4
Push starting ····6-5
Emergency tailgate safety release ····4-20
Emergency towing ····6-17
Emergency while driving····6-2
Emission control system····7-60
Crankcase emission control system ····7-60
Evaporative emission control (including ORVR) System····7-60
Exhaust emission control system ····7-61
Engine compartment ····2-4, 7-2
Engine coolant ····7-15
Engine number····8-8
Engine oil····7-14
Engine overheats····6-6
Engine start/stop button ····5-7
Engine temperature gauge ····4-46
Engine will not start····6-3
Evaporative emission control (including ORVR) System ····7-60
Exhaust emission control system····7-61
Explanation of scheduled maintenance items ····7-11
Exterior care····7-54
Exterior features····4-101
Roof rack ····4-101

## F

Flat tire····6-7
Changing tires ····6-9
Compact spare tire ····6-14
Jack and tools····6-7
Removing and storing the spare tire ····6-8
Floor mat anchor(s) ····4-99
Fluid
Brake/clutch fluid····7-18
Power steering fluid ····7-19
Washer fluid····7-20
Folding the rear seat ····3-11
Four wheel drive (4WD) ····5-21
Front seat adjustment - manual ····3-4
Front seat adjustment - power ····3-5
Fuel filler lid ····4-27
Fuel gauge····4-47
Fuel requirements ····1-3
Fuses ····7-45
Fuse/relay panel description····7-49
Memory fuse ····7-47
Multi fuse ····7-48

XM CAN (ENG) INDEX.QXP 12/4/2009 11:14 AM Page 5



## G

Gauge
Engine temperature gauge ····4-46
Fuel gauge ····4-47
Glassroof, see panoramic sunroof ····4-30
Glove box ····4-94

## H

Hazard warning flasher ····4-62
Hazardous driving conditions ····5-45
Headlight escort function ····4-63
Headrest ····3-7, 3-16
Highway driving ····5-49
Hitches ····5-54
HomeLink, Electrochromic mirror ····4-37
Hood ····4-25
Horn ····4-35
How to use this manual ····1-2

## I

Ignition key interlock system ····5-19
Immobilizer system ····4-3
Indicator symbols on the instrument cluster ····1-6
Indicators and warnings ····4-51
Inside rearview mirror ····4-36
Instrument cluster ····4-44
Engine temperature gauge ····4-46
Fuel gauge ····4-47
Instrument panel illumination ····4-45
Odometer/Tripmeter/Trip computer ····4-47
Speedometer ····4-45
Tachometer ····4-45
Warning and indicators ····4-51
Instrument panel illumination ····4-45
Instrument panel overview ····2-3
Interior care ····7-59
Interior features ····4-96
Clock ····4-98
Cup holder ····4-96
Floor mat anchor(s) ····4-99
Luggage net holder ····4-99
Power outlet ····4-97
Sunvisor ····4-97
Interior lights ····4-71
Interior overview ····2-2
Interlock system ····5-19

## J

Jack and tools ····6-7
Jump starting ····6-4

XM CAN (ENG) INDEX.QXP 12/4/2009 11:14 AM Page 6



## K

Key positions ····5-4
Keys ····4-2
Immobilizer system ····4-3

## L

Label
Air bag warning label ····3-65
Certification label ····5-65
Tire and loading information label ····5-62
Tire sidewall labeling ····7-38
Tire specification and pressure label ····8-8
Vehicle certification label ····8-7
Latch system, see lower anchor system ····3-37
Lighting ····4-63
Battery saver function ····4-63
Headlight escort function ····4-63
Lower anchor system ····3-37
Lubricants and capacities ····8-4
Luggage box ····4-95
Luggage net holder ····4-99
Luggage rack, see roof rack ····4-101
Lumbar support ····3-7

## M

Maintenance
Explanation of scheduled maintenance items ····7-11
Maintenance schedule ····7-7
Maintenance services ····7-4
Owner maintenance ····7-5
Tire maintenance ····7-37
Manual climate control system ····4-74
Air conditioning ····4-79
Climate control air filter ····4-82
Heating and air conditioning ····4-75
Manual transaxle ····5-12
Memory fuse ····7-47
Mirrors ····4-36
Electric chromic mirror (ECM) ····4-36
Inside rearview mirror ····4-36
Outside rearview mirror ····4-42
Moonroof, see panoramic sunroof ····4-30
Multi fuse ····7-48

## N

Neck restraints, see headrest ····3-7, 3-16

XM CAN (ENG) INDEX.QXP 12/4/2009 11:14 AM Page 7



## O

Occupant detection system ····3-45
Odometer/Tripmeter/Trip computer ····4-47
Oil (Engine) ····7-14
Outside rearview mirror····4-42
Overheats ····6-6
Owner maintenance ····7-5

## P

Panoramic sunroof····4-30
Parking brake····5-28, 7-20
Passenger's front air bag ····3-51
Power brakes····5-27
Power outlet····4-97
Power steering ····4-34
Power steering fluid····7-19
Power window lock button····4-24
Pre-tensioner seat belt····3-24
Push starting····6-5

## R

Rear parking assist system····4-59
Rear seat adjustment····3-11
Rearview camera ····4-62
Recommended cold tire inflation pressures ····7-32
Recommended lubricants and capacities····8-4
  Recommended SAE viscosity number····8-6
Remote keyless entry····4-6
Road warning····6-2
Rocking the vehicle ····5-46
Roof rack ····4-101

## S

Safety chains····5-54
Seat belts····3-18
  Pre-tensioner seat belt ····3-24
  Seat belt - Driver's····3-20
  Seat belt warning····3-19
  Seat belts - Front passenger and rear seat····3-22
Seat heater····3-9
Seatback pocket ····3-10
Seating capacity ····5-62
Seats····3-2
  Armrest····3-18
  Folding the rear seat····3-11
  Front seat adjustment - manual····3-4
  Front seat adjustment - power····3-5
  Headrest ····3-7, 3-16
  Lumbar support ····3-7
  Rear seat adjustment ····3-11
  Seat heater ····3-9
  Seatback pocket····3-10

XM CAN (ENG) INDEX.QXP 12/4/2009 11:14 AM Page 8



Shift lock system ····5-18
Side impact air bag ····3-55
Spare tire
Compact spare tire ····6-14
Compact spare tire replacement ····7-37
Removing and storing the spare tire ····6-8
Smart key ····4-9
Smooth cornering ····5-47
Snow tires ····5-50, 7-44
Special driving conditions ····5-45
Driving at night ····5-47
Driving in flooded areas ····5-48
Driving in the rain ····5-48
Hazardous driving conditions ····5-45
Highway driving ····5-49
Rocking the vehicle ····5-46
Smooth cornering ····5-47
Speedometer ····4-45
Sports mode ····5-17
Starting difficulties, see Engine will not start ····6-3
Starting the engine ····5-5
Steering wheel ····4-34
Horn ····4-35
Power steering ····4-34
Tilt steering ····4-34
Steering wheel audio control ····4-102
Storage compartment ····4-94
Center console storage ····4-94
Glove box ····4-94
Luggage box ····4-95
Sunglass holder ····4-95
Summer tires ····7-44
Sunglass holder ····4-95
Sunroof ····4-30
Sunvisor ····4-97

## T

Tachometer ····4-45
Tailgate ····4-19
Emergency tailgate safety release ····4-20
Tether anchor system ····3-36
Theft-alarm system ····4-13
Third (3rd) row air conditioning ····4-79
Tilt steering ····4-34
Tire and loading information label ····5-62
Tire specification and pressure label ····8-8
Tires and wheels ····7-32, 8-3
All season tires ····7-44
Checking tire inflation pressure ····7-33
Compact spare tire replacement ····7-37
Radial-ply tires ····7-44
Recommended cold tire inflation pressures ····7-32
Snow tires ····7-44

XM CAN (ENG) INDEX.QXP 12/4/2009 11:14 AM Page 9




Summer tires ····7-44
Tire care ····7-32
Tire maintenance ····7-37
Tire replacement ····7-36
Tire rotation ····7-34
Tire sidewall labeling ····7-38
Tire terminology and definitions ····7-42
Tire traction ····7-37
Wheel alignment and tire balance ····7-35
Wheel replacement ····7-37
Towing ····6-16
Emergency towing ····6-17
Towing capacity ····5-63
Trailer towing ····5-53
Hitches ····5-54
Safety chains ····5-54
Trailer brakes ····5-54
Weight of the trailer ····5-60
Transaxle
Automatic transaxle ····5-15
Manual transaxle ····5-12
Trip computer ····4-47
Tripmeter ····4-47


## V


Vehicle break-in process ····1-5
Vehicle certification label ····8-7
Vehicle handling instructions ····1-5
Vehicle identification number (VIN) ····8-7
Vehicle load limit ····5-62
Cargo capacity ····5-63
Certification label ····5-65
Seating capacity ····5-62
Tire and loading information label ····5-62
Towing capacity ····5-63
Vehicle capacity weight ····5-62
Vehicle weight glossary ····5-67
Base curb weight ····5-67
Cargo weight ····5-67
GAW (Gross axle weight) ····5-67
GAWR (Gross axle weight rating) ····5-67
GVW (Gross vehicle weight) ····5-67
GVWR (Gross vehicle weight rating) ····5-67
Vehicle curb weight ····5-67


## W


Warnings and indicators ····4-51
Washer fluid ····7-20
Weight glossary ····5-67
Base curb weight ····5-67
Cargo weight ····5-67
GAW (Gross axle weight) ····5-67
GAWR (Gross axle weight rating) ····5-67
GVW (Gross vehicle weight) ····5-67

XM CAN (ENG) INDEX.QXP 12/4/2009 11:14 AM Page 10



GVWR (Gross vehicle weight rating) ·····5-67
Vehicle curb weight ·····5-67
Wheel alignment and tire balance ·····7-35
Wheel replacement ·····7-37
Windows ·····4-21
Auto up/down window·····4-23
Power window lock button ·····4-24
Windshield defrosting and defogging ·····4-91
Defogging logic·····4-93
Winter driving·····5-50
Snow tires·····5-50
Wiper blades ·····7-25
Wipers and washers·····4-68